



GUIDE



تطبيق
المعاصر التفاعلي

English

By a group of supervisors

الصف الأول الإعدادي الفصل الدراسي الأول

المنهج
الجديد

https://t.me/G5_Y5



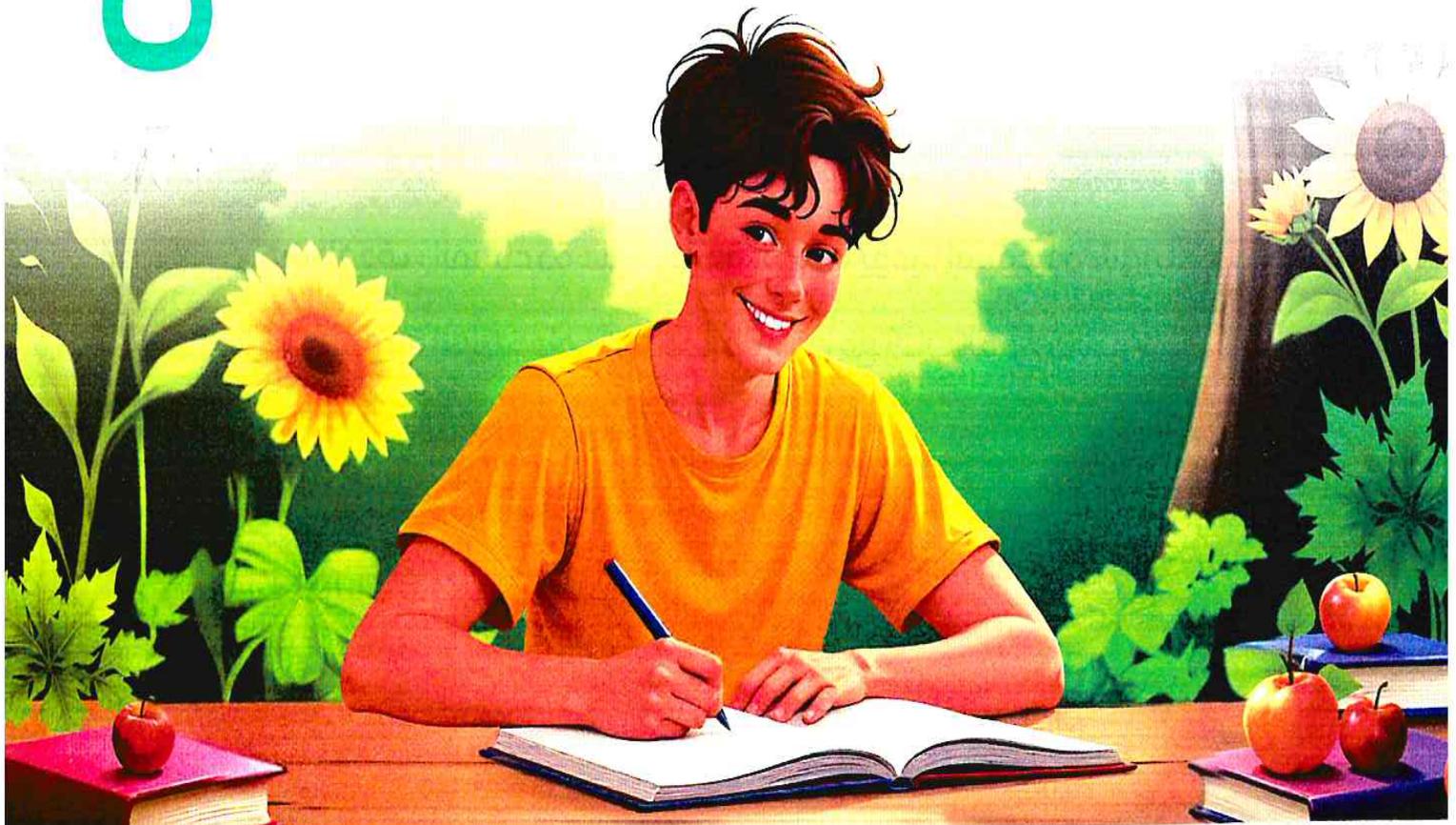
1st
PREP.
2026

FIRST TERM

CONTENTS

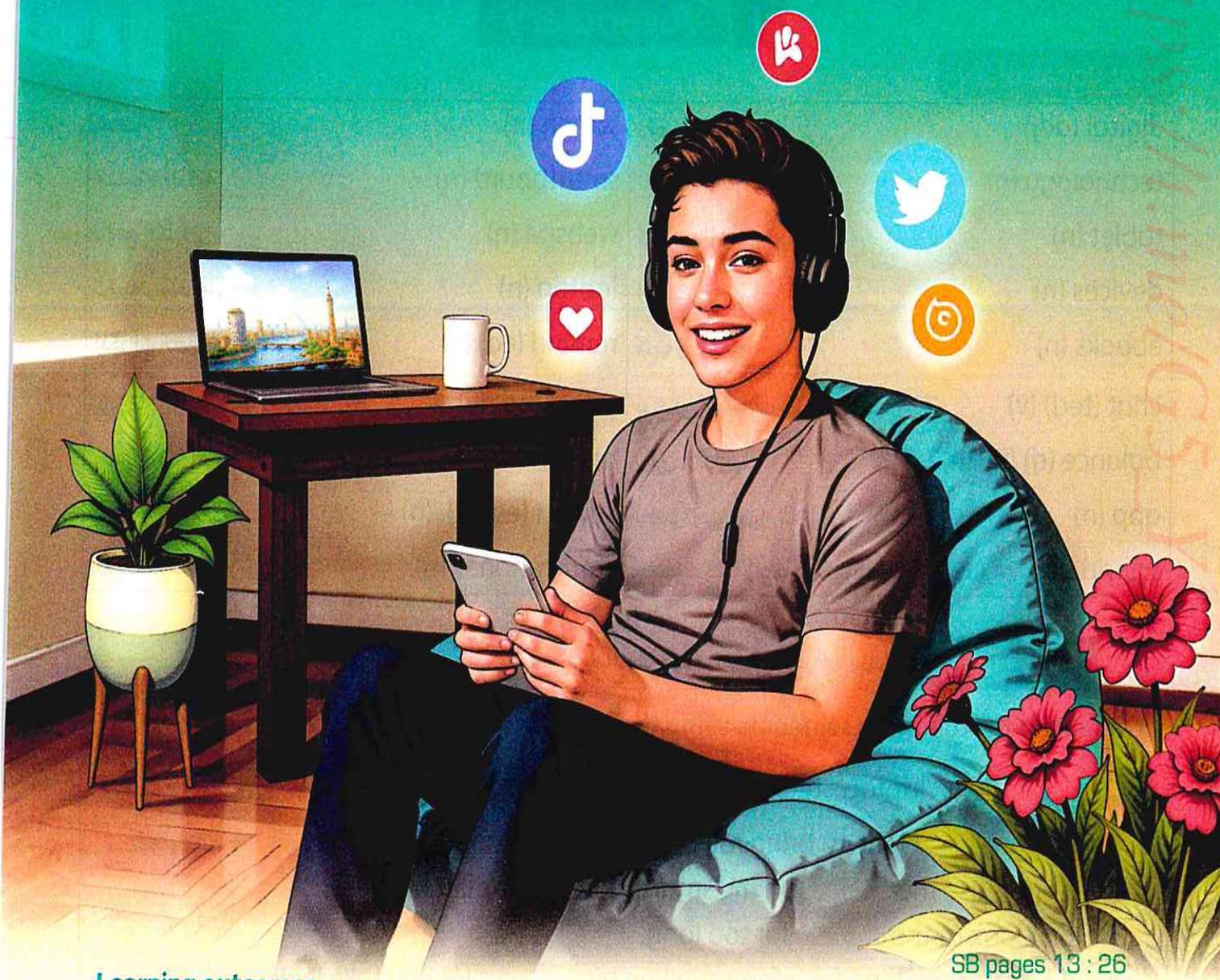
| | | |
|---------------------|-------------------------|-----|
| Unit 1 | Life in a Digital World | 11 |
| Unit 2 | Learning to Learn | 54 |
| Unit 3 | Role Models | 96 |
| Review 1 | | 137 |
| <hr/> | | |
| Unit 4 | Smart Choices | 143 |
| Unit 5 | Future Dreams | 181 |
| Unit 6 | Global Citizens | 218 |
| Review 2 | | 256 |
| <hr/> | | |
| ▶ The Story | | 261 |
| ▶ Listening Texts | | 314 |
| ▶ Answers of Topics | | 316 |

علامة **SB** تشير إلى تدريبات كتاب المدرسة



Unit ONE

Life in a Digital World



SB pages 13 : 26

Learning outcomes :

• Reading :

- Identify the main idea of a blog post about technology
- Identify specific details of a text about technology
- Use context clues to infer the meanings of words

• Listening :

- Identify the main idea when people talk about using digital devices
- Identify specific details about how people use technology

• Speaking :

- Express personal experiences and opinions about digital devices through speaking tasks

• Language :

- Use grammatical structures [i.e., present simple and adverbs of frequency] to talk about digital habits
- Differentiate between different parts of speech [Noun, Verb, Adjective]

• Writing :

- Practice writing an email about daily routine using technology



SB pages 14 : 17

Lessons

1 & 2

▶ A Day in my Digital life
▶ How We Use Technology

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|----------------------|--|----------------------|-----------------------------|
| digital (adj) | رقمى | screen (n) | شاشة |
| technology (n) | تكنولوجيا | smartboard (n) | السطح الذكى |
| tablet (n) | كمبيوتر لوحى [تابلت] | website (n) | موقع إلكترونى |
| devices (n) | أجهزة | laptop (n) | كمبيوتر محمول |
| ebooks (n) | كُتب إلكترونية | remind (ed) (v) | بُذكر [شخص بشئ ما] |
| chat (ted) (v) | يدرش / يتحدث بطريقة ودية | affect (ed) (v) | يؤثر على |
| balance (d) (v), (n) | يوازن / توازن | night mode | وضع الرؤية الليلية [للشاشة] |
| app (n) | تطبيق [على جهاز إلكترونى] | search (ed) (v), (n) | يبحث / بحث |
| hybrid bus | حافلة هجينة [تعمل بالكهرباء والبنزين معاً] | smartphones (n) | الهواتف الذكية |



Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

• Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

laptop - technology - remind - screen - night mode

1. Can you me to bring my English book tomorrow ?
2. I always use the on my smartphone to protect my eyes.
3. Don't look at the for too long.
4. He prefers searching for information on his He can take it everywhere.

Lesson 1 ▶ SB pages 14 & 15

| | | | |
|----------------|--------------|-------------------|------------------|
| without (prep) | بدون | interesting (adj) | شيق / ممتع |
| share (d) (v) | يُشارك | facts (n) | حقائق |
| check (ed) (v) | يفحص / يتحقق | projects (n) | مشروعات |
| messages (n) | رسائل | blog (n) | مُدونة إلكترونية |

| | | | |
|--------------|------------------------|----------------------|-------------------------|
| bedtime (n) | وقت النوم | funny (adj) | مرح / طريف |
| space (n) | الفضاء | useful (adj) | مفيد |
| habit (n) | عادة | online (adj) , (adv) | عبر الإنترنت |
| planets (n) | كواكب | start (ed) (v) | يبدأ |
| type (d) (v) | يكتب [على لوحة مفاتيح] | adventure stories | قصص مغامرة |
| news (n) | الأخبار | cousin (n) | ابن / ابنة العم / الخال |
| wisely (adv) | بحكمة | amazing (adj) | رائع / مدهش |
| break (n) | استراحة | portable (adj) | متنقل |

Lesson 2 ► SB pages 16 & 17

| | | | |
|------------------|-------------------------|----------------------|------------------------|
| social media | وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي | science class | حصة العلوم |
| journey (n) | رحلة | videos (n) | فيديوهات |
| reduce (d) (v) | يقلل | technology habits | عادات تكنولوجية |
| launch (ed) (v) | ينطلق / يطلق | engines (n) | محركات |
| electricity (n) | الكهرباء | smart transportation | النقل الذكي |
| pollution (n) | تلوث | vision (n) | رؤية |
| company (n) | شركة | greener (adj) | أكثر حفاظًا على البيئة |
| smart navigation | الملاحة / التوجيه الذكي | locally (adv) | محليًا |
| support (ed) (v) | يدعم - يؤيد | diesel (n) | وقود الديزل |

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

| Present المضارع | Past الماضي | P.P. التصريف الثالث |
|--------------------|-------------|---------------------|
| think يعتقد / يفكر | thought | thought |
| send يُرسل | sent | sent |
| know يعرف | knew | known |
| feel يشعر | felt | felt |

| | | | |
|-------|-------------|-------|-------|
| take | بأخذ | took | taken |
| hurt | يؤذي / يؤلم | hurt | hurt |
| spend | يقضى وقت | spent | spent |

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

| | | |
|---------------------|--|-----------------------------|
| screen | a flat surface on which pictures or words are shown | شاشة |
| ebook | an electronic book you can read on a screen instead of on paper | كتاب إلكتروني |
| laptop | a portable computer | حاسوب متنقل / محمول |
| night mode | a darker screen setting to protect your eyes in low light | وضع التشغيل الليلي (للشاشة) |
| smartboard | an interactive board used in classrooms for teaching lessons | سبورة ذكية |
| website | a page on the internet that gives information or lets you do things online | موقع إلكتروني |
| digital | using computer technology or electronic devices | رقمي |
| screen time | the time you spend using devices like phones or computers | وقت استخدام الشاشة |
| social media | online platforms where people connect and share content | وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي |

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

| | | | |
|------------------------|-----------------|--------------------------|-------------------|
| take breaks | بأخذ فترات راحة | create jobs | يوفر فرص عمل |
| spend time | يقضى وقت | play online games | يلعب عبر الإنترنت |
| check the phone | يتحقق من الهاتف | | |

Vocabulary Study

► Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

| الكلمة Word | المترادف Synonym | المضاد Antonym / Opposite |
|--------------------|-------------------------|----------------------------------|
| amazing | wonderful / fantastic | normal / ordinary |
| teach | educate | learn |
| connect | join / link | disconnect |

| | | | |
|---------|-------|---------------|------------|
| protect | يحمى | save | يضر / يتلف |
| wisely | بحكمة | sensibly | باهمال |
| useful | مفيد | helpful | غير مفيد |
| support | يدعم | assist / help | يثبط |
| reduce | يقلل | decrease | يزيد |

► Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة ونهاية

| Prefix / Suffix | Function الوظيفة | Examples أمثلة |
|-----------------|---------------------|--|
| -al | تكون الصفة من الاسم | digital رقمي |
| -ing | تحول الفعل لاسم | teaching التدريس |
| -ful | تحول الفعل إلى صفة | useful مفيد |
| -ly | تحول الصفة إلى ظرف | wisely بحكمة |
| -ion | يحول الفعل لاسم | navigation التوجيه / الملاحة pollution التلوث |
| -ity | يحول الصفة لاسم | electricity كهرباء |

✓ Exercise on Vocabulary Study

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- The opposite of the word "protect" is ".....".
a. teach b. connect c. learn d. harm
- We add the suffix "....." to form the adjective from the word "digit".
a. -ment b. -ance c. -al d. -ion
- We add the suffix "....." to form the adjective from the word "help".
a. -ness b. -ful c. -ing d. -ed
- The antonym of the word "reduce" is ".....".
a. increase b. protect c. decrease d. support
- "Amazing" and "....." have the same meaning.
a. dark b. fantastic c. digital d. local



General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 online - offline

* **online (adv)**

▶ Why don't you find information **online** ?

عبر الإنترنت

Reading on lesson 1 SB page 14

* **online (adj) + noun**

▶ **SB** Tarek likes playing **online** games.

مُتصل بالإنترنت

* **offline (adj)**

▶ Ali is **offline**. He can't text me now.

غير مُتصل بالإنترنت

2 instead - instead of

* **instead (adv)**

▶ He didn't use his tablet, he used his smartphone **instead**.

بدلاً من ذلك [تأتي في نهاية الجملة الثانية]

* **instead of + (n) / (inf. + ing)**

▶ **Instead of** doing his homework, he went to bed.

بدلاً من + [اسم] / فعل مضاف له [-ing]

Reading on lesson 2 SB page 15

3 remind - remember

* **remind (v)**

▶ Can you **remind** Ali to bring his car ?

يُذكر [شخص آخر]

Lesson 1 SB page 14

* **remember (v)**

▶ I **remembered** visiting Luxor last year.

يتذكر [من تلقاء نفسه]

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| Expressions | | التعبيرات | |
|------------------------|--------------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------------|
| per minute | في الدقيقة | runs on both | يعمل باستخدام كل من |
| outdoor activities | أنشطة خارجية [في الهواء الطلق] | launched its first | أطلق أول |
| a whole day | يوم كامل | smarter transportation | النقل الذكي |
| use wisely | يستخدم بحكمة | What about + (inf. + ing)? | ماذا عن ... ؟ |
| Prepositions | | حروف الجر | |
| on your phone / tablet | على هاتفك / جهازك اللوحي | use for | يستخدم لـ |
| learn to | يتعلم أن | chat with | يُدرّش مع |
| on the screen | على الشاشة | (be) made by | يصنع بواسطة |
| on the internet | عبر الإنترنت | balance... with | بوازن ... مع |
| vision for | رؤية لـ | share with | يشارك مع |
| at breakfast | في وقت الإفطار | run on | يُدار بواسطة |
| search for | يبحث عن | during the day | أثناء اليوم |



Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

on Lesson 1 SB page 14

A day in Tarek's digital life

1. Tarek's blog post is about his **digital life**⁽¹⁾.
2. Tarek starts his morning by **checking**⁽²⁾ his phone.
3. He usually has three or four messages from his school friends every morning.
4. He uses his tablet to search for news at breakfast.
5. He looks at **screens**⁽³⁾ for a long time, and it's a bad habit.
6. At school they sometimes use the **smartboard**⁽⁴⁾ in their science class.
7. He usually searches for information on his laptop for homework.
8. Before **bedtime**⁽⁵⁾, he often reads ebooks on his tablet.
9. Tarek thinks technology is amazing, but he is learning to use it **wisely**⁽⁶⁾.

| | | |
|-----------|---------------|-----------------|
| شاشات (3) | فحص (2) | حياة رقمية (1) |
| بحكمة (6) | وقت النوم (5) | سيبورة ذكية (4) |

* Technology in our life

on Lesson 2 SB page 16

My screen time

1. Ayman is a 13-year-old student.
2. Ayman spends about three hours a day on his smartphone.
3. He uses **social media**⁽¹⁾ to chat with his friends.
4. He watches funny videos on the internet.
5. Ayman's mother says he should **reduce**⁽²⁾ screen time because it affects his sleep.
6. Ayman thinks that **digital devices**⁽³⁾ are great.

The hybrid bus

1. Egypt has launched its first **hybrid bus**⁽⁴⁾ in Aswan.
2. The hybrid bus runs on both electricity and diesel.
3. It helps reduce pollution and protects the environment.
4. It **supports**⁽⁵⁾ Egypt's **vision**⁽⁶⁾ 2030 for clean and smart cities.

| | | |
|-----------------|-----------|-----------------------------|
| اجهزة رقمية (3) | يقال (2) | وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي (1) |
| رؤية (6) | يساعد (5) | حافلة هجينة (4) |

الجمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل أو كتابة فقرات إنشائية أخرى :

* Our digital life * The hybrid bus

1. Reading and Listening

Reading

• on Lesson 1 SB page 14

HOME | ABOUT | DOWNLOAD

"A Day in My Digital Life"

Hi everyone! My name is Tarek, and I want to share my **digital**⁽¹⁾ day with you.

I always start my morning by checking my phone. I usually have three or four messages from my school friends. Sometimes, my cousin from Alexandria sends me funny pictures.

At breakfast, I often use my **tablet**⁽²⁾ to **search**⁽³⁾ for news. My favorite app shows me interesting facts about animals and space. I never eat without looking at something on my **screen**⁽⁴⁾ - I know it's not a good habit!

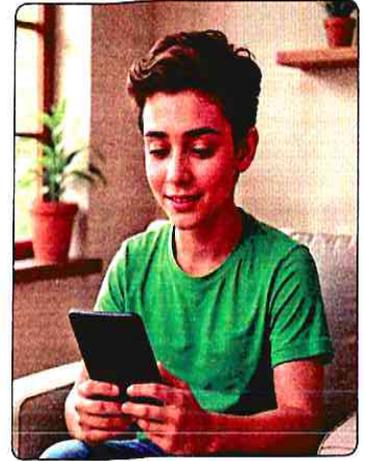
At school, we sometimes use the **smartboard**⁽⁵⁾ in our science class. Our teacher shows us amazing videos about planets and animals. I love watching them! We also use computers in our computer class twice a week. I'm learning to type faster - I can type 25 words per minute now!

After school, I always do my homework first. I usually search for information on my **laptop**⁽⁶⁾ when I need help with my projects. My favorite **website**⁽⁷⁾ has lots of useful information for students.

In the evening, I sometimes play online games with my friends. We usually play for one hour, then we stop. My parents always remind me to take breaks from the screen.

Before bedtime, I often read **ebooks**⁽⁸⁾ on my tablet. I love adventure stories! But I always use the "**night mode**"⁽⁹⁾ so the screen doesn't hurt my eyes.

I think **technology**⁽¹⁰⁾ is amazing, but I'm learning to use it wisely. What about you? How do you use technology in your day?



- Giving the main idea.

إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية.

Answer
the following
questions.

Learn 1. Give a suitable title for the passage.

- Tarek's digital life.

- Extracting information.

استخراج المعلومات.

Practice 2. What does Tarek do in the evening?

| | | | | |
|------------------|------------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| (5) سبورة ذكية | (4) شاشة | (3) يبحث | (2) كمبيوتر لوحي | (1) رقمي |
| (10) التكنولوجيا | (9) وضع الرؤية الليلية | (8) كتب إلكترونية | (7) موقع إلكتروني | (6) كمبيوتر محمول |

Listening

on Lesson 2 SB page 16

"My Screen Time"

Hi, I'm Ayman, a 13-year-old student. I love my digital life! Every day, I spend about three hours on my smartphone. I use **social media**⁽¹⁾ to chat with my friends and watch funny **videos**⁽²⁾ on the internet. It's fun, but sometimes I spend too much time online. My mom says I need to **reduce**⁽³⁾ my screen time because it **affects**⁽⁴⁾ my sleep. She's right. Sometimes I feel tired in the morning. I also use my tablet for homework, like researching for **projects**⁽⁵⁾. **Digital devices**⁽⁶⁾ are great, but I think we need to balance them with outdoor activities.

(1) وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي (2) فيديوهات (3) يقلل (4) يؤثر (5) مشروعات (6) أجهزة رقمية

on Lesson 2 SB page 16

"The Hybrid Bus"

Egypt has **launched**⁽¹⁾ its first hybrid bus in Aswan. It runs on both **electricity**⁽²⁾ and **diesel**⁽³⁾, helping reduce **pollution**⁽⁴⁾ and protect the environment. The bus was made by an Egyptian **company**⁽⁵⁾ and includes modern technology like smart navigation and quiet engines. It **supports**⁽⁶⁾ Egypt's Vision 2030 for clean, smart cities. Most parts of the bus are made locally, creating jobs. This bus is just the start of Egypt's journey to greener, **smart transportation**⁽⁷⁾.



(1) اطلق (2) الكهرباء (3) وقود الديزل (4) التلوث (5) شركة (6) يؤيد (7) النقل الذكي

2. Tips

نصائح

Parts of speech :

أجزاء الكلام :

1 Learn

- 1 **A noun** اسم — A word that names a person, thing, animal or place. هو عبارة عن كلمة تطلق على شخص، شيء، حيوان أو مكان.
- 2 **A verb** فعل — A word that shows an action. هو كلمة تدل على فعل أو حركة.
- 3 **An adjective** الصفة — A word that describes nouns. هي كلمة تصف الأسماء.

2 Practice

- ⊙ Classify the following words in the suitable parts of speech.

funny – start – adventure – digital – website – affect

| Parts of speech | | |
|-----------------|-------|-----------|
| Noun | Verb | Adjective |
| | | |
| | | |

✓ Exercise on Vocabulary

- ⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

► Key vocabulary

- Our teacher explains the lesson using the and shows us amazing videos.
a. wall b. smartboard c. door d. window
- I always use my to search for information on the internet.
a. pen b. laptop c. book d. television
- I use my tablet to read online.
a. ebooks b. smartboards c. smartphones d. screens

4. I with my friends when they're online.
 a. run b. see c. remind d. chat
5. We should between screen time and other outdoor activities.
 a. share b. protect c. balance d. live

SB Exercises

6. **SB** I want to my digital day with you.
 a. draw b. share c. listen d. watch
7. **SB** What devices do you use when you go online?
 a. handmade b. plastic c. digital d. wooden
8. **SB** Egypt has the first hybrid bus in Aswan.
 a. closed b. launched c. damaged d. painted

El-Moasser Exercises

9. It's good to a break after looking at a screen for a long time.
 a. take b. make c. continue d. do
10. I use my phone to take of my cat.
 a. websites b. pictures c. news d. apps
11. I bought a new to connect to the internet and use apps.
 a. calculator b. sheet c. smartphone d. notebook
12. It's a good idea to use mode when reading at night.
 a. book b. phone c. day d. night

Definitions

13. A "....." is a portable computer.
 a. TV b. laptop c. smartboard d. screen
14. The is an interactive board used in classrooms for teaching lessons.
 a. screen b. smartphone c. camera d. smartboard

► Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

15. He likes drinking water of soda because it's healthy.
 a. instead b. under c. before d. near
16. Egypt has a strong vision clean energy and modern cities.
 a. for b. in c. at d. next

3. Speaking

► **Asking and answering questions about your daily routine:** توجيه أسئلة والرد عليها عن نظام يومك المتكرر :

Questions ?

1. How do you spend your day ?
كيف تقضى يومك ؟
2. What things do you do every day ?
ما الأشياء التي تفعلها كل يوم ؟
3. How do you start your morning ?
كيف تبدأ يومك ؟
4. What do you do after school ?
ماذا تفعل بعد المدرسة ؟

Answers ✓

- I use digital devices like smartphones.
أستخدم أجهزة رقمية مثل الهواتف الذكية.
- Every day, I study, use my phone, and chat with my friends online.
كل يوم، أدرس؛ أستخدم هاتفي، وأتحدث مع أصدقائي عبر الإنترنت.
- I start my morning by checking my phone and getting ready for school.
أبدأ صباحي بفحص هاتفي والاستعداد للمدرسة.
- After school, I have a rest, do my homework, and use the internet for learning.
بعد المدرسة، أخذ قسط من الراحة، أؤدي واجبي المدرسي وأستخدم الإنترنت للتعلم.

► **Asking and answering questions about technology:** توجيه أسئلة والرد عليها عن التكنولوجيا :

Questions ?

1. What device do you use most ?
ما الجهاز الرقمي الذي تستخدمه أكثر ؟
2. When do you use it ?
متى تستخدمه ؟
3. Why do you use it ?
لماذا تستخدمه ؟

Answers ✓

- I use my smartphone.
أستخدم هاتفي الذكي.
- I use it in the morning before school.
أستخدمه في الصباح قبل المدرسة.
- I use it to study my lessons, search for information, and talk to my friends.
أستخدمه لأستذكر دروسي، وأبحث عن المعلومات وأتحدث مع أصدقائي.

III Language in use

1. The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

Usage الاستخدام

► We use the present simple tense to express facts, habits and daily routine.

◀ نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن الحقائق، العادات والروتين اليومي.

Formation التكوين

1 Affirmative Statements

الجملة الخبرية
المثبتة

I / You / We / They / + inf.
فاعل جمع + مصدر الفعل

ex. - We usually play tennis on Fridays.

He / She / It / + inf. + s/es/ies
فاعل مفرد + مصدر الفعل

ex. - Rodina sometimes listens to the radio.

Note :

• لاحظ أن :

١. يضاف للفعل (s) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (He / She / It).

ex. - Marwa usually plays tennis on Fridays.

٢. يضاف للفعل (es) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (He / She / It) إذا كان الفعل منتهياً بـ (ss, ch, sh, o, x) :

ex. - My brother often watches TV after lunch.

٣. يضاف للفعل (ies) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (He / She / It) إذا كان منتهياً بـ (y) مسبوقاً بحرف ساكن مع حذف الـ (y) :

ex. - Amal always studies hard for her exams.

2

Negative Statements

الجملة الخبرية
المنفية

I / You / We / They / + don't + inf.
فاعل جمع + مصدر الفعل

ex. - I don't get up early on Fridays.

He / She / It / + doesn't + inf.
فاعل مفرد + مصدر الفعل

ex. - She doesn't walk to school.

Note :

• لاحظ أن :

◀ حرف (s) يحذف من الفعل عند النفي بـ (doesn't) مع المفرد الغائب.

ex. - He doesn't play football on Thursdays.

◀ تستخدم (never) فى النفي مع عدم حذف (s) مع المفرد الغائب.

ex. - The bus never stops near my house.

A Yes/No question : السؤال بـ «هل» :

3
Interrogative
صيغة
الاستفهام

Do + I / you / we / they / inf. ... ?
فاعل جمع + مصدر الفعل

ex. - Do you speak English ?

* Yes, I do.

* No, I don't.

• للإجابة :

Does + he / she / it / inf. ... ?
فاعل مفرد غائب + مصدر الفعل

ex. - Does she cook well ?

* Yes, she does.

* No, she doesn't.

• للإجابة :

• لاحظ أن : حذف حرف (s) من الفعل عند السؤال بـ (Does).

B Wh- question : السؤال بكلمة استفهام :

Question word + do I / we / you / they inf. ... ?
كلمة الاستفهام + does + he / she / it + مصدر الفعل

ex. - What do you study ?

- Where does she go ?

2. Adverbs of Frequency ظروف التكرار



Usage الاستخدام

► Adverbs of frequency with present simple tell us how often something happens.

◀ استخدم ظروف التكرار مع زمن المضارع البسيط لتخبرنا بعدد مرات تكرار الحدث.

ex. - My cousins **sometimes** send me funny pictures.

► Use adverbs of frequency before the main verb, but after (be).

• استخدم ظروف التكرار قبل الفعل الأساسي ولكن بعد (be) :

ex. - We **are never** late for school.

• تستخدم بعض ظروف التكرار في بداية الجملة :

ex. - Sometimes, we go to the club on Sundays.

• تستخدم ظروف التكرار للإجابة على سؤال مبدوء بـ (How often) بمعنى (كم مرة.....؟)

How often + [do / does] + subj. الفاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل ؟

ex. - How often do you walk to school ?

* I never walk to school.

✓ Exercises on Language in use

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB Exercises

- SB** Ali late for school. He always comes early.
a. is usually b. usually is c. never is d. is never
- SB** He his tablet for homework.
a. never use b. usually uses c. uses often d. uses always
- SB** I always my emails in the morning.
a. checking b. checks c. check d. to check
- SB** How do you use the computer in your school ? – We usually use it at school.
a. far b. often c. many d. tall
- SB** He usually for news and reads ebooks.
a. to search b. search c. searches d. searching
- SB** We play online games for one hour, then we stop.
a. last b. usually c. ago d. ever
- SB** How often you use technology in your day ?
a. are b. does c. do d. am

El-Moasser Exercises

8. My father forgets his keys; he is very organized.
a. don't b. doesn't c. never d. always

9. He studies well for his exams, that's why he gets good marks.
 a. never b. rarely c. ever d. always
10. They go to the park on weekends to enjoy nature. It's their habit.
 a. doesn't b. don't c. never d. usually
11. She like adventure stories.
 a. don't b. doesn't c. isn't d. never
12. We ebooks on our smartphones.
 a. reading b. reads c. read d. doesn't read
13. I feel nervous before competitions. It's my problem.
 a. always b. doesn't c. never d. ever
14. He never goes to the gym because he have time.
 a. isn't b. doesn't c. don't d. always
15. She always messages to her friends.
 a. send b. sends c. sending d. to send

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB Exercises

- SB** I (**have usually**) three or four messages from my school friends.
- SB** We (**uses**) the smartboard in our science class.
- SB** I never (**eats**) without looking at something on my screen.
- SB** Why (**do**) Tarek use the night mode ?
- SB** How does the hybrid bus (**helps**) the environment ?

El-Moasser Exercises

- What devices (**does**) you use every day ?
- My favorite website (**have**) lots of useful information.
- She usually (**go**) for a walk in the park.
- I (**always**) eat fast food. I don't like it !
- The children (**play sometimes**) outside when it's cool.
- He usually (**drink**) tea in the morning.

3. Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets :

1. The bus never stops near our house. (**doesn't**)

.....

2. Ali lives in Cairo. (**Where**)

.....

3. He is from Egypt. (**comes**)

.....

4. He is never lazy. (**clever**)

.....

4. Correct the mistakes in the following sentences :

1. They often finishes their homework before dinner.

(.....)

2. What do she learn about the Pyramids ?

(.....)

3. We aren't use technology wisely.

(.....)

4. He doesn't spends much time on social media.

(.....)

5. Find the mistakes in the following and correct them :

1. They always buy meat. They don't like it at all.

(.....)

2. Heba studies sometimes late at night.

(.....)

3. Where often do you use your tablet ? - Everyday.

(.....)

4. She doesn't helps her mother in the kitchen.

(.....)

General Exercises



On Lessons 1 & 2

التقييمات اليومية
والأسبوعية والشهرية
فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب].

1. Tarek wants to his digital day.
a. change b. explain c. share d. break
2. He always starts his day by checking his
a. bank account b. piano c. plan d. phone
3. He often uses his tablet to search for
a. friends b. jobs c. adventures d. news
4. They sometimes use the in the science class.
a. laptop b. computer c. smartboard d. internet

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A/An is a page on the internet that gives us information.
a. screen b. ebook c. website d. screen time
2. Teachers use in classrooms to show videos and presentations.
a. books b. smartboards c. notebooks d. paper

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

board - ebooks - download - night - tablet

Sarah's favorite hobby is reading. She loves reading ebooks on her new
(1) because it's easier to carry than heavy textbooks. She can
(2) hundreds of stories and read them anytime. Her tablet has
a special (3) mode that helps her eyes feel comfortable when
reading at night. Reading (4) has become her favorite habit that she
always enjoys.

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Baher is a 15-year-old boy. He loves technology. He thinks he can't live without technology. Last week, there was a problem in his street with electricity. He couldn't use any of his digital devices, so he was nervous and sad. He used to check his smartphone, text his friends and watch videos online using them.

He spent his day reading a book, talking to his family and doing exercises at home. Baher noticed that he depended on technology to do everything, but he learned an important lesson: technology is useful for us, but we can live without it!

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. At first, Baher was because he couldn't use his digital devices.
a. busy b. lazy c. happy d. nervous
2. The underlined word "useful" can be replaced by " ".
a. expensive b. friendly c. helpful d. dangerous

b. Answer the following questions.

3. What is the main idea of the text ?
.....

4. What does the underlined pronoun "them" refer to ?
.....

5. What do you think of technology ?
.....

6. How did Baher spend his day without technology ?
.....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. She skip breakfast before going to school.
a. never b. rarely c. doesn't d. isn't
2. Streets quiet at night in my city.
a. always was b. are sometimes c. usually are d. is never

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. **SB** My parents always (reminds) me to take breaks from the screen.
2. They (always) go to school on Friday. It is a holiday.
3. (When) often do you play games online ? - Every weekend.
4. We (watch rarely) TV in the evening.

7 Complete the following dialog :

Ayman is asking Mohamed about his favorite digital devices.

Ayman : Hello, Mohamed. Can I ask you a few questions ?

Mohamed : Hello, Ayman. (1)

Ayman : (2)

Mohamed : My tablet is my favorite. It's light to carry and fast to connect to the internet.

Ayman : Do you use it for doing homework ?

Mohamed : (3)

Ayman : Do you take your tablet to school ?

Mohamed : (4) It isn't allowed.

8 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80 – 100) words on :

"Your digital day"

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

.....
.....



SB pages 18 & 19

Lesson

3

Digital Devices

تنويه: ! :الدرس الرابع القصة المقررة في نهاية الكتاب

I

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|-----------------|-----------------------------|-----------------|----------------|
| achieve(d) (v) | بحقق / ينجز | click (ed) (v) | ينقر [بالفأرة] |
| tasks (n) | مهام | headphones (n) | سماعات الأذن |
| assignments (n) | واجبات / مهام دراسية | mouse (n) | فأرة |
| speakers (n) | سماعات | printer (n) | طابعة |
| webcam (n) | كاميرا الويب / كاميرا رقمية | keyboard (n) | لوحة مفاتيح |
| microphone (n) | ميكروفون | noticeboard (n) | لوحة إعلانات |
| board games | ألعاب لوحية | | |



Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

• Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

achieve - keyboard - tasks - ask

1. Our teacher gave us many to do during the weekend.
2. You should study hard to your goals.
3. I use the to type on my computer.

Lesson 3 ▶ SB pages 18 & 19

| | | | |
|-----------------|---------------------------|------------------|------------------|
| typing | الكتابة [على لوحة مفاتيح] | presentation (n) | عرض تقديمي |
| video call (n) | مكالمة فيديو | helpful (adj) | متعاون / مُعين |
| record (ed) (v) | يسجل | schoolwork (n) | عمل / واجب مدرسي |
| print (ed) (v) | يطبع | music (n) | موسيقى |
| search engine | محرك البحث | knowledge (n) | المعرفة |
| notes (n) | ملاحظات | | |

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

| Present المضارع | Past الماضي | P.P. التصريف الثالث |
|-----------------|-------------|---------------------|
| write يكتب | wrote | written |
| say يقول | said | said |
| tell يخبر | told | told |
| come يأتي | came | come |

Vocabulary Study

► Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

| Word الكلمة | Synonym المرادف | Antonym / Opposite المضاد |
|---------------------|-----------------|---------------------------|
| ask يسأل / يستفسر | inquire | answer يجيب |
| achieve يحقق / ينجز | succeed | fail يفشل / يرسب |
| important مهم | necessary | unimportant غير مهم |

► Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة ونهاية

| Prefix / Suffix | Function الوظيفة | Examples أمثلة |
|-----------------|------------------|--------------------------------|
| -er | تحول الفعل لاسم | recorder مسجل printer طابعة |
| -ation | تحول الفعل الاسم | presentation عرض تقديمي |
| -ment | تحول الفعل لاسم | assignment واجب / مهمة دراسية |

✓ Exercise on Vocabulary Study

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. "Achieve" and "....." are synonyms.

- a. succeed b. fail c. lose d. throw

2. To form the noun of the verb "assign", we add the suffix ".....".

- a. -tion b. -ous c. -ment d. -er

3. We can change the verb "record" into a noun by adding the suffix ".....".

- a. -ment b. -er c. -able d. -ive



General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 (Be) used $\begin{cases} \text{to} + (\text{inf.}) \\ \text{for} + \left(\frac{\text{noun}}{\text{inf.} + \text{ing}} \right) \end{cases}$

- يُستخدم في

- ▶ The pen is **used to write** with.
- ▶ **SB** The keyboard is **used for writing** and typing.

2 homework - assignment

* **homework**

- واجب منزلي (مهام قصيرة ومحددة يوم بيوم) تؤدي بالمنزل

- ▶ She does her **homework** before dinner.

* **assignment**

- مهام وواجبات أكثر تعقيداً وتحتاج لوقت [جزء من تقييم أداء الطالب في الصف الدراسي]

- ▶ **SB** I use the keyboard to write my **assignments**.

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| Expressions | | التعبيرات | |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|---------------------|---------------------------|
| move around the screen | التجول بالفأرة على شاشة | write assignments | يؤدي واجبات / مهام مدرسية |
| achieve tasks | ينجح في أداء المهام | make a video call | يجري مكالمة فيديو |
| record a presentation | يسجل عرض تقديمي | talk online | يتحدث عبر الإنترنت |
| show pictures / videos / notes | يعرض صور/فيديوهات / ملاحظات | It's super helpful! | إنه مفيد للغاية! |
| write soon | اكتب لي قريباً | | |
| Prepositions | | حروف الجر | |
| interested in | مهتم بـ | listen to | يستمع إلى |
| tell (someone) about | يخبر شخص عن | ready for ... | جاهز لـ ... |
| click on ... | ينقر باستخدام الفأرة على ... | talk to | يتحدث إلى [شخص] |
| at the end of ... | في نهاية ... | | |



Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

on Lesson 3 SB page 18

Joury's email to her friend Talia

1. Joury tells her friend Talia about some digital devices.
2. She always does her homework on a computer using her **keyboard**⁽¹⁾.
3. Joury uses the mouse to move around the screen, and click on things.
4. She also listens to music using her **headphones**⁽²⁾ or **speakers**⁽³⁾.
5. Sometimes, she **records**⁽⁴⁾ a presentation for class using the **microphone**⁽⁵⁾.
6. Joury's teachers use the **smartboard**⁽⁶⁾ in class for showing pictures, videos and notes.

* Your favorite digital devices

7. Joury **prints**⁽⁷⁾ her homework at the end of the day using a **printer**⁽⁸⁾.
8. The printer is super helpful for Joury.

| | | | |
|-----------------|------------------|------------|-----------|
| (1) لوحة مفاتيح | (2) سماعات الأذن | (3) سماعات | (4) يسجل |
| (5) ميكروفون | (6) سبورة ذكية | (7) يطبع | (8) طابعة |

تنويه : تنويه الجمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل أو كتابة بريد إلكتروني أو فقرة إنشائية :

https://t.me/G5_Y5

Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz

تدرب على 10 من
قطع الفهم
ولصوص الاستماع

Reading

on Lesson 3 SB page 18

New Message
— □ ×

To : Talia@moe.com cc : bcc :

From : Joury@moe.com

Subject : Digital Devices

Hi Talia,

How are you? Today I want to tell you about the **digital**⁽¹⁾ devices I use every day to achieve my **tasks**⁽²⁾.

First, I always do my homework on the computer. I use the **keyboard**⁽³⁾ to write my **assignments**⁽⁴⁾. It is used for writing and typing. I also use the **mouse**⁽⁵⁾ to move around the screen and click on things.

When I watch videos or listen to music, I use my headphones or speakers. If I want to make a video call with my friends online, I use the **webcam**⁽⁶⁾.

Sometimes, I have to record a presentation for class; that's when I use the **microphone**⁽⁷⁾. At school, my teacher uses a **smartboard**⁽⁸⁾ to show us pictures, videos, and notes.

At the end of the day, I print my homework using the **printer**⁽⁹⁾. It's super helpful!

Write soon and tell me about the digital devices you use.

Love,
Joury

🗑️ :
🔗 😊 🖼️ 🎵 📄 📧 Send Now

- Giving the main idea.

إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية.

Answer
the following
questions.

Learn

1. Give a suitable title for the passage.

- Digital devices are super helpful!

- Extracting information.

استخراج المعلومات.

Practice

2. How does Joury record a presentation ?

| | | | | |
|--------------------|-------------------|-----------------|--------------|------------------|
| (5) فأرة الكمبيوتر | (4) واجبات / مهام | (3) لوحة مفاتيح | (2) مهام | (1) رقمي |
| | (9) طباعة | (8) سبورة ذكية | (7) ميكروفون | (6) كاميرا الويب |

2. Word-building skills

Word families :

- ▶ All words belong to families.
- ▶ There are different types of word families.
- ▶ One type of word family involves words that come from the same root word.

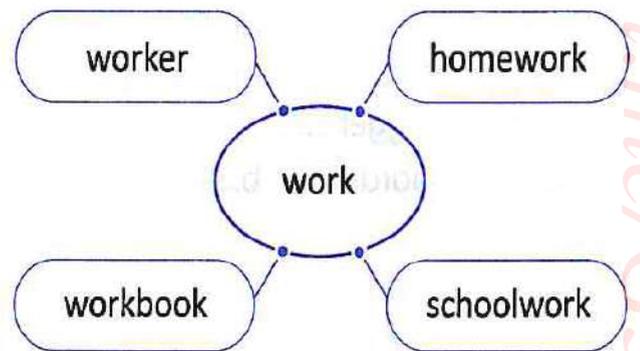
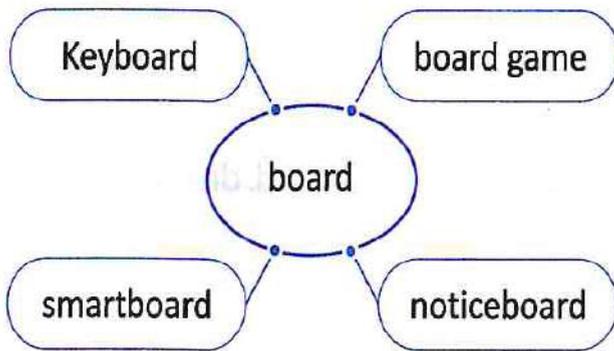
• عائلات الكلمة.

جميع الكلمات تنتمي إلى عائلات.

هناك أنواع مختلفة من عائلات الكلمة.

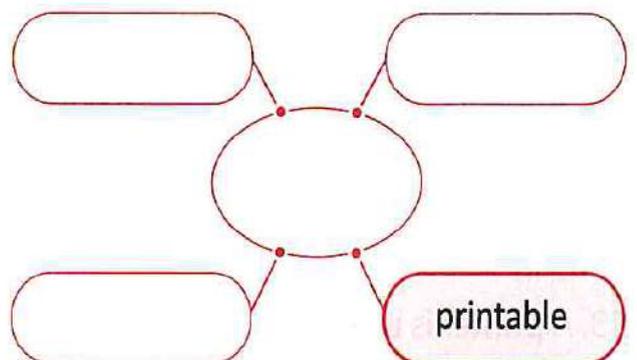
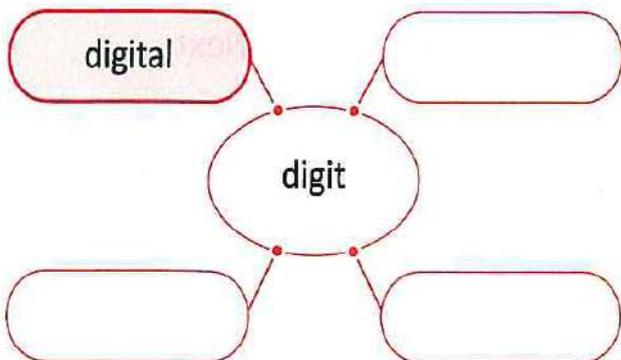
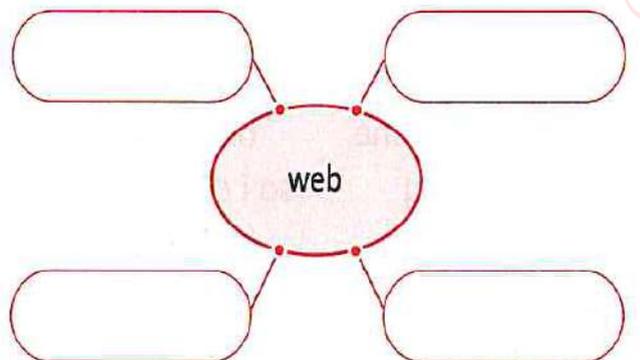
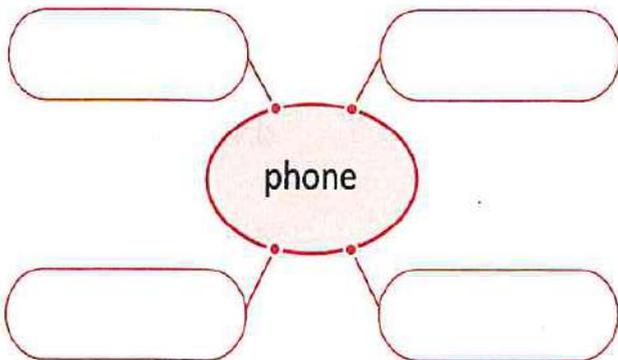
أحد أنواع عائلة الكلمة يتضمن الكلمات التي تأتي من نفس جذر الكلمة.

Learn



Practice

SB Use an online dictionary or a search engine to complete the diagram.



**Exercise****on Vocabulary**

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

▶ **Key vocabulary**

- Sara wants to her goal to be a computer programmer.
a. forget b. achieve c. lose d. stop
- Our teacher gave us three to do before the weekend.
a. games b. toys c. tasks d. gifts
- The students worked hard to finish their on time.
a. breakfast b. games c. assignment d. parties
- We need bigger for the party.
a. smartboards b. speakers c. rulers d. drawers

SB Exercises

- SB** I have to record a presentation for the class using the and microphone.
a. printer b. webcam c. mouse d. keyboard
- SB** I like to make a call with my friends online using the webcam.
a. voice b. video c. sound d. written

El-Moasser Exercises

- The helps me type words on the computer.
a. microphone b. screen c. keyboard d. mouse
- I forgot my , so I couldn't listen to music.
a. printer b. smartboard c. board d. headphones
- He uses his to make calls and connect to the internet.
a. smartphone b. smartboard c. keyboard d. mouse

▶ **Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions**

- the end of the day, we play sports together.
a. On b. About c. At d. Next
- Students have to their assignment before Friday.
a. watch b. write c. move d. belong
- I am really interested science and space.
a. in b. on c. at d. about
- A printer is used for texts or images on paper.
a. print b. printing c. prints d. printed

General Exercises



On Lesson 3

التقييمات اليومية
والأسبوعية والشهرية
في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب].

1. Students use devices every day.
a. digital b. wooden c. handmade d. old
2. They write with the keyboard.
a. assignments b. movies c. designs d. photos
3. To make a video call, they use the
a. mouse b. laptop c. printer d. webcam
4. They need a printer to print their
a. results b. jobs c. homework d. photos

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. We use the to type on the computer.
a. mouse b. printer c. keyboard d. speakers
2. I bring my to listen to music.
a. keyboard b. headphones c. printer d. smartboard

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

record – homework – write – device – printer

The school's computer lab has new computers. It also has a new (1) that helps students print their assignments quickly. Each (2) is connected to the internet. The computer teacher can help you learn how to (3) your assignment very fast using the keyboard. Digital tools make doing (4) really interesting.

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Every morning, I wake up and check my phone. I read the news, reply to messages, and check social media. After breakfast, I read an ebook for 15 minutes. Then, I connect my headphones and join my online class. Our smartboard helps me take notes, and my teachers send messages through our class website. Sometimes, I feel I use technology too much, but I also think it helps me learn faster and stay connected. Without my digital devices, my day would be very different.



SB Pages 22 : 25

Lessons

5 & 6

- ▶ An Email to a friend
- ▶ Team-Project Roundtable

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---------------------|------------------------------------|-------------------|-----------------|
| trust (ed) (v), (n) | يثق / ثقة | tool (n) | أداة |
| safety tips | ارشادات السلامة | the latest news | أحدث الأخبار |
| performance (n) | أداء / عرض | organize (ed) (v) | يُنظم |
| ICT class | حصة تكنولوجيا المعلومات والاتصالات | routine (n) | نظام يومي متكرر |
| roundtable (n) | اجتماع طاولة مستديرة/حلقة نقاش | | |



Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

trust - routine - ICT - news - website

1. I like walking outside in the early morning. It's my daily
2. I my friend Ayman. He is really honest.
3. class helps me use the computer well.
4. What's the latest

Lesson 5 ▶ SB pages 22 & 23

| | | | |
|----------------------|-------------|-----------------|--------------------|
| messages (n) | رسائل | information (n) | معلومات |
| reply (ied) (v), (n) | يرد / رد | online games | ألعاب عبر الإنترنت |
| boring (adj) | ممل | mobile phone | هاتف محمول / متنقل |
| friendly (adj) | ودود / لطيف | simple (adj) | بسيط |

Lesson 6 ▶ SB pages 24 & 25

المفردات اللغوية المساعدة لأداء الـ "Project"

| | | | |
|----------------|-------------|------------------|----------------|
| chance (n) | فرصة | respectful (adj) | يتسم بالإحترام |
| add (ed) (v) | يُضيف | slogan (n) | شعار |
| classmates (n) | زملاء الفصل | the whole class | الفصل بالكامل |

| | | | |
|----------------|-----------|-----------------|---------------|
| colorful (adj) | ملون | rules (n) | قواعد |
| smart (adj) | ذكي | paper (n) | ورق |
| wall (n) | حائط | produce (d) (v) | يُصدر / يُنتج |
| marker (n) | قلم تظليل | team project | مشروع فريق |

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

| Present المضارع | Past الماضي | P.P. التصريف الثالث |
|-----------------|-------------|---------------------|
| rise يرتفع | rose | risen |
| read يقرأ | read | read |
| see يرى | saw | seen |

Vocabulary Study

► Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

| Word الكلمة | Synonym المرادف | Antonym / Opposite المضاد |
|-----------------------|-----------------|----------------------------|
| correct صحيح | right | wrong خطأ |
| safe آمن | protected | dangerous خطير |
| online متصل بالإنترنت | connected | offline غير متصل بالإنترنت |

► Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة ونهاية

| Prefix / Suffix | Function الوظيفة | Examples أمثلة |
|-----------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| -ance | تحول الفعل إلى اسم | performance عرض / أداء |
| -er | تحول الفعل إلى اسم فاعل | speaker متحد / مكبر صوت |
| -tion | تحول الفعل إلى اسم | information معلومات |

✓ Exercise on Vocabulary

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Your answer for this question isn't correct. It's
 a. hard b. wrong c. safe d. easy
- Some games can be played online and others can be played
 a. outline b. line c. offline d. underline

3. We can get the noun from the verb "speak" by adding the suffix ".....".
 a. -ion b. -er c. -ment d. -ly
4. "Protected" and "....." have the same meaning.
 a. hard b. safe c. dangerous d. easy



General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 webcam - camera

* webcam

كاميرا متصلة بجهاز كمبيوتر أو تليفون

- ▶ I opened my webcam while chatting with my friend online.

* camera

كاميرا تستخدم لالتقاط الصور الثابتة

- ▶ I took some great photos of this view with my camera.

2 devices - apps

* devices

أجهزة / أدوات / وسائل

- ▶ Smartboards and smartphones are useful devices.

* apps

تطبيقات أو برامج على الكمبيوتر أو الموبايل لأداء مهام معينة

- ▶ WhatsApp and Facebook are important apps.

3 type - write

* type

يكتب باستخدام لوحة مفاتيح على جهاز إلكتروني

- ▶ I finished typing my email to Ali an hour ago.

* write

يكتب باستخدام قلم

- ▶ Salma wrote the lesson in her notebook.

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| Expressions التعبيرات | | | |
|------------------------|-----------------|------------------|-------------------------|
| write back | يكتب ردًا على | get a chance | ينال فرصة |
| do my best | أبذل قصارى جهدي | pass the paper | يمرر الورقة |
| go online | يتصل بالإنترنت | stay safe online | يبقى آمنًا عبر الإنترنت |
| Prepositions حروف الجر | | | |
| reply to | يرد على | in full | بشكل كامل |
| try to | يحاول أن | | |

II Skills

للحزب من إشقان
المهارات اللغوية
كراسة المعاصر
للمهارات اللغوية

https://t.me/G5_Y5

on Lesson 5 SB page 22

New Message
— □ ×

To : ayman@moe.com cc : bcc :

From : ahmed@moe.com

Subject : My Digital Day

Hi Ayman,

How are you? I want to tell you about my digital day. When I get up, I always check my phone. I read messages from my friends and reply to them. Then, I have breakfast while I use my tablet to search for the latest news. At school, teachers usually use a smartboard to help us learn well. We always use computers in the ICT class.

After school, I often go online searching for the information for my homework. I always take information from the websites I trust. In the evening, I sometimes play online games with my friends. I never read ebooks on my tablet. I think they are boring. My mother always says, "Reading is better than playing online games." What about you?

Write back and tell me about your digital day.

Yours,
Ahmed

🗑️ :
🔗 🗣️ 🖼️ 🎵 📄 📧
Send Now

✓ Exercise on Vocabulary

⦿ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

▶ Key vocabulary

1. What is your favorite trusted to get information?

a. road

b. website

c. wall

d. game

2. On weekends, I my room and help my mother in the kitchen.
a. organize b. read c. trust d. review
3. My dad bought me a new because I really love taking pictures.
a. keyboard b. camera c. microphone d. mouse
4. When I have a problem, I tell someone who I about it.
a. meet b. see c. design d. trust

SB Exercises

5. **SB** I send to my friends every day and they reply to them.
a. messages b. markers c. devices d. classes
6. **SB** Reading is better than playing online
a. notes b. research c. games d. emails
7. **SB** My morning starts with checking my phone.
a. test b. routine c. study d. exam

EI-Moasser Exercises

8. In class, we learn how to use the digital devices.
a. science b. art c. ICT d. maths
9. Please, to my email soon.
a. spend b. reply c. go d. make
10. The movie was very I almost fell asleep.
a. exciting b. interesting c. boring d. good
11. This is a very useful website. It has a lot of about our project.
a. games b. toys c. information d. devices
12. This question is very I can answer it easily.
a. hard b. simple c. difficult d. incorrect

► Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

13. I didn't reply your message because I was very busy.
a. of b. to c. on d. too
14. We need to our best to be successful.
a. ask b. read c. do d. make
15. He always online to check the news.
a. gets b. goes c. rides d. passes
16. She a chance to speak in the meeting last week.
a. replied b. drove c. got d. tried

2. Writing

مهارة الكتابة

A. How to write an email :

كيفية كتابة رسالة بريد إلكتروني :

Learn

- رسالة البريد الإلكتروني (email) هي الصيغة العصرية للخطاب التقليدي (letter).
- يُستخدم البريد الإلكتروني (email) في المراسلات بين الأقارب والأصدقاء.
- يتم كتابة عنوان المُرسَل إليه في سطر المُرسَل إليه (To)
- يتم كتابة عنوان موضوع رسالة البريد الإلكتروني في سطر الموضوع (Subject) أو (About).
- في بداية موضوع الرسالة، يتم كتابة اسم المُرسَل إليه بعد كلمة (Dear/ Hello/Hi) مثل:

Dear Sama, Hello Fatma, Hi Youssef,

يبدأ البريد الإلكتروني بأحد تعبيرات التحية مثل:

How are you? كيف حالك؟ I hope you are OK! أتمنى أن تكون على ما يرام!

I am very happy to send you this email! أنا سعيد جدًا لإرسال هذا البريد الإلكتروني لك!

• قبل توقيع المُرسَل في نهاية الرسالة تُستخدم بعض تعبيرات التحية الختامية مثل:

Yours, All the best, Lots of love, Write back and tell me about ...

Write back soon! Talk to you later!

To : عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للمرسل إليه

From : عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للراسل

Subject : موضوع الرسالة

Hi / Hello + اسم المرسل إليه → Greeting and name :

المقدمة Introduction

الجزء الرئيسي main part

Write back soon! → closing sentence جملة ختامية

Lots of love,

Adam → signature التوقيع

Practice

Write an email of (80 - 100) words to your friend Alaa about your daily routine using technology. Your name is Ayat and your email address is ayat@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is alaa@gmail.com.

| | |
|---|----------------------|
| To: | <input type="text"/> |
| From: | <input type="text"/> |
| Subject: | <input type="text"/> |
| <hr/> | |

B. Punctuation Marks : → Capital Letters

Learn

- Capital letters are used :

تستخدم الحروف الكبيرة :

1 At the beginning of a sentence.

١. في بداية الجملة.

ex. - The sun rises in the east.

2 For proper nouns.

٢. لأسماء العلم.

ex. - Maha, Aswan, Egypt, Africa, Cairo Tower.

3 With days, months and holidays, but not seasons.

٣. مع أيام الأسبوع، الشهور، الإجازات الرسمية وليست فصول السنة.

ex. - Monday, April, Christmas.

4 For languages and nationalities.

٤. مع اللغات والجنسيات.

ex. - English, Arabic, Spanish, Egyptian.

5 With pronoun "I".

٥. مع الضمير (I).

ex. - Rana and I love to read books.

Practice

⊙ Rewrite the following using the correct punctuation :

1. **SB** i went to alexandria last june.

.....

2. nadeen works hard to achieve her goals.

.....

3. she is the youngest egyptian writer.

.....

4. **SB** my friend ahmed lives on nahas street.

.....

Master your skills

يهدف إلى تنمية
مهارات
اللغة الإنجليزية



General Exercises



On Lessons 5 & 6

التقييمات اليومية
والأسبوعية والشهرية
فى نهاية الكتاب

https://t.me/G5_Y5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Did he to your message ? - No, not yet.

- a. trust b. reply c. talk d. play

2. I often online to search for information.

- a. have b. do c. go d. take

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

laptop - keyboard - ebooks - mouse - games

My dad bought a new laptop for my sister. She needs it for her work. She can type very fast using the (1) She does projects and presentations using her (2) In her free time, she reads (3) Sometimes, she lets me play video (4) on her laptop.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Some children interested in playing online games.

- a. rarely are b. was rarely c. are rarely d. is rarely

2. Does she her phone for too long ?

- a. uses b. use c. used d. using

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. When (does) you get up ?

2. How (long) does he make video calls ? - He often makes video calls.

3. She (have) lunch at 9 p.m.

4. I (sleep usually) early on Saturdays.

5 Complete the following dialog :

Father is asking Eslam about his school day.

Father : How was your day at school ?

Eslam : It was very (1) I really enjoyed it.

Father : Interesting ! What did you enjoy in the class ?

Eslam : I enjoyed watching (2) on the smartboard.

Father : (3) were the videos about ?

Eslam : They were about the space and planets.

Father : (4) you have school assignments today ?

Eslam : Yes, I did.

6 Write an email of EIGHTY (80) words :

جواب عنده في نهاية الكتاب

To your friend Adam about your favorite devices when using technology. Your name is Ahmed and your email address is ahmedsamy@gmail.com. Your friend's email address adam2o@gmail.com.

| | |
|--|--|
| To: | |
| From: | |
| Subject: | |
| <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> | |

https://t.me/G5_Y5

Review



on unit 1

| Vocabulary | Language | Speaking |
|--|--|---|
| Lessons 1 & 2 digital smartboard screen website laptop night mode remind social media affect Lesson 3 keyboard webcam speakers headphones printer microphone internet smartphone announcement Lessons 5 & 6 the latest news trust devices routine respect reply | 1- The Present Simple Tense التكوين البسيط زمن المضارع البسيط Formation Affirmative statement : الجملة الخبرية : He / She / It / فاعل مفرد + inf. + s/es/ies I / You / We / They / فاعل جمع + inf. - He drives cars well. Negative statement : الجملة المنفية : فاعل + doesn't/don't + inf. - We don't go to school on Fridays. Interrogative : الجملة الاستفهامية : Do / Does + فاعل + inf. ? - Does Mariam listen to music on the bus ? - Yes, she does. - No, she doesn't. Wh- + do / does + فاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل ? - What do you do after school ? - I often do my homework after school. 2- Adverbs of frequency ظروف التكرار - always دائماً - often غالباً - never أبداً - usually عادة • تستخدم ظروف التكرار مع زمن المضارع البسيط : عن عدد مرات تكرار حدوث فعل ما - She always studies hard for her final exams. | 1. Asking and answering about daily routine : • How do you spend your day ? - I use digital devices like smartphones. • What things do you do every day ? - Every day, I study, use my phone, and chat with my friends online. 2. Asking and answering questions about technology : • What device do you use most ? - I use my phone. • When do you use it ? - I use it in the morning before school. • Why do you use it ? - I use it to study my lessons, search for information and talk to my friends. |

Skills

1 Reading Comprehension

Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مهارة تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية في النص.

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة.

Read the following text, then answer the questions :

I'm Mohab. I'm in grade 7. I love technology. In the morning, I always start my day by checking my phone. I usually have messages from my school friends. At breakfast, I often use my tablet to search for news. My favorite app shows me interesting facts. I also use my laptop for my homework. It helps with my project. Then, I use the printer for printing homework. It's super helpful!

• The underlined word "helpful" is the opposite of ".....".

- a. useful b. nice
c. good d. useless

التحدي قد تجد صعوبة في تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية في النص.

مفتاح الحل عند قراءة الفقرة تجد أنه يمكن تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية في النص.

2

Speaking

Spending summer vacation

يختبر سؤال المحادثة [dialog] قدراتك للتعبير عن مواقف معينة.

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة.

Complete the following dialog :

Mona is asking Tarek about a day in his digital life.

Mona : Hi Tarek! What do you do in the morning ?

Tarek : I always check my phone. I usually have some (1) from my friends.

Mona : Do you use any other (2) in the morning ?

Tarek : Yes, I often use my tablet to search for news at breakfast.

Mona : That sounds (3) ! What do you do at school ?

Tarek : Our teacher sometimes uses the (4) to watch videos in science class.

التحدي تريد السؤال عن [الحياة الرقمية اليومية] وتجد صعوبة في تكوين أسئلة والرد عليها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من الأسئلة والردود عن الموضوع.

General Exercises on unit 1

التقييمات اليومية
والأسبوعية والشهرية
في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions : استمع مع معلمك واجب عن الأسئلة. [نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب].

1. What lesson didn't Rafik understand ?
.....

2. What did Rafik search online for ?
.....

3. How was the photos and sounds of the video ?
.....

4. What is Rafik opinion about technology ?
.....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- means using computer technology or electronic devices.
a. Hybrid b. Digital c. Online d. Useful
- You should use your phone It's a good habit.
a. rarely b. loudly c. wisely d. slowly
- He often to school with his brother.
a. is going b. going c. goes d. go
- she take breaks during study ? - Yes, she does.
a. Do b. Did c. Does d. Doing

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

printer – smartboard – make – webcam – breakfast

When I watch videos or listen to music, I use my headphones or speakers. If I want to (1) a video call with my friends online, I use the (2) Sometimes, I have to record a presentation for class; that's when I use the microphone. At school, my teacher uses a (3) to show us pictures, videos, and notes. At the end of the day, I print my homework using the (4) It's super helpful.

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Egypt has launched its first hybrid bus in Aswan. It runs on both electricity and diesel, helping reduce pollution and protect the environment. The bus was made by an Egyptian company and includes modern technology like smart navigation and

quiet engines. It supports Egypt's Vision 2030 for clean, smart cities. Most parts are made locally, creating jobs. This bus is just the start of Egypt's journey to greener, smart transport.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- The hybrid bus is in
 a. Luxor b. Aswan c. Alexandria d. Suez
- The underlined word "**quiet**" is the opposite of "....." .
 a. peaceful b. silent c. calm d. noisy

b. Answer the following questions :

3. What energy does the hybrid bus use ?

.....

4. What does the underlined pronoun "**It**" refer to ?

.....

5. Give a suitable title to the passage.

.....

6. How can the hybrid bus project reduce pollution ?

.....

5 Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets :

1. He doesn't cycle to school. (**never**)

.....

2. Basant is always late. (**comes**)

.....

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. In Egypt, it is (**always**) cold in August. It's the hottest month.

2. Hazem and Ali (**learns**) how to use technology wisely.

3. The children (**not play**) in the park on Sundays.

4. Does Maged (**studies**) on the weekend ?

7 Complete the following dialog :

Farah and Rose are talking about ebooks.

Rose : (1)

Farah : I'm reading an ebook on my tablet.

Rose : (2)

Farah : It is a book you can read on a digital device instead of paper.

Rose : Digital device! (3)

Farah : Yes. I agree, it's helpful. It can save paper and protect the environment.

Rose : Great ! How often do you read ebooks before bedtime ?

Farah : (4)

► **Story** The Magic Classroom (Chapter One)

8 a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Omar felt at the beginning.

- a. happy b. excited c. nervous d. sad

2. The children felt after they opened the box.

- a. angry b. scared c. happy d. worried

b. Answer the following questions :

1. What did Zain do to help Omar ?

.....

2. Why do you think children were curious and excited about the magic classroom ?

.....

9 Write an email of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"To your friend Ehab about digital devices. Your name is Samy and your email address is samysaleh@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is ehabpop@yahoo.com."

To:

From:

Subject:

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

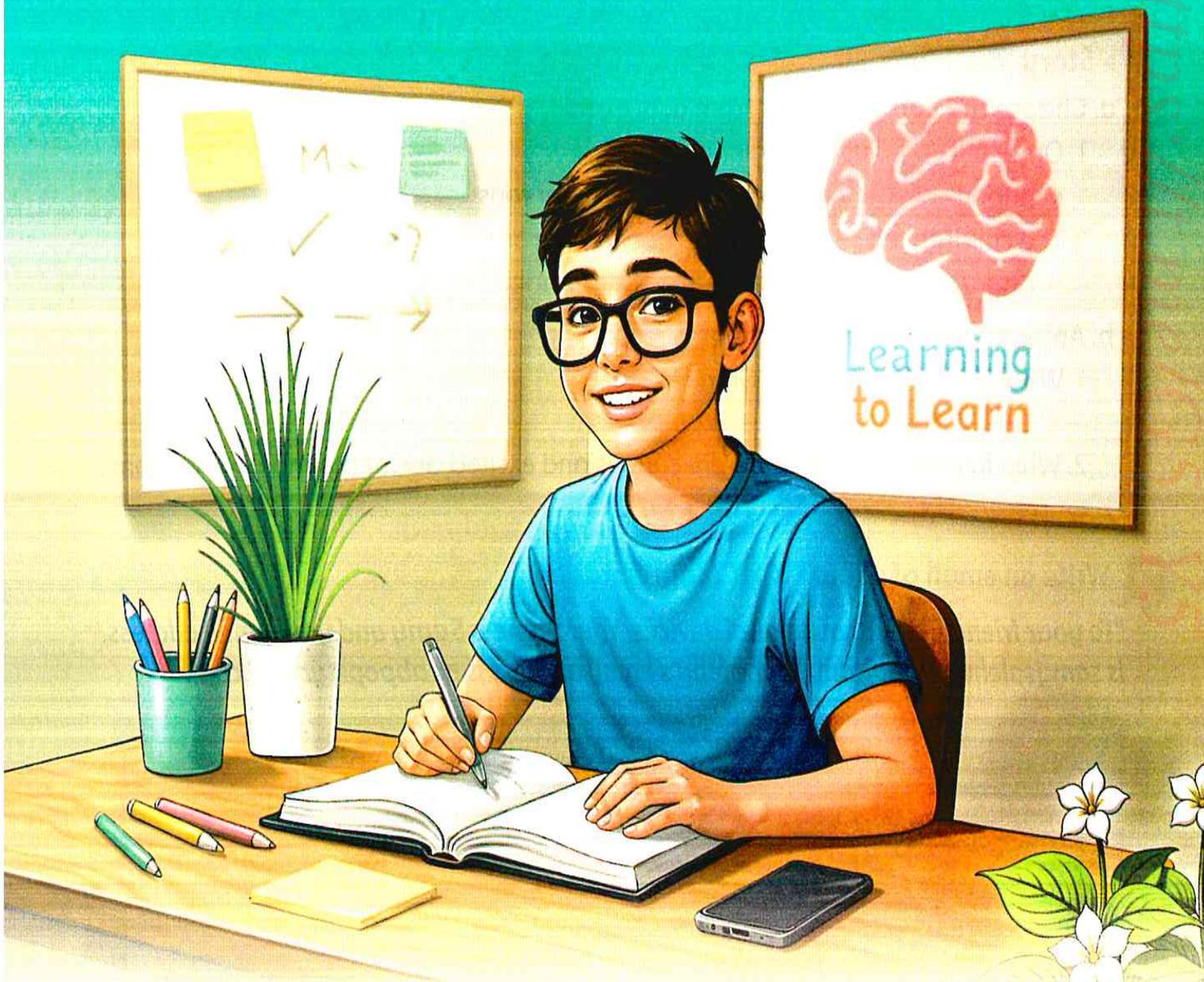
.....

.....

.....

Unit TWO

Learning to Learn



SB pages 27 : 40

Learning outcomes :

• Reading :

- Identify the main idea in texts about learning styles and tools
- Identify specific details about different learning strategies and methods
- Relate reading content to personal experiences with learning

• Listening :

- Identify the main idea in audio texts about learning goals and strategies
- Identify specific details about setting and achieving personal learning goals

• Speaking :

- Express personal learning styles, habits, and preferences
- Share and reflect on learning experiences in small groups

• Language :

- Use "can" accurately to describe learning abilities
- Use present continuous tense correctly

• Writing :

- Write short descriptive sentences about personal learning styles and habits
- Write about a learning app, website, or activity



SB pages 28 : 31

Lessons

1 & 2

- ▶ My learning journey
- ▶ Learning challenges and solutions

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|----------------------|---|-----------------------|----------------------|
| auditory learners | متعلمين بالمؤثرات السمعية | experiments (n) | تجارب [علمية] |
| kinesthetic learners | متعلمين عن طريق الأنشطة الحركية والحسية | passion (n) | شغف / اهتمام |
| visual learners | متعلمين بالمؤثرات البصرية | suit (ed) (v) | يناسب / يلائم |
| hands-on activities | أنشطة تطبيقية | learning style | اسلوب تعلم |
| methods = styles (n) | طرق / وسائل | distraction (n) | تشيتت الانتباه |
| techniques (n) | تقنيات / أساليب | charts (n) | مخططات / رسوم بيانية |
| focus (ed) (v) | يركز | organize (d) (v) | ينظم |
| avoid (ed) (v) | يتجنب | explanation (n) | تفسير / توضيح |
| schedule (n) | جدول أو برنامج محدد للمواعيد | review (ed) (v) , (n) | يراجع / مراجعة |
| mind maps | خرائط ذهنية | challenge (n) | تحدي |
| memorize (d) (v) | يحفظ / يتذكر [عن ظهر قلب] | sight (n) | حاسة البصر |



Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

methods – focus – experiments – improve – avoid

1. You should making online friends.
2. Sportspeople on having healthy habits.
3. Doing in science labs is very useful for students.
4. Writing a lot helps students their handwriting.

Lesson 1 ▶ SB pages 28 & 29

| | | | |
|----------------|-------|------------|-----------------|
| journey (n) | رحلة | real life | الحياة الواقعية |
| touch (ed) (v) | يلمس | loud (adj) | عالى الصوت |
| expression (n) | تعبير | topics (n) | موضوعات |

| | | | |
|-----------------|---------------------|-------------------|---------|
| neat (adj) | منظم / مهندم | discuss (ed) (v) | يناقش |
| study space | مساحة مخصصة للدراسة | regularly (adv) | بانتظام |
| organized (adj) | منظم / مرتب | models (n) | نماذج |
| arrange (d) (v) | يرتب | physical (adj) | بدني |
| quiet (adj) | هادئ | remember (ed) (v) | يتذكر |

Lesson 2 ▶ SB pages 30 & 31

| | | | |
|--------------------|-----------------|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| key (n) | مفتاح / مدخل | research (ed) (v) , (n) | يبحث / بحث |
| folder (n) | ملف / مجلد | unforgettable (adj) | لا ينسى |
| success (n) | نجاح | revise (d) (v) | يراجع |
| solutions (n) | حلول | playground (n) | ملعب |
| individually (adv) | بشكل فردي | enjoyable (adj) | ممتع |
| competition (n) | مسابقة | experience (n) | تجربه حياتيه / خبرة سابقة |
| relax (ed) (v) | يستريح / يسترخي | | |

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

| Present المضارع | Past الماضي | P.P. التصريف الثالث |
|-----------------|-------------|---------------------|
| understand يفهم | understood | understood |
| draw يرسم | drew | drawn |
| do يفعل | did | done |
| build يبني | built | built |
| choose يختار | chose | chosen |
| become يصبح | became | become |

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

| | | | | |
|------|--------------------|-------------------------|------------|--------------|
| do | experiments | يجري تجارب علمية | use an app | يستخدم تطبيق |
| | hand-on activities | يقوم بعمل أنشطة تطبيقية | | build models | يصنع / يبتكر نماذج |
| have | a problem | لديه مشكلة | | |

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

| | | |
|--------------------|--|----------------|
| visual | related to sight and seeing | مرئي |
| auditory | related to hearing things | سمعي |
| kinesthetic | related to hands-on activities and physical actions | حركي / حسي |
| organize | to arrange or put things in a particular order or a neat way | يُنظم |
| mind maps | a visual tool used to organize information | خرائط ذهنية |
| techniques | special methods or ways of doing something | أساليب / طرق |
| improve | to make something better | يُحسن |
| successful | achieving what you wanted to do | ناجح |
| review | looking at something again to remember it | يراجع / مراجعة |
| regularly | doing something often at the same times | بانتظام |

Vocabulary Study

► Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

| الكلمة Word | المرادف Synonym | المضاد Antonym / Opposite |
|--------------------------|------------------------|----------------------------------|
| understand يفهم | know / realize | misunderstand يسيء الفهم |
| neat مرتب / منظم | arranged / organized | messy فوضوي |
| quiet هادئ | calm | noisy صاخب |
| particular معين / خاص | special / certain | general / common عام |
| improve يُحسن | develop | damage يلحق الضرر بـ |

► Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة ونهاية

| المقطع Prefix / Suffix | الوظيفة Function | أمثلة Examples |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------------|
| -er | تحول الفعل لاسم | learner متعلم |
| -able | تحول الفعل لصفه | enjoyable ممتع |
| -ion | تحول الفعل لاسم | distracti <u>o</u> n تشيتت |

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Hassan isn't messy. He is very clean and ".....".
a. general b. noisy c. neat d. plain
- "....." is the opposite of "noisy".
a. Lazy b. Happy c. Colorful d. Quiet
- The suffix "....." changes the verb "distract" into a noun.
a. -ment b. -ion c. -able d. -er
- We can form the adjective from the verb "enjoy" by adding the suffix ".....".
a. -able b. -er c. -tion d. -est



General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 quiet – quite

* quiet (adj)

- ▶ I like living in quiet places.

هادئ

* quite (adv) + (adj)

- ▶ Salma is quite short.

إلى حد ما

2 sight – seeing

* sight

- ▶ My sight isn't very good, so I need glasses.

حاسة الإبصار

* seeing

- ▶ She was happy about seeing her old friend.

الرؤية بالعين المجردة

3 review – interview

مراجعة / يراجع

* review (n), (v)

- ▶ I need to make a review for my lessons before the exam.

مراجعة شيء بغرض دراسته وتذكره

* interview (v) (n)

- ▶ I'm having an important interview tomorrow for a new job.

يقابل / مقابلة شخصية [بغرض وظيفة] أو [حوار]

- ▶ They will interview five people for the job.

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

| Expressions | التعابير | Prepositions | حروف الجر |
|-----------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------|
| stay focused | يظل على تركيزه | away from | بعيدًا عن |
| solve the problems | يحل المشكلات | turn off | يفصل / يغلق جهاز |
| say things out loud | يقول الأشياء بصوت عال | related to | مرتبط بـ |
| take breaks | يأخذ فترات راحة | revise for ... | يراجع لـ ... |
| work individually | يعمل بطريقة فردية | at the same times | في نفس الأوقات |
| make something better | يجعل شيء ما أفضل | during the learning experience | أثناء تجربة التعلم |
| get enough sleep | يحصل على قدر كاف من النوم | at the beginning | في البداية |
| move around | يتجول / يتنقل | step by step | خطوة بخطوة |
| change over time | يتغير مع مرور الوقت | get ready for | يستعد لـ |
| get better | يتعافى / يتحسن | in a particular order | في ترتيب محدد |
| take notes | يدون ملاحظات | on the internet | على الإنترنت |
| | | in a team | في فريق |

A week is enough

مراجعة المنهج
و التمكن منه في
اسبوع واحد فقط

EL-MOASSER





Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

on Lesson 1 SB page 29

Different ways people learn

1. Every person learns **differently**⁽¹⁾.
2. There are three learning styles.
3. **Visual learners**⁽²⁾ like learning by seeing things such as reading or looking at pictures.
4. **Auditory learners**⁽³⁾ prefer learning by hearing information such as listening to music or **discussion**⁽⁴⁾ topics with others.
5. **Kinesthetic learners**⁽⁵⁾ learn best by moving and **touching**⁽⁶⁾. They like to do **experiments**⁽⁷⁾ and building **models**⁽⁸⁾.
6. Understanding your learning **style**⁽⁹⁾ helps you study better.
7. You can choose the right method that makes learning easier and more enjoyable.

| | | | |
|------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| (4) مناقشة | (3) المتعلمين بالمؤتمرات السعيدة | (2) المتعلمين بالمؤتمرات البصرية | (1) بشكل مختلف |
| (9) أسلوب | (7) تجارب علمية | (6) اللمس | (5) المتعلمين بالأنشطة الحركية |
| | (8) نماذج | | |

Learning challenges and solutions

1. Ahmed is a 12-year-old student.
2. Ahmed has learned how to study **better**⁽¹⁾ this year.
3. He **organizes**⁽²⁾ notes in folders, so he can find them **easily**⁽³⁾.
4. Ahmed makes a study **schedule**⁽⁴⁾ every week which helps him **focus**⁽⁵⁾ on one subject at a time.
5. Ahmed's teacher says good study **habits**⁽⁶⁾ are important for success.
6. Ahmed studies in a **quiet**⁽⁷⁾ room and **turns off**⁽⁸⁾ his phone to avoid **distraction**⁽⁹⁾.
7. Ahmed takes short **breaks**⁽¹⁰⁾ to relax.

| | | | | |
|-----------|----------|-----------------|----------|-----------|
| (5) يركز | (4) جدول | (3) بسهولة | (2) ينظم | (1) أفضل |
| (10) راحة | (9) تشتت | (8) يفصل / يقطع | (7) هادئ | (6) عادات |

الجملة السابقة تساعدك على التعامل أو كتابة فقرات إنشائية أخرى:

* Different ways of learning

* Your favorite style of learning

https://t.me/G5_Y5

تنويه:

II Skills

1. Reading and Listening

Reading

Pop Quiz

تدرب على 10 من
قطع الفهم
ونصوص الاستماع

on Lesson 1 SB page 29

"Different⁽¹⁾ Ways People Learn"

Every person learns differently. Some people learn best by seeing information. These are **visual⁽²⁾** learners. They like to read books, look at pictures, and use colorful notes. Visual learners often make maps and **charts⁽³⁾** to **organize⁽⁴⁾** information.



Other people learn best by hearing information. These are **auditory⁽⁵⁾** learners. They like to listen to music while studying, discuss topics with friends, and hear explanations from teachers. Auditory learners often repeat information out loud to remember it.

Some people learn best by moving and touching. These are **Kinesthetic⁽⁶⁾** learners. They like to do **experiments⁽⁷⁾**, build models, and take breaks to move around. Kinesthetic learners often use their hands to help them think.

Understanding your learning style helps you study better. When you know how you learn best, you can choose the right **methods⁽⁸⁾** for yourself. This makes learning easier and more enjoyable.

مختلف (1)

بصري (2)

رسوم بيانية (3)

ينظم (4)

سمعي (5)

حسي (6)

تجارب علمية (7)

طرق (8)

Answer
the following
questions.

- Extracting information.

Learn

1. What are the different styles of learning ?

- *Visual, auditory and kinesthetic.*

Practice

2. What's your favorite style of learning ?

استخراج المعلومات.

Listening

on Lesson 2 SB page 30

Learning how to learn is one of the most important **skills⁽¹⁾** for students. Every person has a different **learning style⁽²⁾**. Some students learn best by reading. Others by listening, and some by doing activities.

مهارات (1)

اسلوب تعلم (2)

The **key**⁽³⁾ is to find your own **style**⁽⁴⁾ that works. Good learners don't just **memorize**⁽⁵⁾ information—they understand it. They ask questions, **take notes**⁽⁶⁾, and **review regularly**⁽⁷⁾. When studying becomes difficult, **good**⁽⁸⁾ learners take breaks and try different methods. The most **successful**⁽⁹⁾ students are those who never stop trying to improve their learning techniques.

- (3) مفتاح أو مدخل لشيء
- (4) نمط / أسلوب
- (5) يتذكر / يحفظ
- (6) بدون ملاحظات
- (7) يراجع بانتظام
- (8) جيد
- (9) ناجح

• on Lesson 2 SB page 30

Hi, I'm Ahmed, a 12-year-old student. I've learned how to study better this year. First, I organize my notes in **folders**⁽¹⁾ so I can find them easily. I also make **a study schedule**⁽²⁾ every week. This helps me **focus on**⁽³⁾ one subject at a time. My teacher says **good study habits**⁽⁴⁾ are important for **success**⁽⁵⁾.

For example, I study in a quiet room and **turn off my phone**⁽⁶⁾ to avoid distractions. Sometimes, it is hard to stay focus, but I take short breaks to **relax**⁽⁷⁾. Learning to learn makes **schoolwork**⁽⁸⁾ easier and more enjoyable!

- (1) ملفات
- (2) جدول أو برنامج للمذاكرة
- (3) يركز على
- (4) عادات المذاكرة الجيدة
- (5) نجاح
- (6) أغلق تليفوني
- (7) يستريح
- (8) الواجب المدرسي

Exercise on Vocabulary

⦿ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

► Key vocabulary

- Ahmed avoids by studying in a quiet place.
 - a. challenges
 - b. distractions
 - c. solutions
 - d. techniques
- Good learners often their notes regularly to remember information.
 - a. forget
 - b. ignore
 - c. review
 - d. lose
- Different learning can help students study more effectively.
 - a. problems
 - b. rooms
 - c. techniques
 - d. folders

SB Exercises

- People who learn best by seeing information are called learners.
 - a. auditory
 - b. kinesthetic
 - c. visual
 - d. active

5. Good study habits are important for
a. success b. sadness c. farming d. playing
6. Auditory learners often remember things best when they information out loud.
a. write b. repeat c. draw d. organize
7. If you like to do experiments and build models, you might be a/an learner.
a. visual b. auditory c. kinesthetic d. difficult
8. Mind maps are a visual tool used to information.
a. forget b. hide c. organize d. lose

Definitions

9. "....." means doing something often at the same times.
a. Successfully b. Regularly c. Poorly d. Rarely
10. A student is someone who achieves what they wanted to do.
a. regular b. difficult c. successful d. distracted

El-Moasser Exercises

11. If you prefer quiet places away from talking or music to learn, you are likely a/an learner.
a. visual b. auditory c. kinesthetic d. lazy
12. My study space needs to be, so I can study well.
a. messy b. tidy c. noisy d. dark
13. When you know how you learn best, you can choose the right for yourself.
a. problems b. methods c. friends d. subjects
14. Ahmed tries to his learning methods to get better results.
a. leave b. decrease c. improve d. avoid

► Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

15. When studying is difficult, taking short can be helpful.
a. tests b. breaks c. notes d. exams
16. When you get enough sleep, you stay
a. focused b. distracted c. disappointed d. lazy

2. Speaking

مهارة التحدث

▶ Your learning style :

اسلوب التعلم الخاص بك :

Questions ?

Answers ✓

1. What are learning styles ?

- ما هي اساليب التعلم ؟

- Visual, auditory and kinesthetic learning styles.
- أساليب مرئية وسمعية وحركية.

2. Do you think everyone learns the same way ? Why / Why not ?

- هل تعتقد أن كل شخص يتعلم بنفس الطريقة ؟ لما / لما لا ؟

- No, I don't think so. Everyone understands in different ways and they choose their styles to study better.
- لا اعتقد ذلك - فكل شخص يفهم بطريقة مختلفة ويختار الأساليب التي تجعلها يدرس بطريقة أفضل.

3. What learning style suits you best?

- ما هو اسلوب التعلم الذي يناسبك ؟

- I learn best by hearing information.
- أنا اتعلم افضل عن طريق سماع المعلومات.

4. What things help you learn best ?

- ما هي الأشياء التي تساعدك على تعلم افضل ؟

- Listening to music while studying, discussing topics with friends and hearing explanations from teachers.
- الاستماع إلى الموسيقى اثناء المذاكرة ، مناقشة الموضوعات مع الزملاء وسماع الشرح من المعلمين.

III Language in use

1. can / can't

يستطيع / لا يستطيع

▶ We use (can + inf.) to say what we are able to do.

◀ نستخدم (can + inf.) للتعبير عما نستطيع فعله.

▶ We use (cannot / can't + inf.) to say what we are not able to do.

◀ نستخدم (cannot / can't + inf.) للتعبير عما لا نستطيع فعله.

Expressing ability and inability

التعبير عن القدرة وعدم القدرة

... مصدر الفعل. can / cannot [can't] + inf. → فاعل Subject

ex. - We can remember well when we get enough sleep.

- I can't answer the question because it's difficult.

Asking about ability

السؤال عن القدرة

Yes / No question (هل) السؤال

Can + subject الفاعل + inf. ?

ex. Can you climb a tree ?

Yes, I can.

No, I can't.

Wh-question بكلمة الاستفهام السؤال

Question word + can/can't + subject فاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل .. ?

ex. A : What can you do, Ahmed ?

B : I can speak English well.

Exercises on Language in use "can / can't"

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB Exercises

- We can better when we have a goal.
a. focused b. focus c. focuses d. focusing
- She can very well.
a. swim b. swimming c. swam d. swum
- My favorite subject is English. I speak it very well.
a. can't b. could c. can d. couldn't
- You can the right learning method for yourself.
a. choosing b. chooses c. to choose d. choose

El-Moasser Exercises

- He can a new language in his free time.
a. to learn b. learn c. learning d. learns
- She ride a bike. She is one year old.
a. can b. isn't c. does d. can't
- Can you the meaning of this word?
a. remember b. remembers c. remembered d. to remember
- How can you learning easier?
a. made b. make c. to make d. making

9. I build a model from carton. It's fun.
 a. was b. am c. can d. does
10. do the science experiment? - Yes, I can.
 a. You can b. Can he c. She can't d. Can you

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB Exercises

- We..... [**can't**] remember well when we get enough sleep.
- We [**can**] understand well when we are distracted.
- Students can [**used**] trusted websites to find information.

El-Moasser Exercises

- Can you [**found**] the mistake in this sentence ?
- They can [**moves**] around the city on a bus.
- I [**can**] understand the instructions. I need help!
- [**You can**] play football ? - Yes, I can.
- She can [**to fly**] a kite in the park.
- How can I [**improves**] my reading skill ?

2. The Present Continuous Tense

زمن المضارع المستمر

Formation التكوين

1 Affirmative Statements

الجملة الخبرية
المثبتة

I am
 He / She / It / فاعل مفرد + is + (inf. المصدر + ing)....
 We / You / They / فاعل جمع are

- ex.** - I **am reading** short stories **at the moment**.
 - He **is practicing** hard to get ready for the competition.
 - We're **trying** to solve the problem together.

2 Negative Statements

الجملة الخبرية
المنفية

I am
He / She / It / فاعل مفرد + is + not + (inf. المصدر + ing)
We / You / They / فاعل جمع are

ex. - She isn't studying English at the moment.
- They aren't playing tennis now.

3 Interrogative

صيغة
الاستفهام

(A) Yes/No question : (أ) السؤال بـ "هل" :

Am I
Is + he / she / it / فاعل مفرد + (inf. المصدر + ing) ..?
Are we / you / they / فاعل جمع

ex. - Is she helping sick people at present ?
* Yes, she is. * No, she isn't.
ex. - Are they growing potatoes now ?
* Yes, they are. * No, they aren't.

(B) Wh-question : (ب) السؤال بكلمة استفهام :

Question word + is + subject + (inf. المصدر + ing) ...?
كلمة الاستفهام are الفاعل

ex. - Where are you going now ?
* To the club.

Usage الاستخدام

► We use the present continuous to talk about actions that are happening now.

◀ يستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر للتحدث عن أحداث تقع أثناء التحدث (لحظة الكلام).

ex. - They are cleaning the library now.

Note

ملاحظات على إضافة [ing] للفعل

◀ عندما ينتهي الفعل بحرف الـ (e) غير منطوق (قبلة حرف ساكن) تحذف (e) قبل إضافة (ing).

write → writing practice → practicing

◀ إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن مسبقاً بحرف متحرك نضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير قبل إضافة (ing) (بشرط أن يكون الفعل مكون من مقطع واحد).

swim → swimming sit → sitting

◀ لاحظ، أنه لا يضاعف الحرف الأخير إذا كان الفعل ينتهي بحرف ساكن مسبوق بحرفين متحركين.

feed → feeding

wait → waiting

Key words كلمات دالة

غالبًا تأتي مع الزمن :

| | | | | | |
|----------|--------|--------------------------|--------|---------------|-----------------|
| now | الآن | Take care ! | احذرا! | at the moment | في تلك اللحظة |
| Look ! | انظرا! | right now | الآن | at present | في الوقت الحاضر |
| Listen ! | انصت! | Look out ! / Watch out ! | احترس! | | |

ex. - Listen! She's singing.

- He is working now.

Exercises on Language in use "Present Continuous Tense"

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB Exercises

- I my vocabulary notes right now.
a. revise b. am revising c. revised d. revises
- We doing experiments in the lab.
a. can b. was c. will d. are
- I am better step by step.
a. get b. gets c. got d. getting
- They football in the playground at the moment.
a. played b. are playing c. play d. plays
- We trying to solve the problem together.
a. can b. will c. do d. are

El-Moasser Exercises

- He a film in the cinema now.
a. watch b. is watching c. watched d. watches
- Look! The children in the garden.
a. is playing b. plays c. are playing d. played

8. I sleeping. You can talk with me.
a. am not b. aren't c. wasn't d. can't
9. She lunch at the moment.
a. cooked b. cook c. is cooking d. cooks
10. working right now?
a. Will he b. Is he c. He is d. Can he

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB Exercises

1. Layla [use] an app to learn words at the moment.
2. The students [be] revising for the exams.
3. He is [research] information on the internet.
4. I'm [learn] new vocabulary for the English class.
5. He [be] practicing hard to get ready for the competition.

El-Moasser Exercises

6. What are you [do] now ?
7. Look! It [rain] heavily.
8. She [not be] listening to music.

3. Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets :

SB Exercises

1. **SB** We do experiments in the lab. [now]
.....
2. **SB** I get better step by step. [getting]
.....
3. **SB** The students revise for the exams. [revising]
.....
4. **SB** He researches information on the internet. [is]
.....

El-Moasser Exercises

5. She studies her lessons. [now]

.....

6. He isn't able to at sing well. [can't]

.....

7. Yes, they are cooking now. [Are]

.....

8. Rana is sleeping at the moment. [not]

.....

4. Correct the mistakes in the following sentences :

1. Are you play tennis right now ? (.....)
2. How can we improved our reading skills ? (.....)
3. She can to fly a kite in the park. (.....)
4. Why do you making a map ? (.....)

5. Find the mistakes in the following and correct them :

SB Exercises

1. **SB** I'm learn new vocabulary at the moment. (.....)
2. **SB** She can swims very well. (.....)
3. **SB** They were playing football in the playground right now. (.....)
4. **SB** My favorite subject is English, so I can't speak it very well. (.....)

El-Moasser Exercises

5. I am sorry. I can help you now. (.....)
6. She is reading a book yesterday. (.....)
7. Does he solve problems easily ? - Yes, he can. (.....)
8. They are grow crops in the field. (.....)

General Exercises



On Lessons 1 & 2

التقييمات اليومية
والأسبوعية والشهرية
فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. Every person learns
a. easily b. quickly c. differently d. hard
2. Some people learn best by information.
a. drawing b. seeing c. making d. listening to
3. Visual learners like to
a. make models b. listen to music c. read books d. do experiments
4. Visual learners often make charts to information.
a. organize b. get c. understand d. revise

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. means related to hands-on activities and physical action.
a. Kinesthetic b. Visual c. Auditory d. Digital
2. Good students know how to their time well.
a. develop b. organize c. waste d. share

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

understand - trying - style - good - give up

Learning how to learn is one of the most important skills for students. The key is to find your own (1) that works. Good learners don't just memorize information- they (2) it. They ask questions, take notes, and review regularly. When studying becomes difficult, (3) learners take breaks and try different methods. The most successful students are those who never stop (4) to improve their learning techniques.

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Some people learn best by seeing things. They are called visual learners. Others prefer to listen to information. These are auditory learners. There are also kinesthetic learners who learn by doing activities. Knowing your learning style can help you study better. For example, if you are a visual learner, you can use pictures and diagrams. If you are an auditory learner, you can listen to recordings. Kinesthetic learners can try hands-on activities to understand better.

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The underlined word "These" refers to
a. photos b. diagrams
c. kinesthetic learners d. auditory learners

2. The underlined word "**visual**" means related to
- | | |
|------------------------|-------------------|
| a. hands-on activities | b. hearing things |
| c. sight | d. technology |

b. Answer the following questions :

3. What is the main idea of the text?

.....

4. How can auditory learners study better?

.....

5. What are the three types of learners mentioned in the text?

.....

6. Which learner is better at learning languages in your opinion?

.....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Is he a break at the moment?
- | | | | |
|---------|---------|-----------|----------|
| a. took | b. take | c. taking | d. takes |
|---------|---------|-----------|----------|
2. You hear the loud music from the window.
- | | | | |
|---------|--------|--------|--------|
| a. does | b. can | c. are | d. has |
|---------|--------|--------|--------|

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

- Liza can't (speaks) Arabic, but she is learning it at present.
- Listen! The baby (cry) in the room.
- They (not be) studying at the moment.
- I (can) run fast. My leg hurts.

7 Complete the following dialog :

Mazen and Salah are talking about learning styles.

Mazen : Which learning style do you prefer?

Salah : (1)

Mazen : (2)

Salah : I prefer kinesthetic style because I like hands-on activities. What about you?

Mazen : I'm a visual learner. (3)

Salah : I love science.

Mazen : (4)

Salah : Because we do experiments in the science class.

8 Write a paragraph of about A HUNDRED (100) words on :

"Learning styles"

.....

.....

مجاناً فقط في نهاية الكتاب

https://t.me/G5_Y5



SB pages 32 & 33

Lesson

3

Benefits of Learning Together

تنويه: ! الدرس الرابع القصة المقررة في نهاية الكتاب

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|------------------|---------|---------------------|--------------|
| benefits (n) | فوائد | confident (adj) | واثق |
| opinions (n) | آراء | communicate (d) (v) | يتواصل |
| solutions (n) | حلول | cooperation (n) | التعاون |
| express (ed) (v) | يُعبّر | creative (adj) | مُبدع |
| leadership (n) | القيادة | experiences (n) | تجارب حياتية |



Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

benefits - solutions - Leadership - creative - cooperation

1. When we solve problems together, we can find the best
2. Having healthy meals and doing sports have great
3. The between the members of the team is very important .
4. has special skills because it isn't easy to be a successful leader.

Lesson 3 ► SB pages 32 & 33

| | | | |
|----------------|---------------|--------------------|-------------------------|
| together (adv) | مقا / سوياً | explain (ed) (v) | يشرح |
| groups (n) | مجموعات | spidergram (n) | شكل توضيحي عنكبوتي |
| powerful (adj) | قوى | computer programs | برامج الحاسب |
| freely (adv) | بحرية | diagram (n) | رسم توضيحي |
| thinkers (n) | مفكرون | supporting details | تفاصيل داعمة |
| teamwork (n) | عمل جماعي | media (n) | الاعلام / وسائل الاعلام |
| life skills | مهارات حياتية | create (d) (v) | يبتكر / يُبدع |
| modern (adj) | حديث | likely (adv) | من المحتمل |

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

| Present المضارع | Past الماضي | P.P. التصريف الثالث |
|-----------------|-------------|---------------------|
| know يعرف | knew | known |
| teach يدرس | taught | taught |
| give يعطي | gave | given |
| speak يتحدث | spoke | spoken |

Vocabulary Study

► Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

| Word الكلمة | Synonym المرادف | Antonym المضاد |
|----------------|--------------------|-------------------------------|
| confident واثق | certain / positive | shy / unsure خجول / غير متأكد |
| reason سبب | cause | result نتيجة |
| succeed ينجح | pass | fail يفشل |

► Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة ونهاية

| Prefix / Suffix | Function الوظيفة | Examples أمثلة |
|-----------------|----------------------------------|-----------------------|
| -ship | تحول اسم الفاعل لاسم دال على صفة | leadership القيادة |
| -ive | تحول الفعل لصفة | creative مبدع |
| -ion | يحول الفعل لاسم | communication التواصل |

✓ Exercise on Vocabulary Study

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Mustafa didn't succeed in the exam. He it.
a. refused b. passed c. accepted d. failed
- The suffix "....." changes the noun "leader" into another noun.
a. -ment b. -ship c. -ive d. -er
- The suffix "-ion" changes the verb "communicate" into a/an ".....".
a. noun b. verb c. adjective d. adverb



General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 help + (obj.) + (inf.)

يساعد في

- ▶ **SB** Teamwork helps students develop their skills.

2 experience – experiment

* experience (n)

تجربة شخصية / خبرة حياتية

- ▶ **SB** Using digital tools creates powerful learning experiences.

* experiment (n)

تجربة [معملية]

- ▶ Doing experiments in science classes is very useful for students.

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| Expressions التعبيرات | |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| learn in groups | يتعلم في مجموعات |
| give reason | يعطى سبب / مبرر |
| look like | يشبه |
| share opinions | يشارك الآراء |
| find solutions to | يجد حلولاً لـ |
| express themselves freely | يعبرون عن انفسهم بحرية |
| feel more confident | يشعر أنه أكثر ثقة |
| Prepositions حروف الجر | |
| care for | يهتم بـ |
| believe in | يؤمن بـ |
| communicate with | يتواصل مع |
| make new friends | يكون صداقات جديدة |
| find information | يجد معلومات |
| make group learning enjoyable | يجعل التعلم الجماعي أكثر متعة |
| create powerful learning experiences | يوفر خبرات تعلم فعالة |
| think about | يفكر في |
| in front of | أمام |
| spend much time with | يقضى وقتًا كثيرًا مع |



Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

on Lesson 3 SB page 32

Benefits of learning together

1. Learning in groups has a lot of **benefits**⁽¹⁾ for learners.
2. They can share opinions, discuss problems and find **solutions**⁽²⁾.
3. **Teamwork**⁽³⁾ helps students develop their skills and be **confident**⁽⁴⁾.
4. They can learn how to communicate with others and express themselves freely.
5. Teamwork teaches students **cooperation**⁽⁵⁾, and **leadership**⁽⁶⁾.

6. Spending much time with others helps them make new friends.
7. Modern technology **develops**⁽⁷⁾ teamwork by using new apps and websites to find information.
8. Using **digital devices**⁽⁸⁾ creates powerful learning experiences.

| | | | |
|-----------------|-------------------|-------------|-------------|
| واثق (4) | العمل الجماعي (3) | حلول (2) | فوائد (1) |
| أجهزة رقمية (8) | طورت (7) | القيادة (6) | التعاون (5) |

الجميل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل أو كتابة فقرات إستثنائية أخرى:

تأنيبه :

* Benefits of learning together

* The importance of teamwork

on Lesson 3 SB page 32

Benefits of Learning Together

Learning in groups has more benefits than learning alone. When students work in large or small groups, they share opinions, discuss problems and find **solutions**⁽¹⁾ to them. Teamwork helps students **develop**⁽²⁾ their skills and be **confident**⁽³⁾. It also helps them know how to **communicate**⁽⁴⁾ with others and understand them. When a student shares their opinion about a topic, they learn how to express themselves freely using their own words. Teamwork teaches students **cooperation**⁽⁵⁾ and **leadership**⁽⁶⁾; it also helps them to be creative thinkers. Learning with others also helps students to make new friends because they spend much time with each other doing projects, solving problems and doing experiments.



Modern technology makes group learning very enjoyable. Students can use **apps** and websites on the internet to find information about their work. Using **digital devices**⁽⁷⁾ creates powerful **learning experiences**⁽⁸⁾.

- Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context.

تخمين معنى مفردة لفوية فى النص.

Choose
the correct
answer.

- Learn** 1. The underlined word "**develop**" in the first paragraph means ".....".
 a. learn b. **improve** c. help d. solve
- Practice** 2. The underlined word "**apps**" most likely means ".....".
 a. tools and devices b. food and drinks
 c. advertisements d. computer programs

Word-bulding skills

► Spidergrams :

المخططات العنكبوتية :

► A spidergram is a diagram that helps us organize ideas.

المخطط العنكبوتي هو رسم بياني يساعدنا على تنظيم الأفكار.

► A spidergram looks like a spider with legs!

يشبه المخطط العنكبوتي (العنكبوت الذي له أرجل!).

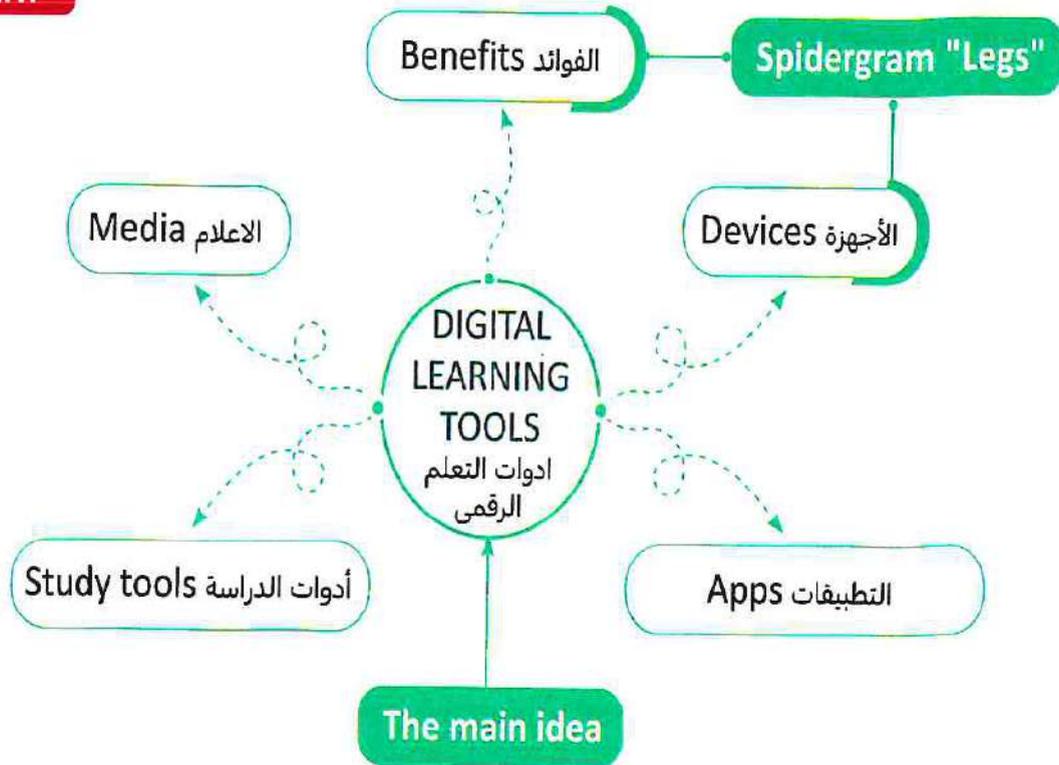
► The main idea is in the middle.

الفكرة الأساسية تكون في المنتصف.

► The "legs" show supporting details/ideas or examples.

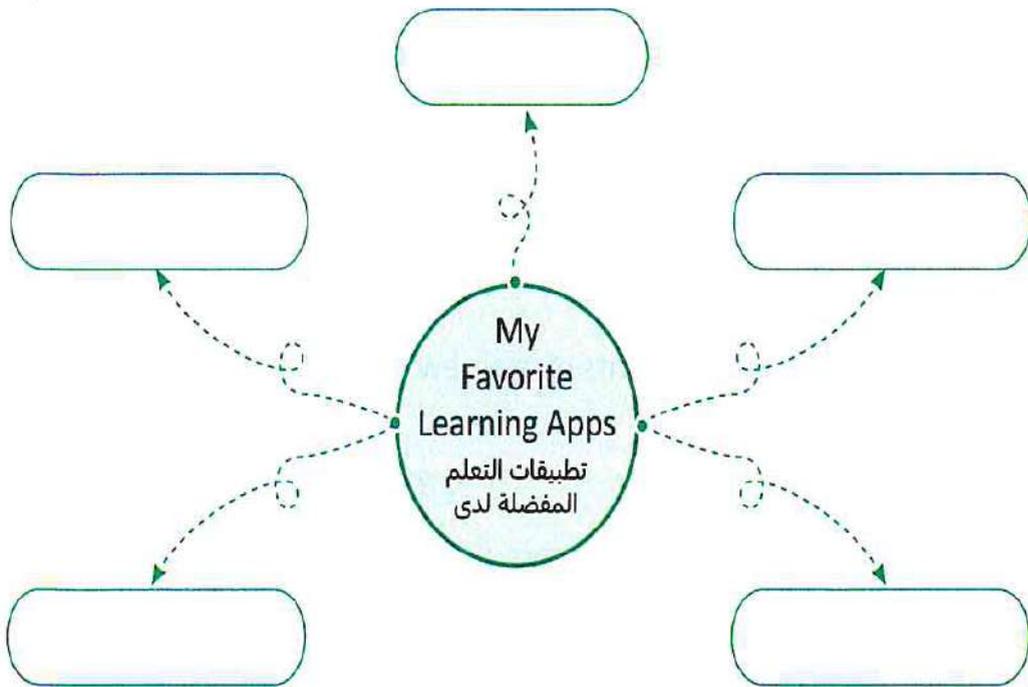
التفاصيل الداعمة والأفكار والامثلة تكون موضحة على الأرجل.

Learn



Practice

Look, read and complete the spidergram :



Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

- Group learning has more than learning alone. It's a great way.
a. problems b. challenges c. benefits d. difficulties
- Teamwork helps students their skills and be confident.
a. lose b. hide c. develop d. forget
- Students can use and websites to find information online.
a. books b. pens c. apps d. papers
- Teamwork teaches students and leadership.
a. competition b. shouting c. cooperation d. distraction

SB Exercises

5. Digital devices create learning experiences.
 a. weak b. difficult c. boring d. powerful
6. Working in a group helps students to freely using their own words.
 a. confuse b. communicate c. hide d. forget
7. Students can learn to be creative when they work in teams.
 a. tools b. thinkers c. followers d. listeners

EI-Moasser Exercises

8. Learning with others helps students make new because they spend time together.
 a. problems b. projects c. friends d. decisions
9. When you work together to find answers, you are finding
 a. problems b. solutions c. difficulties d. challenges
10. Working in a group can help students feel more when learning a new language.
 a. shy b. nervous c. confident d. tired
11. I use some useful to help me learn online.
 a. apps b. recipes c. expressions d. leaders
12. We do science in the laboratory.
 a. words b. experiments c. games d. meals
13. Technology makes study more and fun.
 a. boring b. crowded c. difficult d. enjoyable

► Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. Students spend much time each other doing projects.
 a. from b. with c. without d. on
15. When students work in groups, they learn to opinions and discuss problems.
 a. hide b. keep c. share d. ignore
16. I believe Ayman's abilities to achieve his goal.
 a. on b. in c. at d. with

General Exercises



On Lesson 3

التقييمات اليومية
والأسبوعية والشهرية
فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب].

1. Learning in groups has more than learning alone.
a. students b. problems c. benefits d. tools
2. When students work in large groups, they opinions.
a. check b. test c. have d. share
3. Teamwork helps students develop their skills and be
a. shy b. confident c. powerful d. brave
4. Teamwork helps students know how to with others.
a. challenge b. develop c. find d. communicate

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. They always find a to any problem when they discuss it.
a. team b. job c. solution d. website
2. Using digital devices creates powerful learning
a. drawings b. problems c. apps d. experiences

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

communicate – cooperation – share – challenge – Teamwork

Learning in groups has more benefits than learning alone. When students work in large or small groups, they (1) opinions, discuss problems and find solutions to them. (2) helps students develop their skills and be confident. It also helps them know how to (3) with others and understand them. When a student shares their opinion about a topic, they learn how to express themselves freely using their own words. Teamwork teaches students (4) and leadership; it also helps them to be creative thinkers.

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Teamwork helps students develop their skills and be **confident**. It also helps them know how to communicate with others and understand them. When a student

shares their opinion about a topic, they learn how to express themselves freely using their own words. Teamwork teaches students cooperation and leadership. It also helps them to be creative thinkers. Learning with others also helps students to make new friends because they spend much time with each other doing projects, solving problems, and doing experiments.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- The underlined pronoun "It" refers to ".....".
 a. teamwork b. leadership c. time d. technology
- The opposite of the underlined word "confident" is ".....".
 a. helpful b. brave c. shy d. smart

b. Answer the following questions :

3. Give a suitable title to the text.

.....

4. How can teamwork help students?

.....

5. Why can teamwork help students make new friends?

.....

6. Which is better in your opinion : working in groups or alone?

.....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Technology can our learning fun.
 a. making b. make c. makes d. to make
- The teacher the lesson on the school website now.
 a. explained b. explains c. is explaining d. explaining

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

- You can [expressing] your thoughts freely.
- Are they [read] the story?
- Can you [works] in a group?
- I am [design] a new website for slow learners right now.

7 Complete the following dialog :

Ashraf and Helmy are talking about teamwork.

Ashraf: Do you prefer working in a team or alone?

Helmy: I prefer working in a (1)

Ashraf: (2) do you prefer that ?

Helmy: Because we can share different ideas in a group.

Ashraf: Don't you feel shy to talk in front of others ?

Helmy: No. (3) helps you to be confident.

Ashraf: (4) life skills do you think you learn from teamwork?

Helmy: Cooperation and leadership.

8 Write an email of about (80-100) words :

To your friend Manar about group learning. Your name is Sabrina and your email address is sabrina@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is manar27@yahoo.com.

محات عنه في نهاية الكتاب

| | |
|---------|----------------------|
| From | <input type="text"/> |
| To | <input type="text"/> |
| Subject | <input type="text"/> |

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



SB pages 36 : 40

Lessons

5 & 6

▶ My Learning Plan

▶ Team-Project Roundtable

I

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|-----------------------|----------------|-------------------|--------------|
| improve (d) (v) | يُحسن | remind (ed) (v) | يُذكر [شخص] |
| practice (d) (v), (n) | يتدرب / يُتدرب | discover (ed) (v) | يكتشف |
| record (ed) (v) | يسجل | reflect (ed) (v) | يعكس |
| communication (n) | تواصل | journal (n) | صحيفة / مجلة |

Lesson 5 ▶ SB pages 36 & 37

| | | | |
|-----------------|---------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| diagrams (n) | أشكال توضيحية | indicate (d) (v) | يدل على / يشير الي |
| mistakes (n) | أخطاء | board (n) | سبورة / لوحة |
| clearly (adv) | بوضوح | pronunciation (n) | نطق [صوت] |
| include (d) (v) | يشمل / يتضمن | voice (n) | صوت [بشر] |

Lesson 6 ▶ SB pages 38 & 39

المفردات اللغوية المساعدة لأداء الـ "Project"

| | | | |
|---------------|---------------|----------------|-------------|
| proud (adj) | فخور | until (prep) | حتى / لغاية |
| plan (ed) (v) | يخطط | reach (ed) (v) | يصل |
| starter (n) | بداية | at least | على الأقل |
| list (ed) (v) | يسجل في قائمة | advice (n) | نصيحة |

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

| Present المضارع | Past الماضي | P.P. التصريف الثالث |
|-----------------|-------------|---------------------|
| set بضبط / يعد | set | set |
| become يصبح | became | become |
| take يأخذ | took | taken |



General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 plan - plane

* **plan** ⇒ (v), (n)

خطة / يخطط

▶ **SB** It's your turn to write your own learning **plan**.

▶ **SB** He has **planned** to travel to the USA.

* **plane** ⇒ (n)

طائرة

▶ My brother's **plane** arrives at 7 p.m tomorrow.

2 pass - succeed in

* **pass** (v)

يجتاز اختبار [لا تأخذ حرف جر]

▶ I've **passed** my maths exam.

* **succeed in** + (noun / inf. + ing)

ينجح في

▶ I've **succeeded in** my maths exam.

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| Expressions التعبيرات | |
|------------------------|------------------------|
| make videos | يُعد / يصور فيديوهات |
| get ready | يستعد |
| Prepositions حروف الجر | |
| at the same time | في نفس الوقت |
| at least | على الأقل |
| in English | باللغة الانجليزية |
| want to | يريد أن |
| start with | يبدأ بـ |
| at the front | في الأمام / في المقدمة |

II

Skills

للمزيد من إتقان
المهارات اللغوية
كراسة المعاصر
للمهارات اللغوية

• SB page 36

"My learning Plan"

To improve my English, I use learning **styles**⁽¹⁾ when I study at home and at school. In English class, I try to sit at the front to see the **board**⁽²⁾ clearly. To practice writing. I write 3 - 5 sentences each day about what I did. I can record my voice to check and know the correct **pronunciation**⁽³⁾ of words.

Sometimes, I can record videos to help me as I can learn better when I listen and see at the same time.

Now, I am practicing vocabulary anywhere. I always talk to my friends in English. We like to draw **diagrams**⁽⁴⁾ to remind us.

• (1) أساليب (2) سبورة (3) نطق صوتي (4) مخطط بياني

Writing

مهارة الكتابة

▶ A. Writing about learning habits :

▶ To write a paragraph about your learning habits :

- ▶ Start with a topic sentence. - ابدأ بالجملة الافتتاحية.
- ▶ Use describing details. - استخدم تفاصيل وصفية.
- ▶ Stick to one place or one event. - التزم بمكان واحد أو حدث واحد.

Learn

Topic Sentence

I have a clear learning plan to help me do well this school year. Every evening, I study in my room where it's quiet and comfortable. I start by writing a to-do list so I know what to focus on. Then, I spend 30 minutes reviewing my notes and another 30 minutes solving practice questions. I use colorful folders to keep my subjects organized, and I always prepare for tests at least three days before. Studying in the same place every day helps me stay focused and work more effectively.

Describing Details

Practice

⦿ Write a paragraph of (80 - 100) words about your "learning habits".

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

▶ B. Punctuation Marks :

علامات الترقيم :

A period [.] & A question mark [?]

Learn

▶ We use a period [.] at the end of a statement [normal sentence] :

يستخدم النقطة [.] في نهاية الجملة الخبرية.

ex.- He plays football.

▶ We are friends.

▶ We use a question mark [?] at the end of a sentence to indicate that it is a question :

تستخدم علامة الاستفهام [?] في نهاية الجملة للدلالة على أنها سؤال.

ex.- Have you ever been to Luxor ?

▶ What are you doing ?

Practice

⊙ Rewrite the following using the correct punctuation marks :

1. SB how are you feeling today.

.....

2. do you like swimming

.....

3. SB i live in tahrir street

.....

4. SB my brother adel is 8 years old

.....

5. SB mariam's father is a doctor

.....

✓ Exercise on Vocabulary

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. To make my English better, I want to..... my speaking skill.

a. forget

b. improve

c. ignore

d. dislike

2. I need to my voice to know the correct pronunciation of words.

a. write

b. read

c. record

d. draw

3. I work hard to my goals, even when I feel tired.
 a. forget b. avoid c. reach d. lose
4. If I study well and a lot, I will become a good doctor.
 a. practice b. play c. forget d. run

SB Exercises

5. SB I try to at the front to see the board clearly.
 a. set b. sit c. get d. record
6. SB Plan how to a better learner.
 a. record b. share c. become d. take
7. SB I always to my friends in English.
 a. take b. stick c. talk d. draw
8. SB We like to draw to remind us.
 a. communication b. journal c. diagrams d. advice

El-Moasser Exercises

9. We need to a plan before we start the project.
 a. break b. organize c. ignore d. damage
10. Please, speak so everyone can hear you.
 a. quickly b. slowly c. clearly d. quietly

Definitions

11. We use a period at the end of a
 a. question b. statement c. starter d. board
12. She wants to a new place during the holiday.
 a. skip b. include c. explore d. forget
13. He raised his to answer the question.
 a. name b. sound c. voice d. idea

► Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. Let's a video about our project.
 a. read b. do c. make d. write
15. We should always to the school rules.
 a. skip b. shout c. stick d. forget
16. The students stood the front of the classroom waiting for the teacher.
 a. at b. on c. about d. with

General Exercises



On Lessons 5 & 6

التقييمات اليومية
والأسبوعية والشهرية
فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- I use the microphone to my voice.
a. practice b. record c. copy d. draw
- Practicing your language with your friends it.
a. loses b. touches c. improves d. organizes

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

remind - easier - learning - learners - review

Learning how to learn is an important skill. Good (1) ask questions and look for answers. They also (2) their notes regularly. These habits make it (3) to understand new ideas. Everyone can improve their (4) skills with practice.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Salma used to start studying the night before an exam. She felt nervous and forgot things easily. Her teacher taught her to review a little each day. Salma made a weekly plan, used colorful notes, and tested herself with questions. The new method reduced her stress and it helped her sleep better. She scored higher and felt proud of her efforts. Now she tells others to study smarter, not harder.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- The underlined word "method" means ".....".
a. result b. test c. style d. exam
- Salma felt of her efforts.
a. nervous b. sad c. proud d. afraid

b. Answer the following questions :

3. What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to?

.....

4. When did Salma use to start study for exams?

.....

5. What is the general idea of the text?

.....

6. What do you think of Salma's new method?

.....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. We are lunch right now.

- a. have b. having c. had d. has

2. We're pronunciation at the class at the moment.

- a. practicing b. are practicing c. practiced d. practice

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Now, I [wrote] a paragraph.

2. You can [painted] your house.

3. Is she [talk] on the phone?

4. You [can] send emails without the internet.

6 Complete the following dialog :

Jannat is explaining to Nadia how to use mind maps.

Nadia : What is this, Jannat?

Jannat : It is a mind (1)

Nadia : (2) is the mind map?

Jannat : It's a visual tool.

Nadia : Why do you use it?

Jannat : It helps me improve my writing skill.

Nadia : How do you (3) it in writing?

Jannat : I write all my ideas before writing in it to organize them.

Nadia : That sounds very (4) !

7 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

مجالسنا في زيارتنا الكريمة

"Your learning plan"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Review



on unit 2

| Vocabulary | Language | Speaking |
|---|--|--|
| Lessons 1 & 2 journey رحلة طويلة methods طرق techniques أساليب focus يركز visual بصري auditory سمعي kinesthetic حسي / حركي distraction تشتت | <p>1. can / can't يستطيع / لا يستطيع</p> <p>Subject الفعل → can / cannot [can't] + inf. مصدر الفعل ex. - The footballer can score many goals.</p> <p>Expressing ability and inability التعبير عن القدرة وعدم القدرة</p> <p>Can + subject الفاعل + inf. ? ex. Can you climb a tree? Yes, I can. No, I can't.</p> <p>Asking about ability السؤال عن القدرة</p> <p>Question word + can + subject فاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل .. ? ex. What can you do, Ahmed?</p> | <p>Asking and answering questions about different learning styles :</p> <p>A : What are learning styles ? B : Visual, auditory, and kinesthetic.</p> <p>A : Which learning style suits you best? B : I learn best by hearing information.</p> |
| Lesson 3 benefits فوائد solutions حلول leadership قيادة confident واثق cooperation تعاون opinions آراء | <p>2. The Present Continuous Tense زمن المضارع المستمر</p> <p>1 Affirmative Statements الجملة الخبرية المثبتة</p> <p>I am He / She / It / فاعل مفرد is + We / You / They / فاعل جمع are + (inf. المصدر + ing)</p> <p>ex. - Manal and Mona are studying calligraphy.</p> <p>2 Negative Statements الجملة الخبرية المنفية</p> <p>I am He / She / It / فاعل مفرد is + We / You / They / فاعل جمع are + not + (inf. المصدر + ing)</p> <p>ex. - She is not learning English at the moment.</p> | |
| Lessons 5 & 6 improve يحسن reflect يعكس record يسجل clearly بوضوح voice صوت بشري communication تواصل journal صحيفة / مجلة diagram رسم توضيحي | | |

https://t.me/G5_Y5

Skills 1

Reading Comprehension

Giving the main idea

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مهارة [تحديد الفكرة الرئيسية للنص].

يختبر سؤال المحادثة [dialog] قدرتك للتعبير عن مواقف معينة.

اقرأ وقيم بالإجابة.

اقرأ وقيم بالإجابة.

Read and answer the questions :

Learning in groups has more benefits than learning alone. When students work in large or small groups, they share opinions, discuss problems and find solutions to them. Teamwork helps students develop their skills and be confident. It also helps them know how to communicate with others and understand them. When a student shares their opinion about a topic, they learn how to express themselves freely using their own words. Teamwork teaches students cooperation and leadership; it also helps them to be creative.

- What is the main idea of the passage ?
- Or** What does the passage talk about ?
- Or** Give a suitable title to the passage.
- Or** The text is about
 - a. Studying alone is better than working in groups.
 - b. Technology makes school easier.
 - c. Learning with others has many benefits.
 - d. Students should use apps for every lesson.

 **التحدي** قد تجد صعوبة في تحديد الفكرة الرئيسية بسبب وجود عدة أفكار تم عرضها في الفقرة.

 **مفتاح الحل** عند قراءة الفقرة تجد أن كل الأفكار تدور حول موضوع واحد محدد هو [الفكرة الرئيسية] أو [العنوان المناسب] للفقرة.

2

Speaking

Studying English

Complete the following dialog :

Mazen is asking Baher about his study.

Mazen : What are you doing, Baher ?

Baher : I'm (1) English.

Mazen : I love studying English, too (2)
..... is this ?

Baher : It's a pen .

Mazen : Why does this pen look strange ?

Baher : Because it's made from (3)
materials.

Mazen : Why (4) they use recycled
materials to make pens?

Baher : To reduce waste.

 **التحدي** تريد السؤال عن [دراسة اللغة الانجليزية] وتجد صعوبة في تكوين أسئلة والرد عليها.

 **مفتاح الحل** يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من الأسئلة والردود عن الموضوع.

General Exercises on unit 2

التقييمات اليومية
والأسبوعية والشهرية
في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions : استمع إلى معلمك وأجب عن الأسئلة الآتية. [نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب].

1. How many ways do people learn by ?
.....
2. What do auditory learners enjoy doing ?
.....
3. What do visual learners use to learn ?
.....
4. How can understanding learning styles help teachers ?
.....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. are special methods or ways of doing something.
a. Texts b. Techniques c. Tools d. Breaks
2. He studies in a quiet place to avoid
a. benefits b. life c. distraction d. energy
3. I can English and French.
a. speaks b. speak c. spoke d. speaking
4. We are ready for the school concert now.
a. get b. got c. getting d. gets

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

visual - learning - study - plan - respect

Fatma realized she learns better when she draws diagrams. In science class, she couldn't remember the parts of a body until she drew them. Her friend Youssef prefers to listen to audio lessons. At first, they find it hard to (1) together. Then, they made a (2) : Fatma created (3) notes, and Youssef explained them aloud. This helped both of them. They were surprised how two different (4) styles could actually support each other. Fatma says, "Now, we both understand more and faster!"

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

To improve my English, I use learning styles when I study at home and at school. In English class, I try to sit at the front to see the board clearly. To practice writing, I write 3-5 sentences each day about what I did. I can record my voice to check and know the correct pronunciation of words.

Sometimes, I can watch videos to help me as I can learn better when I listen and see at the same time.

Now, I am practicing vocabulary anywhere. I always talk to my friends in English. We like to draw diagrams to remind us.

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The underlined pronoun "us" refers to the writer and his/her
 a. family b. cousins c. friends d. teachers
2. The underlined word "correct" means ".....".
 a. untrue b. wrong c. lazy d. true

b. Answer the following questions :

3. Give a suitable title to the text.

4. Why do you think diagrams are useful for learning?

5. Why does the writer sit near the board?

6. How does the writer check his/her pronunciation?

5 Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets :

1. He isn't able to answer the question. [can't]

2. I get better step by step. [getting]

6 Find the mistakes in the following and correct them :

1. They revise for the exam at the moment. (.....)
2. He is clever, he can't solve the problem. (.....)
3. She is using her laptop now ? (.....)
4. We can't focus better when we have a goal. (.....)

7 Complete the following dialog :

Salim is asking Rami for his help with grammar questions.

Salim : I have a problem with grammar.

Rami : (1) ?

Salim : I can't answer any question on grammar.

Rami : (2) ?

https://t.me/G5_Y5

Salim : Yes, I study the grammar rules before I answer.

Rami : Do you read the examples?

Salim : (3)

Rami : Why not! You need to read the examples and the sentences to practice it.

Salim : (4) I'll try it.

► **Story** The Magic Classroom (Chapter Two)

8 A. Read and Write (T) True or (F) False :

1. **SB** The children crossed the bridge holding their hands.
2. **SB** The bridge appeared instantly as they stepped on it.

B. Who said the following ?

1. "Let's sing together. Maybe unity is the key."
.....

2. "Gourage means we try even when we are scared."
.....

9 Write an email of about A HUNDRED (100) words :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

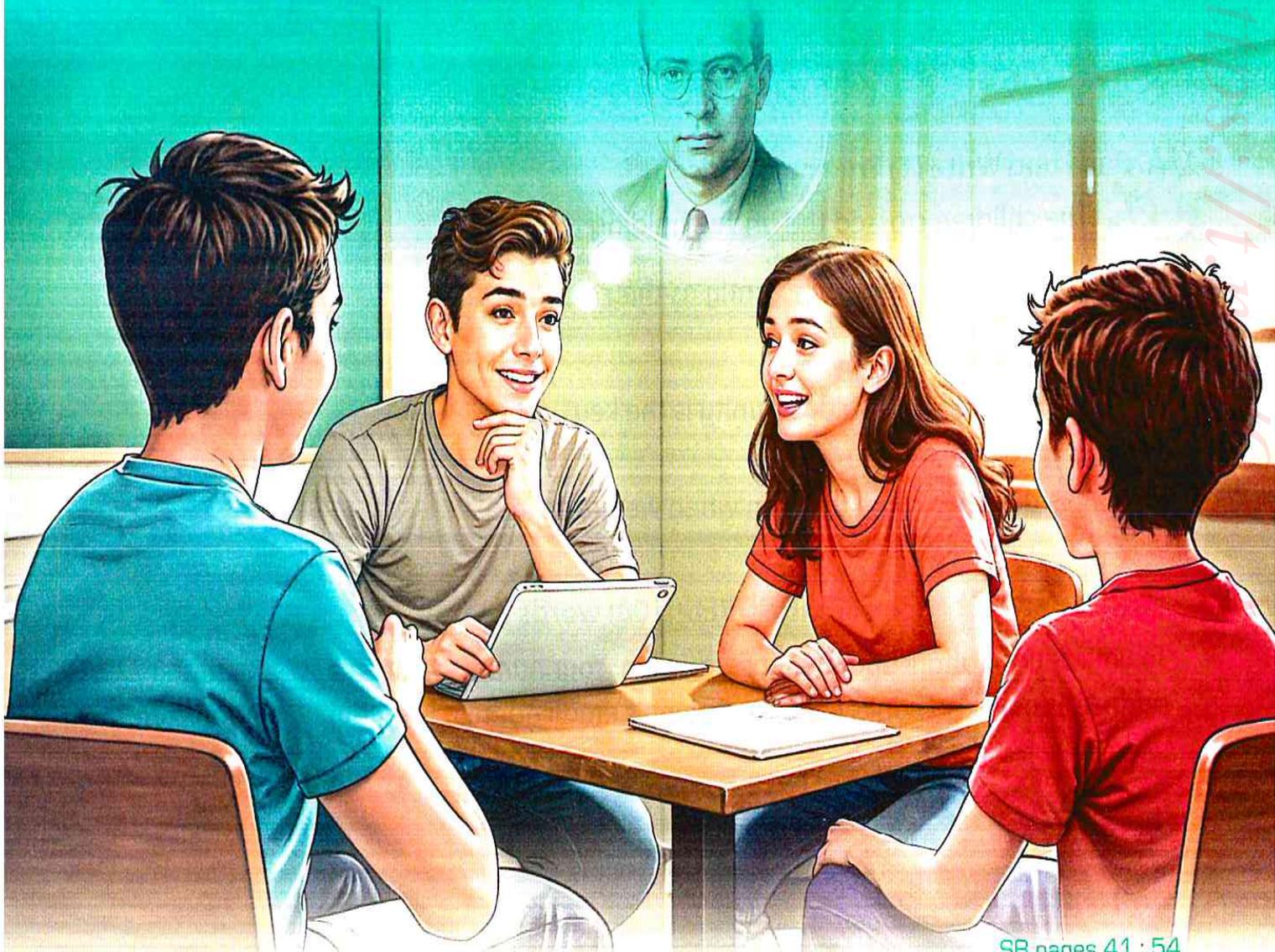
To your friend Tahani about your study plan. Your name is Neveen and your email address is neveen@books.com. Your friend's email address is tahani20@yahoo.com.

| | |
|---------|----------------------|
| From | <input type="text"/> |
| To | <input type="text"/> |
| Subject | <input type="text"/> |

| |
|--|
| <p>..... /</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> |
|--|

Unit THREE

Role Models



SB pages 41 : 54

Learning outcomes :

• Reading

- Identify specific details about a role model's actions and qualities
- Use context clues to understand vocabulary related to leadership and personal qualities

• Listening

- Identify the main idea in interviews about role models and inspiring figures
- Identify specific details such as what a role model did, their impact, and their personal qualities

• Speaking

- Talk about a personal role model using past simple and key vocabulary
- Discuss leadership qualities in pairs or groups

• Language

- Identify and use regular and irregular past simple verbs to talk about past actions and events
- Use past simple to ask and answer questions in conversations / interviews

• Writing

- Write a paragraph about someone students admire using past simple tense
- Express personal feelings and reflections about the qualities and actions of a role model



SB pages 42 : 45

Lessons

1 & 2

▶ An Egyptian Hero

▶ Heroes and Role Models

I

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|-------------------|----------------|----------------------|------------------|
| hero (n) | بطل | kindness (n) | لطف / رفق |
| determination (n) | عزيمة / نية | determined (adj) | مصمم / عاقد عازم |
| inspire (d) (v) | يلهم | courage (n) | شجاعة |
| role model | قدوة يحتذى بها | achievement (n) | إنجاز |
| Egyptian army | الجيش المصرى | moving spirit | قوة دافعة |
| qualities (n) | سمات / مميزات | soldiers (n) | جنود |
| peace (n) | السلام | respect (ed) (v),(n) | يحترم / احترام |
| symbol (n) | رمز | bravely (adv) | بشجاعة |
| defend (ed) (v) | يدافع | | |



Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

• Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

achievement - qualities - hero - courage

1. What are the main of a good teacher ?
2. Building a new school in the village is an amazing
3. Mohammed Salah is my favorite

Lesson 1 ▶ SB pages 42 & 43

| | | | |
|----------------|----------------|------------------|---------------|
| a young age | سن صغير | true (adj) | حقيقي - واقعي |
| physics (n) | الفيزياء | Egyptian women | سيدات مصريات |
| PhD | درجة الدكتوراه | discoveries (n) | اكتشافات |
| community (n) | مجتمع | atomic radiation | الإشعاع الذرى |
| asprin (n) | قرص الأسبرين | continue (d) (v) | يستمر |
| inventions (n) | اختراعات | admire (d) (v) | يُعجب بـ |

| | | | |
|------------------|---------------|-------------------|---------------|
| Cairo University | جامعة القاهرة | wish (ed) (v),(n) | يتمنى / أمنية |
| hope (d) (v),(n) | يأمل / أمل | accident (n) | حادثة |
| caring (adj) | مهتم بالآخرين | cancer treatment | علاج السرطان |
| easily (adv) | بسهولة | brave (adj) | شجاع |
| sadly (adv) | بحزن | scientist (n) | عالم |
| cheap (adj) | رخيص | | |

Lesson 2 ▶ SB pages 44 & 45

| | | | |
|---------------------|--------------|-------------------|-------|
| terrorists (n) | الارهابيون | admiration (n) | إعجاب |
| vacation (n) | أجازة | motivate (d) (v) | يحفز |
| Dubai | مدينة دبي | encourage (d) (v) | يشجع |
| officer (n) | ضابط | try (ied) (v) | يحاول |
| attack (ed)(v), (n) | هجوم - يهاجم | absent (adj) | غائب |

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

| Present المضارع | Past الماضي | P.P. التصريف الثالث |
|------------------------|-------------|---------------------|
| teach يُعلم - يُدّرس | taught | taught |
| spend يُنفق / يقضى وقت | spent | spent |
| fight يحارب / يناضل | fought | fought |

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

| | | |
|--------------------|---|----------------------------|
| hero | a person who does great things for others | بطل |
| inspire | to motivate or encourage | يلهم |
| kind | friendly and caring | طيب - عطوف |
| determined | not giving up easily | مصمم - عازم |
| achievement | success in reaching a goal | إنجاز |
| respect | to feel admiration for someone | يحترم |
| role model | someone you admire and try to be like | شخص مثالي / قدوة يحتذى بها |

Vocabulary Study

► Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

| Word الكلمة | Synonym المرادف | Antonym /Opposite المضاد |
|---------------|-----------------|--------------------------|
| brave شجاع | courageous | cowardly جبان |
| inspire يُلهم | encourage | disappoint يُحبط |
| care يهتم | look after | neglect يُهمل |

► Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة ونهاية

| Prefix / Suffix | Function الوظيفة | Examples أمثلة |
|-----------------|------------------|-------------------------------------|
| -ment | تحول الفعل لاسم | treatment علاج achievement إنجاز |
| -ion | تحول الفعل لاسم | motivation تحفيز |
| -ness | تحول الصفة لاسم | kindness لطف - رفق |

✓ Exercise on Vocabulary Study

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- You shouldn't disappoint your children. You should encourage and them.
a. hurt b. kill c. inspire d. discover
- "Brave" and "....." have the same meaning.
a. kind b. courageous c. known d. cowardly
- The suffix "....." forms the noun of the verb "treat".
a. -ous b. -ment c. -tion d. -ness



General Notes on Reading & Listening

- 1 (was) born
- in + وُلِد في + [المكان / سنة الميلاد]
 - on + وُلِد في + [تاريخ الميلاد / يوم محدد]
 - into + وُلِد لعائلة (ينتمي عائلة)

- Ahmed was **born in** Sharkia / 1985.
- Ahmed was **born on** June, 18th 1985.
- Ahmed was **born into** a good family.

2 die in - die of - die out

* die in ⇒

يموت في [مكان / حادث]

▶ My grandfather **died in** Cairo in 2004.

* die of ⇒

يموت بسبب [مرض / سبب داخلي]

▶ A lot of people **die of** cancer every year.

* die out ⇒

ينقرض / يختفي تدريجياً

▶ Dinosaurs **died out** thousands of years ago.

3 invent - discover - explore

* invent ⇒ (v)

يخترع شيء / يبتكر شيء [لم يكن له وجود من قبل]

▶ Thomas Edison **invented** the light bulb المصباح الكهربائي.

* discover ⇒

يكتشف شيء [كان موجوداً لكنه غير معروف من قبل]

▶ Columbus **discovered** America by chance.

* explore ⇒

يستكشف شيء أو مكان موجود ولكنه مجهول للشخص نفسه

▶ I **explored** Luxor in my first visit there.

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| Expressions التعبيرات | |
|------------------------|-------------------------|
| get a PhD | يحصل على درجة الدكتوراة |
| keep going | يواصل / يستمر |
| keep safe | يبقى آمناً |
| (be) known for | معروف بـ / مشهور بـ |
| take care of | بعثني بـ |
| give up | يستسلم |
| get a new job | يحصل على وظيفة جديدة |
| go on a trip | يخرج في رحلة |
| go on vacation | يذهب لقضاء عطلة |
| improve people's lives | يُحسِّن حياة الناس |
| Prepositions حروف الجر | |
| in pairs | في ثنائيات |
| for example | على سبيل المثال |
| need to | يحتاج أن |
| learn from | يتعلم من |
| a symbol of | رمز لـ |
| grow up | يكبر / ينمو |
| move to | ينتقل إلى |
| around the world | حول العالم |
| late for | متأخراً عن |



Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

on Lesson 1 SB page 42

Dr. Samira Moussa

1. Dr. Samira Moussa was a true **hero**⁽¹⁾ and **inspires**⁽²⁾ people today.
2. She was born in Egypt in 1917 with a great love for science.
3. She studied **physics**⁽³⁾ and became one of the first Egyptian women to get a PhD in **Atomic Radiation**⁽⁴⁾.
4. Samira was kind and always wanted to help her **community**⁽⁵⁾.
5. Samira wanted to use science for peace and to **improve**⁽⁶⁾ people's lives.

* Your role model

* Samira Moussa

6. She taught in Cairo University and traveled to the USA to **complete**⁽⁷⁾ her research and share knowledge with others.
7. Her **moving spirit**⁽⁸⁾ made her a symbol of hope for many Egyptian girls.
8. Sadly, she died in a car accident in 1952.
9. Samira's story teaches us to be brave, caring and **determined**⁽⁹⁾.

| | | | | |
|-----------------|-------------------|--------------|------------|---------|
| المجتمع (5) | الإشعاع الذري (4) | الفيزياء (3) | تألم (2) | بطل (1) |
| عازم / محصم (9) | قوة دافعة (8) | يُكتمل (7) | يُحسِن (6) | |

الجميل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل أو كتابة فقرات إنشائية أخرى:

تلويح :

* Your favorite scientist

! Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz

تدرب على ١٠ من
قطع الفهم
ونصوص الاستماع

Reading

• on Lesson 1 SB page 42

Dr. Samira Moussa

Dr. Samira Moussa was a true **hero**⁽¹⁾ who continues to inspire people today. She was born in Egypt in 1917 and showed a great love for science from a young age. She was **determined**⁽²⁾ to study physics and became one of the first Egyptian women to get a PhD in Atomic Radiation.

Samira was kind and always wanted to help her **community**⁽³⁾. She believed that science should be used for peace and to improve people's lives. She often said, "My wish for cancer treatment is to be as cheap as aspirin." She worked hard in research and taught students at Cairo University.

She travelled to the United States to continue her research and to share **knowledge**⁽⁴⁾ with other scientists. Her **achievement**⁽⁵⁾ in science and her **moving spirit**⁽⁶⁾ made her a symbol of hope for many Egyptian girls.

Sadly, she died in a car accident in 1952, but her work still **inspires**⁽⁷⁾ scientists around the world. Dr. Samira Moussa's story teaches us to be brave, caring, and determined in helping our community.



(1) بطل

(2) عازم / مصمم

(3) مجتمع

(4) معرفة

(5) إنجاز

(6) قوة دافعة

(7) يلهم

- Extracting information.

Answer
the following
questions.

Learn

1. When was Samira Moussa born ?

- In 1917.

Practice

2. How did Samira Moussa die ?

استخراج المعلومات.

Listening

on Lesson 2 SB page 44

Noha : My role model⁽¹⁾ is my mother. She works very hard every day and always helps others. Even when she is tired, she smiles and **takes care of**⁽²⁾ our family. She inspires me to work hard at school and to be kind to everyone. **I respect**⁽³⁾ her because she never gives up, even when things are difficult. She teaches me that being strong doesn't mean never feeling sad - it means **keeping going**⁽⁴⁾. When I **grow up**⁽⁵⁾, I want to be just like her. That's why my mother is my favorite role model.

- (1) قدوة يحتذى به
- (2) يعتني بـ
- (3) يحترم
- (4) يواصل / يستمر
- (5) يكبر / ينمو

on Lesson 2 SB page 44

Omar : Hi, Nada. Do you know Ahmed El-Mansy ?

Nada : Yes, of course. He is a brave Egyptian **hero**⁽¹⁾.

Omar : What was his job ?

Nada : He was an officer in the **Egyptian army**⁽²⁾.

Omar : What did he do for Egypt ?

Nada : He fought the **terrorists**⁽³⁾ and protected our country.

Omar : How did he and his **soldiers**⁽⁴⁾ fight ?

Nada : They **defended**⁽⁵⁾ their camp **bravely**⁽⁶⁾ and did not give up during the attack.

Omar : That is very brave! Did he save any soldiers ?

Nada : Yes, he helped and saved many soldiers before he died.

Omar : Why do people love him so much ?

Nada : Because he loved Egypt and gave his life to keep it safe.

Omar : What **lesson**⁽⁷⁾ do we learn from him ?

Nada : We learn to love our country, be brave, and help **others**⁽⁸⁾.

Omar : Yes, we should always remember him as a true hero.

Nada : Of course, Omar. He will always live in our hearts.

- (1) بطل
- (2) الجيش المصري
- (3) الإرهابيون
- (4) جنود
- (5) يدافع
- (6) بشجاعة
- (7) درس
- (8) الآخرون

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- A good teacher can his students to work hard and encourage them.
a. stop b. forget c. inspire d. punish
- Coming first in the race was a big for him.
a. problem b. achievement c. accident d. mistake
- To reach your goal, you need to be
a. noisy b. determined c. lazy d. asleep
- Kindness and determination are important
a. sports b. subjects c. qualities d. hobbies
- I think is one of the qualities that make a hero.
a. fear b. courage c. shy d. invention

SB Exercises

- SB** Dr. Samira Moussa was a/an of hope for many Egyptian girls.
a. age b. temple c. symbol d. ruler
- SB** Samira Moussa traveled to the United State to her search.
a. hope b. continue c. stop d. believe
- SB** Samira believed that science should be used for
a. danger b. aspirin c. peace d. anger

El-Moasser Exercises

- A role model should be
a. rude b. kind c. selfish d. lazy
- Helping others in your area means helping your
a. fear b. community c. attack d. homework
- We should show to everyone.
a. danger b. respect c. anger d. fear
- Education helps us achieve in life.
a. trouble b. problem c. success d. rest

Definition

- A is a person who does great things for others.
a. terrorist b. hero c. spirit d. selfish
- To "....." means to motivate or encourage.
a. improve b. inspire c. attack d. give up

► Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

- Mohammed Salah is for his great talent and kindness.
a. known b. grown c. kept d. stayed
- Samira Moussa became a symbol hope for girls.
a. on b. of c. in d. at

2. Speaking

▶ A. Asking and answering questions about your role model :

توجيه أسئلة والرد عليها عن شخص قدوة يحتذى به / مثلك الأعلى :

Questions ?

1. Who is your role model ?

من هو مثلك الأعلى ؟

2. When and where was he born ?

متى وأين ولد ؟

3. What did he study ? Where ?

ماذا درس ؟ وأين ؟

4. What discoveries / inventions was he known for ?
ما الاكتشافات أو الاختراعات التي اشتهر بها ؟

Answers ✓

- Dr. Magdi Yacoub.

دكتور مجدى يعقوب.

- He was born in Bilbeis in 1935.

هو ولد في بلبيس في عام ١٩٣٥.

- He studied medicine and surgery at Cairo University.

هو درس الطب والجراحة في جامعة القاهرة.

He was known for his skill in heart surgery.

هو اشتهر بمهارته في جراحة القلب.

▶ B. Asking and answering questions about heroes and role models :

توجيه أسئلة والرد عليها عن أبطال وأشخاص يحتذى بهم :

Questions ?

1. What do you think makes someone a hero ?

ما الذى تعتقد أنه يجعل من شخص ما بطلاً من وجهة نظرك ؟

2. How can you describe a true hero ?

كيف يمكنك أن تصف البطل الحقيقي ؟

3. What qualities do you think a hero should have ?

ما الصفات التي يجب أن يتحلى بها البطل من وجهة نظرك ؟

Answers ✓

- I think a hero is someone who helps others without thinking of himself.

أعتقد أن البطل هو شخص يساعد الآخرين دون أن يفكر في نفسه.

- A true hero is someone who puts others before himself. He is brave, honest and kind.

البطل الحقيقي هو شخص يضع الآخرين قبل نفسه. إنه شجاع، صادق وطيب.

- The qualities that a hero should have :

الصفات التي يجب على البطل أن يتحلى بها :

- Courage

الشجاعة

- Helping others

مساعدة الآخرين

- Sacrifice

التضحية

- Strength in difficult situations

القوة في المواقف الصعبة

III Language in use

The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

Formation التكوين

1 Affirmative statements الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

A Regular verbs : الأفعال المنتظمة :

التصريف الثاني للفعل + الفاعل Subject

• لاحظ : قواعد إضافة (d / ed / ied) للفعل المنتظم في زمن الماضي البسيط.

| الفعل المنتهي بـ | يضاف له | مثال Example |
|---|---------|------------------|
| e (بعض الأفعال) | + d | invite → invited |
| y (حرف متحرك) | + ed | stay → stayed |
| y (حرف ساكن) | + ied | carry → carried |
| [حرف ساكن يسبقه حرف متحرك] بعض الأفعال لا يضاعف الحرف الأخير | + ed | stop → stopped |
| | | visit → visited |

B Irregular verbs : الأفعال غير المنتظمة :

| الفعل | الماضي | الفعل | الماضي |
|-------|--------|-------|--------|
| cut | cut | put | put |
| eat | ate | drink | drank |

• هناك أفعال غير منتظمة لا تتبع هذه القاعدة تحفظ مثل :

• لاحظ الآتي : يتم استخدام (verb to be) في زمن الماضي كالتالي :

I / He / She / It / [فاعل مفرد] → was / wasn't

We / They / You / [فاعل جمع] → were / weren't

ex. - Dr Magdy Yacoub was born in 1935.

- They were at the park last week.

2 Negative statements الجمل الخبرية المنفية

• لاحظ في حالة النفي نستخدم الصيغة الآتية :

Subject + didn't + inf. المصدر

ex. - Rana didn't study her lessons yesterday.

- She wasn't late for school.

3 Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

A Yes/No question : السؤال بـ «هل» :

◀ في صيغة الاستفهام باستخدام «هل» نستخدم الصيغة التالية :

Did + subject فاعل + inf. المصدر ?

ex. - Did you clean the car yesterday ?

- Yes, I did.

- No, I didn't.

B Wh- question : السؤال بكلمة استفهام :

◀ أما في صيغة الاستفهام باستخدام كلمة استفهام نستخدم الصيغة الآتية :

Question word كلمة الاستفهام + did + subject فاعل + inf. المصدر ?

ex. - What did you study ?

- Where did she go ?

Key words كلمات دالة

| | | |
|-------------------------|---|---------------------------|
| • in the past في الماضي | • from + سنة ماضية to سنة ماضية | year السنة الماضية |
| • ago + مدة محددة منذ | • when I was (young)/(little) عندما كنت [صغير في السن]. | month الشهر الماضي |
| • yesterday أمس | | week الأسبوع الماضي |
| • in + سنة ماضية (2000) | | (Tuesday) الثلاثاء الماضي |

ex. - Dr Magdy stopped most of his work as a surgeon a long time ago.

Usage الاستخدام

(* It is used to talk about actions that started and ended in the past.

◀ يستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط للحديث عن أحداث بدأت وانتهت في الماضي.

ex. - She went to school two hours ago.

Exercises on Language in use

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB Exercises

1. **SB** I two hours studying English yesterday.
a. spend b. spent c. spends d. spending
2. **SB** Where Aziz go last vacation ?
a. do b. did c. does d. doing
3. **SB** They go on a trip last week.
a. can't b. aren't c. didn't d. won't
4. **SB** I helped my mom in the kitchen
a. tomorrow b. now c. next week d. yesterday
5. **SB** My friend absent yesterday.
a. will b. is c. was d. can

EI-Moasser Exercises

6. We a strange noise in the garage yesterday.
a. hears b. hear c. heard d. hearing
7. She the meat and made a soup.
a. cuts b. cut c. cutting d. to cut
8. I meet my best friend last weekend.
a. can b. can't c. am not d. didn't
9. you help your brother with his homework yesterday ?
a. Did b. Was c. Will d. Can
10. They a charity to help the poor in 2014.
a. start b. starts c. started d. starting

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB Exercises

1. **SB** What did you (**doing**) last Friday ?
2. **SB** We (**be**) happy because my brother bought a new car last week.
3. **SB** When (**do**) your dad travel for work yesterday ?
4. **SB** Last week, she (**not visit**) her grandpa.
5. **SB** Last year, my dad (**get**) a new job and moved to Dubai.

EI-Moasser Exercises

6. They (**has**) a nice vacation in Siwa last year.
7. Who (**invent**) the paper ? - The Ancient Egyptians.
8. I (**not be**) busy, so I helped my father.
9. (**Were**) Adam late for the club yesterday ?
10. When did you (**visiting**) your uncle ? - Last week.

3. Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets :

SB Exercises

1. **SB** Where does Aziz go on vacation ? (last year)
.....
2. **SB** He isn't late for school. (yesterday)
.....
3. **SB** Dad traveled for work yesterday. (When)
.....
4. **SB** I helped my brother with his homework. (didn't)
.....

El-Moasser Exercises

5. I went to school by bus. (How)
.....
6. He helps her with the cooking. (yesterday)
.....
7. Were you happy about the new gift ? (Yes)
.....
8. She never arrived early. (didn't)
.....

4. Correct the mistakes in the following sentences :

SB Exercises

1. **SB** I help my mom in the kitchen yesterday. (.....)
2. **SB** They don't go on a trip last week. (.....)
3. **SB** Last year, my dad get a new job and moved to Dubai. (.....)
4. **SB** They are at the park last week. (.....)

El-Moasser Exercises

5. Where did you spent your vacation? (.....)
6. I didn't met my friends last week. (.....)
7. Did you ready for the last match ? (.....)
8. I buy the meat and cooked it. (.....)

5. Find the mistakes in the following and correct them :

El-Moasser Exercises

1. Who invent the paper ? - The Ancient Egyptians. (.....)
2. I not be busy so I helped my father. (.....)
3. Were she worried about the exam ? (.....)
4. When did you visiting your uncle ? - Last week. (.....)

General Exercises



On Lessons 1 & 2

التقييمات اليومية
والأسبوعية والشهرية
فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب].

1. Dr Samira Moussa was a hero.
a. science b. young c. true d. history
2. She was born in
a. Lebanon b. Morocco c. Sudan d. Egypt
3. She showed a great love for
a. math b. science c. geography d. English
4. She was to study physics.
a. active b. brave c. determined d. disappointed

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The soldiers were to jump over the fire.
a. friendly b. kind c. brave d. lazy
2. means to feel admiration for someone.
a. Share b. Motivate c. Respect d. Inspire

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Maria is a nurse. She is my role model. She works many hours at the hospital. She is kind to sick people. Last year, she opened a free clinic in our town. Poor people go there to see a doctor and get medicine. Maria works hard and helps others. She says, "Small actions can change lives." She is busy, but she listens to her patients. Maria shows that one person can help many. Now, her clinic helps more than 200 people every month. People in the town love her.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Maria started a health clinic.
a. small b. modern c. free d. famous
2. The underlined word "patients" can be replaced by people.
a. healthy b. well c. sick d. fit

b. Answer the following questions.

3. What does the underlined pronoun "she" refer to?

.....

4. Give a suitable title to the text.

.....

5. Why do you think all the community love Maria?

.....

6. Where does Maria work?

.....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. She her keys at the café so she went back.

a. forgetting b. forget c. forgot d. forgets

2. We our grandparents last week.

a. visiting b. visited c. visit d. visits

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. I [not sleep] well yesterday.

2. What [do] you have for breakfast this morning?

3. Did you [broke] the window by mistake?

4. They [be] in Alexandria last week.

6 Write a paragraph of about A HUNDRED (100) words on :

مجاوب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"An Egyptian hero"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



SB pages 46 & 47

Lesson

3

A Great Egyptian Thinker Dr. Gamal Hemdan

تنويه: الدرس الرابع القصة المقررة في نهاية الكتاب

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|-------------------|-----------------------------|----------------|-------|
| family member (n) | فرد من أفراد الأسرة | awards (n) | جوائز |
| athlete (n) | لاعب رياضي | location (n) | موقع |
| geographer (n) | جغرافي [دارس علم الجغرافيا] | powerful (adj) | قوى |
| personality (n) | شخصية | agreement (n) | اتفاق |
| politics (n) | علم السياسة | | |



Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

• Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

geographer - location - awards - athlete - agreement

1. He likes sports. He wants to be a famous
2. She won many in the competitions.
3. A studies maps and land farms.
4. The of Egypt is very special.

Lesson 3 ▶ SB pages 46 & 47

| | | | |
|------------------|----------------|------------------------------|------------------------|
| famous (adj) | مشهور | combine (d) (v) | يجمع / يضم |
| writer (n) | كاتب | explain (ed) (v) | يشرح / يفسر |
| geography (n) | جغرافيا | the State Appreciation Award | جائزة الدولة التقديرية |
| history (n) | التاريخ | special (adj) | مميز / خاص |
| university (n) | جامعة | country (n) | دولة |
| later (adv) | فيما بعد | role (n) | دور |
| deep thinker (n) | مفكر عميق/محلل | medal (n) | ميدالية |
| climate (n) | مناخ | arts (n) | الفنون |
| regular (adj) | منتظم | tips (n) | نصائح |
| Suez Canal (n) | قناة السويس | acting (n) | فن التمثيل |
| tourist (n) | سائح | actor (n) | ممثل |

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

| Present المضارع | Past الماضي | P.P. التصريف الثالث |
|------------------|-------------|---------------------|
| stand يقف | stood | stood |
| find يجد | found | found |
| win يفوز | won | won |
| lose يخسر - يفقد | lost | lost |

Vocabulary Study

► Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

| Word الكلمة | Synonym المرادف | Antonym/Opposite المضاد |
|--------------|---------------------|-------------------------|
| famous مشهور | well known/ popular | unknown غير معروف |
| powerful قوى | strong | weak ضعيف |
| afraid خائف | scared | brave شجاع |

► Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة ونهاية

| Prefix / Suffix | Function الوظيفة | Examples أمثلة |
|-----------------|-----------------------|--|
| -ful | تعطى الصفة من الاسم | powerful قوى |
| -ist | تعطى الاسم أو الوظيفة | scientist عالم tourist سائح |
| -ment | تعطى الاسم من الفعل | agreement اتفاق payment دفع - تسديد |
| un- | تعطى عكس الصفة | unusual غير عادي unhappy غير سعيد |
| ir- | تعطى عكس الصفة | irregular غير منتظم irresponsible غير مسئول |
| dis- | تعطى عكس الفعل | dislike يكره |

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The antonym of the word "afraid" is ".....".
a. weak b. brave c. scared d. special
- To change the word "agree" into a noun, we add the suffix ".....".
a. -ist b. -ment c. -tion d. -ness
- The words "....." and "strong" have the same meaning.
a. sad b. powerful c. rich d. lazy
- The prefix "....." gives the opposite of the word "like".
a. in- b. dis- c. ir- d. im-
- The synonym of the word "famous" is ".....".
a. brave b. well known c. unknown d. afraid



General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 award - reward

- * **award (n)** ⇒ جائزة رسمية تمنح بشكل رسمي عند تحقيق انجاز معين في أى مجال.
▶ The Nobel Prize is a great **award** for people who have achievements.
- * **reward (n)** ⇒ مكافأة تمنح بشكل ودي بين الأشخاص أو المؤسسات كتقدير على فعل شئ.
▶ My father gave me a **reward** as I came first in the final exam.

2 role - rule

- * **role** ⇒ (n) دور [في الحياة / في فيلم]
- ▶ **SB** Gamal Hemdan wrote about the **role** of Egypt in history.
- * **rule** ⇒ (v),(n) قاعدة / يحكم
- ▶ The king **ruled** his country for a long time.
- ▶ You should follow the school **rules**.

3 not only, but also

ليس فقط ... ولكن أيضًا

▶ **SB** Dr. Hemdan wasn't **only** a scientist , **but also** a deep thinker.

4 (win - earn - gain)

* **win** ⇒

يفوز في مباراة / ميدالية / بطولة كأس / جائزة

▶ **SB** Dr. Gamal Hemdan **won** the State Appreciation Award in 1986.

* **earn** ⇒

يكسب أموال

▶ This trader is very smart. He **earns** a lot of money.

* **gain** ⇒

يكسب شيء معنوي [تأييد / دعم]

▶ Mohammed Salah **gained** the support of his fans because of his kindness.

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

| Expressions التعبيرات | |
|------------------------|-------------------------|
| win many awards | يفوز بالعديد من الجوائز |
| make a new word | يكون كلمة جديدة |
| Prepositions حروف الجر | |
| interested in | مهتم |
| famous / known for | مشهور بـ |
| add ... to | يضيف إلى |
| write about | يكتب عن |
| a group of | مجموعة من |

A week is enough

مراجعة المنهج
والتمكن منه في
اسبوع واحد فقط

EL-MOASSER





Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

on Lesson 3 SB page 46

A Great Egyptian thinker

Dr. Gamal Hemdan

1. Dr. Gamal Hemdan was a famous Egyptian **geographer**⁽¹⁾ and writer.
2. He was born in 1928 in Qalyubia, Egypt.
3. He studied geography at **Cairo University**⁽²⁾.
4. He got his PhD from a university in England.
5. He wasn't only a **scientist**⁽³⁾, but also a **deep thinker**⁽⁴⁾.

* Dr Gamal Hemdan

* A famous Egyptian writer

6. In his famous book "the **Personality**⁽⁵⁾ of Egypt" he wrote about Egypt's land and its **role**⁽⁶⁾ in history.

7. Dr. Gamal won many **awards**⁽⁷⁾, including⁽⁸⁾ the **State Appreciation**⁽⁹⁾ Award in 1986.

8. He was **known for**⁽¹⁰⁾ his strong ideas.

9. He died in 1993, but his books are still important today.

| | | | | |
|---------------|---------------|----------------|-----------|------------|
| شخصية (5) | مفكر عميق (4) | عالم (3) | جامعة (2) | جغرافى (1) |
| معروف بـ (10) | تقديرى (9) | مستألف على (8) | جوائز (7) | دور (6) |

تتويبه : الجمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل أو كتابة فقرات إنشائية أخرى:

* Your favorite Egyptian thinker

Pop Quiz

ندرب على ١٠ من
قطع القلم
ونصوص الاستماع

• on Lesson 3 SB page 46

Dr. Gamal Hemdan

Dr. Gamal Hemdan was a famous Egyptian **geographer**⁽¹⁾ and writer. He was born in 1928 in Qalyubia, Egypt. He studied geography at Cairo **University**⁽²⁾ and later got his **PhD**⁽³⁾ from a university in England. Dr. Hemdan was not only a scientist, but also a deep **thinker**⁽⁴⁾. He **combined**⁽⁵⁾ geography, history, and **politics**⁽⁶⁾ to explain why Egypt is a very special country.



His most famous book is "The Personality of Egypt", where he wrote about Egypt's land, its people, and its **important**⁽⁷⁾ role in history. He also wrote books about the Suez Canal.

Dr. Hemdan won many **awards**⁽⁸⁾, including the State Appreciation Award in 1986 and a top medal in science and arts. He was known for his strong ideas. He believed Egypt's location made it **powerful**⁽⁹⁾.

His work still helps students understand Egypt better. He died in 1993, but his books are still important today.

(1) جغرافى

(2) جامعة

(3) درجة الدكتوراة

(4) مفكر

(5) جمع / ضم

(6) علم السياسة

(7) مهم

(8) جوائز

(9) قوى

- Giving the main idea.

إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية.

Answer
the following
questions.

Learn

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.

- The famous Egyptian thinker, Dr. Gamal Hemdan.

Practice

2. Do you think Dr. Gamal Hemdan's books are helpful? and why?

Word-building skills

تنويه : لمزيد من المهارات [ملحق المعاصر للمهارات اللغوية]

Suffixes & Prefixes

سوابق ولواحق

1 Learn

A suffix اللاحقة

- It is a letter or a group of letters that you add to the end of a word to make a new word. - هي عبارة عن حرف أو مجموعة من الحروف تضاف إلى نهاية كلمة لكي نحصل على كلمة جديدة.

Ex. think (verb) + er → "thinker".

A prefix البادئة

- It is a group of letters we add to the beginning of a word to change its meaning.

- هي عبارة عن مجموعة من الحروف نضيفها إلى بداية الكلمة لتغيير معناها.

Ex. - (un) + happy → unhappy - (ir) + responsible → irresponsible

The root of the word جذر الكلمة

- It is the base word before adding a prefix or suffix.

- هو الكلمة الأساسية قبل إضافة بادئة أو لاحقة.

Ex. ir responsi ble
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 A prefix The root of A suffix
 البادئة جذر الكلمة اللاحقة

ادرس هذه اللواحق والبادئات جيدًا :

| Suffix | Example | | Part of speech |
|--------|---------|-------------|----------------|
| -ful | power | → powerful | Adjective |
| -ist | tour | → tourist | Noun |
| -ment | agree | → agreement | Noun |
| -er | think | → thinker | Noun |

| Prefix | Word | New word | Maning |
|--------|---------|-----------|-----------------|
| un- | afraid | unafraid | غير خائف - واثق |
| in- | correct | incorrect | غير صحيح / خاطئ |
| dis- | like | dislike | يكره |
| ir- | regular | irregular | غير منتظم |

2 Practice

SB Add a suffix or prefix to each root word to create a new word.

ir- -er -ful un- dis- -ment in-

- | | |
|---------------|---------------------|
| 1. help | 2. pay |
| 3. happy | 4. correct |
| 5. sing | 6. responsible |
| 7. like | 8. usual |

Exercise on Vocabulary

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Adam won a/an for his science project.

| | | | |
|---------|----------|----------|---------|
| a. game | b. voice | c. award | d. rule |
|---------|----------|----------|---------|
- He got a top in gymnastics.

| | | | |
|----------|----------|-----------|---------|
| a. model | b. medal | c. middle | d. game |
|----------|----------|-----------|---------|
- Our country has an important in history.

| | | | |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| a. game | b. role | c. rule | d. door |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|
- All students want to study at a good

| | | | |
|-----------|-----------|---------------|-----------|
| a. market | b. cinema | c. university | d. garden |
|-----------|-----------|---------------|-----------|
- Tarek is a famous He is interested in geography.

| | | | |
|--------------|----------|---------------|------------|
| a. geologist | b. actor | c. geographer | d. dentist |
|--------------|----------|---------------|------------|

SB Exercises

6. SB Dr. Gamal Hemdan the State Appreciation Award in 1986.
 a. stopped b. won c. stood d. promised
7. SB Dr. Gamal Hemdan his PhD from a university in England.
 a. made b. wrote c. got d. found
8. SB Dr. Hemdan believed Egypt's location makes it
 a. locked b. unknown c. powerful d. soft

El-Moasser Exercises

9. He is a great He is known for strong ideas.
 a. driver b. thinker c. singer d. cleaner
10. Egypt's is very special in Africa.
 a. street b. location c. direction d. view
11. We had a/an to start the project on Monday.
 a. answer b. story c. object d. agreement
12. A is someone who visits another country for fun.
 a. student b. tourist c. teacher d. worker
13. Your answer is Please, check it again.
 a. regular b. incorrect c. correct d. finished

► Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. Hazem is interested history.
 a. at b. to c. in d. of
15. Reading helps us knowledge.
 a. drop b. win c. gain d. earn
16. Basem an award for a poem he had written.
 a. won b. respect c. saved d. gained

General Exercises



On Lesson 3

التقييمات اليومية
والأسبوعية والشهرية
فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب].

1. Dr . Gamal Hemdan was a/an and writer.
a. officer b. doctor c. librarian d. geographer
2. He was born in
a. Beheira b. Qalyubia c. Alexandria d. Menofia
3. He studied at Cairo University.
a. science b. geography c. math d. history
4. He got his PhD from a/an in England.
a. university b. community c. clinic d. organization

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Egypt has played an important in history.
a. award b. location c. role d. climate
2. GPS gives us information about
a. location b. science c. personality d. history

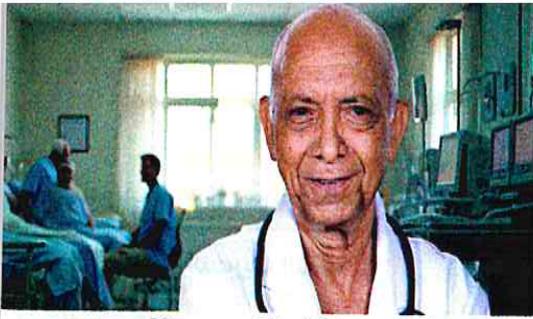
3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

ideas - famous - leaders - land - awards

Dr. Gamal Hemdan wrote many books. His most (1) book is "The Personality of Egypt." In this book, he wrote about Egypt's (2), its people; and its important role in history. He also wrote books about the Suez Canal. Dr Hemdan won many (3) He was known for his strong (4) He believed Egypt's location makes it powerful.

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. She a short story for the last competition.
a. write b. wrote c. writes d. writing
2. Yesterday, I find my favorite book in the library.
a. wasn't b. don't c. didn't d. am not



SB pages 50 : 53

Lessons

5 & 6

- ▶ A Hero Who Made a Difference "Dr Mohamed Ghoniem"
- ▶ Team - Project Roundtable

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|----------------|-------------------|---------------------|--------------|
| patients (n) | مرضى | healthier (adj) | أكثر صحة |
| biography (n) | سيرة ذاتية | kidney diseases | أمراض الكلى |
| leader (n) | قائد | kidney transplant | زرع كلى |
| dedication (n) | إخلاص - تفان | methods (n) | طرق / وسائل |
| challenges (n) | تحديات | impact (ed) (v),(n) | يؤثر / تأثير |
| Olympics (n) | الألعاب الأولمبية | | |



Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

recipes - patients - methods - leader - biography

1. Doctors help to get better.
2. The manager is the of our company.
3. I'm going to write a about my experience in life.
4. We always develop new for kidney transplant.

Lesson 5 ▶ SB pages 50 & 51

| | | | |
|------------------|--------------|----------------------|------------|
| face (d) (v),(n) | وجه - يواجه | stronger (adj) | أقوى |
| Egyptian (n) | مصرى الجنسية | difficult situations | مواقف صعبة |
| young (adj) | صغير السن | rest (n) | إستراحة |
| difference (n) | اختلاف | | |

Lesson 6 ▶ SB pages 52 & 53

المفردات اللغوية المساعدة لأداء الـ "Project"

| | | | |
|------------------|---------------|------------------|-------------|
| team (n) | فريق | poster (n) | ملصق إعلاني |
| protect (ed) (v) | يحمى | present (ed) (v) | يقدم |
| facts (n) | حقائق | swimmer (n) | سباح |
| really (adv) | حقاً / بالفعل | | |

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

| Present المضارع | Past الماضي | P.P. التصريف الثالث |
|--------------------|-------------|---------------------|
| overcome يتغلب على | overcame | overcome |
| choose يختار | chose | chosen |
| become يصبح | became | become |

Vocabulary Study

► Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

| Word الكلمة | Synonym المرادف | Antonym المضاد |
|------------------|-----------------|------------------------|
| develop يطور | improve | destroy / damage يُدمر |
| patient مريض | sick person | healthy بصحة جيدة |
| love يحب | like | hate يكره |
| many / much كثير | a lot of | few / little قليل |

► Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة ونهاية

| Prefix / Suffix | Function الوظيفة | Examples أمثلة |
|-----------------|------------------|--------------------------------------|
| -ly | تحول الصفة لظرف | correctly بشكل صحيح strongly بقوة |
| -er | تحول الفعل لاسم | marker قلم تظليل |

✓ Exercise on Vocabulary Study

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Ahmed doesn't feel ill today; he's
a. lazy b. healthy c. little d. kind
- The words "love" and "....." have the same meaning.
a. like b. hate c. dislike d. develop
- We can get the noun from the verb "mark" by adding the suffix ".....".
a. -es b. -er c. -ly d. -ive
- "Destroy" is the opposite of the word ".....".
a. achieve b. improve c. explain d. like



General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 transplant - transport

* **transplant** ⇒

نقل وزراعة الأعضاء

▶ **SB** Dr Mohammed Ghoneim developed methods for kidney **transplants**.

* **transport** ⇒

النقل والمواصلات [أشخاص / بضائع]

▶ The underground is the fastest form of **transport** in Egypt.

2 special - private

* **special** ⇒

خاص (بمعنى مميز / أو خاص بصفة معينة)

▶ There are **special** role models in Egypt such as Mohamed Salah.

* **private** ⇒

خاص (بمعنى شخصي / ينتمي لفرد / أو مؤسسة)

▶ This is a **private** garden.

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

| Expressions التعبيرات | |
|--------------------------|--------------|
| face problems | يواجه مشكلات |
| work hard | يعمل بجد |
| make a difference | يصنع فرقاً |
| Prepositions الحروف الجر | |
| help... with | يساعد في |
| care... about | يعتنى بـ |

| | |
|---------------------|----------------------|
| take time to + inf. | يستغرق وقت في |
| follow their dreams | يتبعوا أحلامهم |
| look back at | يتذكر / يسترجع |
| impact on | تأثير على / يؤثر على |
| at the top of | على قمة |

A week is enough

مراجعة المنهج
والتمكن منه في
اسبوع واحد فقط

EL-MOASSER





Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

on Lesson 5 SB page 50

Dr. Mohammed Ghoneim

1. Dr Mohammed Ghoneim is a very **famous**⁽¹⁾ Egyptian doctor and a hero to many people.
2. He is a **determined**⁽²⁾ **kind**⁽³⁾ doctor.
3. He worked hard to help people with **kidney**⁽⁴⁾ **diseases**⁽⁵⁾.
4. He had a lot of **achievements**⁽⁶⁾, as he developed new methods for **kidney transplants**⁽⁷⁾.
5. He was **brave**⁽⁸⁾ because he worked in difficult situations and did not stop when he faced problems.
6. His work is important not only in Egypt, but also around the world.

7. Dr Ghoneim showed us one person can make a big difference when they care about and love their work.
8. He teaches us that true **heroes**⁽⁹⁾ are those who help people and make their **communities**⁽¹⁰⁾ stronger and healthier.

| | | | |
|------------|---------------------|----------------|-----------|
| الكلبي (4) | طبيب/لطفيف (3) | عائد العزم (2) | مشهور (1) |
| شجاع (8) | زرع ونقل الكلبي (7) | إنجازات (6) | أمراض (5) |
| | | مجتمعات (10) | أبطال (9) |

تأليفه : الجمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل وكتابة سيرة ذاتية عن أشخاص مشهورين:

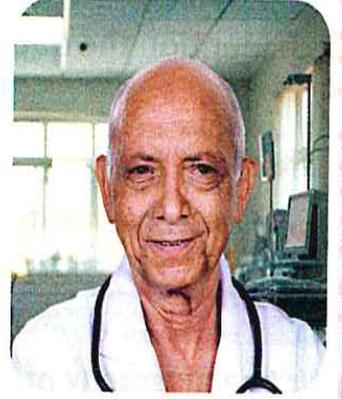
* A biography about Dr. Mohammed Ghoniem

* Your role model

• on Lesson 5 SB page 50

Dr. Mohamed Ghoniem is a famous Egyptian doctor and a hero to many people. He is a determined doctor who worked hard to help people with kidney diseases. Dr. Ghoniem's achievements are many, as he developed new methods for kidney transplants and helped many patients in his community.

He is brave because he worked in difficult situations and did not stop when he faced problems. Dr. Ghoniem is also very kind to his patients, always taking time to listen to them. Many young doctors say that Dr. Ghoniem inspires them to become better doctors and to help others.



His work is important not only in Egypt, but also around the world. Dr. Ghoniem shows us that one person can make a big difference when they care about and love their work. He teaches us that true heroes are those who help people and make their communities stronger and healthier.

Writing

الكتابة

► A. A biography :

1 Learn

To write a biography to describe someone, or "Your role model or you admire"

◀ عند كتابة سيرة ذاتية تصف شخص ما هو قدوة لك أو تعجب به اتبع التالي :

► 1. Start by saying who your role model is and why you chose them.

◀ ابدأ بذكر من هو قدوتك ولماذا قمت باختياره.

ex. - My role model is Dr. Mohamed Ghoniem.
 - I admire him because he is a famous Egyptian doctor.

▶ **2. Describe what they did using the past simple tense.**

◀ صف ما قاموا به باستخدام زمن الماضي البسيط.

ex. - He developed new methods for kidney transplants.

▶ **3. Mention the qualities that make them famous.**

◀ اذكر الصفات التي جعلتهم مشهورين.

ex. - He is a hero to many people.
 - He worked hard to help people with kidney diseases.

2 Practice

Write a biography of (80-100) words describing someone you admire.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

▶ **B. Punctuation Marks :**

علامات الترقيم :

1 Learn

We use a comma (,) :

◀ تُستخدم الفاصلة السفلية (,) :

▶ **Listening items :**

◀ تعداد العناصر (تستخدم عندما تقوم بذكر أو كتابة مجموعة من الأشياء واحدة تلو الأخرى).

ex. - I bought apples , oranges , bananas , and grapes.

▶ **Joining clauses with linking words :**

◀ ربط الجمل باستخدام كلمات الربط :

ex. - I wanted to help , but I didn't know how.

▶ **Addressing people :**

◀ مخاطبة الأشخاص :

ex. - Soha , could you help me ?

2 Practice

► Punctuate the following sentences :

1. **SB** Studied English math science and had some rest

2. **SB** nada would you help me with my project

3. The flag has red white and black colors

4. ahmed please bring your book

5. she studied hard so she passed the test

✓ Exercise on Vocabulary

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Good leaders have a positive on their team.
a. poster b. impact c. fact d. picture
- A/An is a difficult task that tests your ability and strength.
a. challenge b. team c. achievement d. difference
- A is someone who guides or leads a team.
a. patient b. student c. doctor d. leader
- To succeed in dealing with difficult problems means to them.
a. create b. start c. overcome d. cause
- His to science led to many important discoveries.
a. challenge b. dedication c. community d. future

SB Exercises

- SB** Dr. Ghoniem developed new for kidney transplants.
a. rest b. methods c. olympics d. leader
- SB** Dr. Ghoniem worked hard to help people with kidney
a. heros b. achievements c. diseases d. facts
- SB** I read a about Dr. Ghoniem's life.
a. biography b. geography c. recipe d. meal

El-Moasser Exercises

9. I think Dr. Ghoniem is a true

- a. player b. hero c. vet d. singer

10. A true hero can make a big in their community.

- a. question b. problem c. difficult d. difference

11. He didn't stop working hard when he a lot of problems in his life.

- a. stayed b. faced c. cared d. developed

► **Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions**

12. The teacher told us to ready for the test.

- a. follow b. get c. care d. take

13. We need to drink water least twice a day.

- a. on b. at c. in d. with

14. She studied hard and now she's at the of her class.

- a. size b. bottom c. top d. age

Master your skills

يهدف إلى تنمية
مهارات
اللغة الإنجليزية



General Exercises



On Lessons 5 & 6

التقييمات اليومية
والأسبوعية والشهرية
فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- We should follow different for learning.
a. methods b. rocks c. hobbies d. plants
- Solving a hard math problem is an example of
a. community b. agreement c. challenge d. personality

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

difference - admire - hero - kindness - determined

Ms. Dina is more than a teacher for us. She is a (1) She is our science teacher this year. She is a determined and caring teacher. We all (2) her work and personality. She helped many children to improve their grades. Her (3) also teaches students to share in the community. She is making a big (4) in the community.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Dr. Mohamed Ghoniem is a famous Egyptian doctor and a hero to many people.

He is a **determined** doctor who worked hard to help people with kidney diseases. Dr. Ghoniem's achievement are many, as he developed new methods for kidney transplants and helped many patients in his community.

He is brave because he worked in difficult situations and did not stop when he faced problems. Dr. Ghoniem is also very kind to his patients, always taking time to listen to them. Many young doctors say that Dr. Ghoniem inspires **them** to become better doctors and to help others.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Dr. Ghoniem helps people with diseases.
a. heart b. lung c. kidney d. determined
- The underlined word **determined** means " ".
a. lazy b. patient c. smart d. confident

b. Answer the following questions :

- What is the main idea of the text ?

.....

4. Why do you think Dr. Mohamed Ghoniem is a hero?
.....

5. What does the underlined pronoun "**them**" refer to?
.....

6. How did Dr. Ghoniem help many young doctors?
.....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. He hard to achieve his dream in 2019.
a. works b. work c. working d. worked
2. The Pyramids very important in Ancient Egypt.
a. can b. will c. were d. is

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. They [not give] up and faced their challenges.
2. [Does] he make a difference in his community ? - Yes, he did.
3. Her sister [be] the most famous tennis player in the school last year.
4. Who did you [admires]?

6 Complete the following dialog :

Tabarak and Hala are talking about a hero.

Tabarak : Did you hear about the new superman?

Hala : A new superman! No, I (1)

Tabarak : Yesterday, there was a really big fire in an apartment.

Hala : That's horrible! (2) there anyone inside the apartment?

Tabarak : Yes, there were three little children.

Hala : (3) they hurt?

Tabarak : No. A 15 year-old-boy climbed the building and saved them.

Hala : He is a hero.

Tabarak : That's great, so I called him the new (4)

7 Write a biography of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Dr. Mohamed Ghoniem"

.....

.....

.....

https://t.me/G5_Y5

Review



on unit 3

| Vocabulary | Language | Speaking |
|--|---|--|
| Lessons 1 & 2 community inspire determined cancer treatment absent attack vacation peace physics | الماضي البسيط Past simple Formation التكوين 1. Affirmative statements : الجملة الخبرية المثبتة : التصريف الثاني للفعل + الفاعل ex. - He bought a new car. - She explained the lesson clearly. | 1. Asking and Answering questions about heroes and role models. A : Who is your role model? B : Dr Gamal Hemdan is my role model. 2. Discussing leadership qualities : |
| Lesson 3 powerful geographer magic awards agreement personality awards | 2. Negative statements : الجملة الخبرية المنفية : المصدر Subject الفاعل + didn't + inf. ex. - I didn't go out for a walk yesterday. | A : What are the main qualities of a good leader ? B : A good leader should be patient, kind and helpful to others. |
| Lessons 5 & 6 patients biography dedication kidney diseases kidney transplant impact leader methods | 3. Interrogative : صيغة الاستفهام : Did + subject الفاعل + inf. المصدر + ... ? ex. - Did you study your lessons ? - Yes, I did. - No, I didn't. Question word + did + subject + inf. + ... ? كلمة الاستفهام الفاعل المصدر ex. - Where did you spend your last summer holiday ? - I spent it in Alexandria. | |

General Exercises on unit 3

التقييمات اليومية
والأسبوعية والشهرية
في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions : استمع إلى معلمك وأجب عن الأسئلة الآتية. [نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب].

1. Who is a role model ?

.....

2. Give two examples of people who can be role model.

.....

3. How can a role model help us ? Mention one.

.....

4. What values can role models teach us ?

.....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. She is a famous who studies the Earth's surface.

a. geographer b. geography c. photographer d. biography

2. A/An means success in reaching a goal.

a. value b. invention c. achievement d. model

3. Yesterday, my brother me how to use the computer.

a. showing b. shows c. showed d. show

4. They get ready for the exam yesterday.

a. don't b. didn't c. wasn't d. don't

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

awards - treatment - heroes - kindness - community

We think heroes must be special people who can make great inventions. In fact, that's not true. Some (1) are ordinary people who do brave things. They may not win (2), but their impact lasts long. Helping others without expecting anything in return shows true (3) These people make their (4) better.

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Dr. Samia is a scientist who inspires me. She developed a new way to recycle plastic, helping the environment. Her method turns old bottles into new products. Last year, her work recycled 1,000 tons of plastic. Dr. Samia says, "Science can solve big problems." She's my role model because she uses her knowledge to help people.

She also teaches free science classes for kids. Her classes encourage students to love learning. Dr. Samia's next project is to clean polluted rivers. Her achievements show that science can make the world better.

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Dr. Samia's classes make students love
a. scientists b. learning c. the community d. plastic
2. The underlined word "encourage" " can be replaced by
a. leave b. return c. inspire d. recycle

b. Answer the following questions :

3. Give a suitable title to the text.

.....

4. What does the underlined pronoun "her" refer to ?

.....

5. How did Dr. Samia use science to solve a problem?

.....

6. Why did the writer admire Dr. Samia?

.....

5 Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets :

1. Was he happy yesterday ? (Yes,...)

.....

2. They were at the park a week ago. (went)

.....

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. He [win] the Nobel Prize in 2010.

2. [Be] she interested in studying geography yesterday?

3. What [do] they write about in the last writing class?

4. Ali [not do] his home assignment yesterday.

7 Complete the following dialog :

Eyad is drawing a picture of a famous Egyptian hero.

Omar : What are you doing, Eyad?

Eyad : (1).....

https://t.me/G5_Y5

Omar : (2) ?

Eyad : The picture is for the Egyptian hero Ahmed El-Mansy.

Omar : I don't know him! (3) ?

Eyad : He was one of the best soldiers in the Egyptian Army.

Omar : Did he die?

Eyad : Yes. He was killed during a battle while protecting Egypt's land.

Omar : (3) I really so proud of him.

► **Story** The Magic Classroom (Chapter Three)

8 a. Read and complete the sentences with the correct words from the box :

magic - friends - happiness

1. The children returned to their classroom with their hearts full of
2. Omar had courage because his believed in him.

b. Answer the following questions :

1. **SB** Who did the children see in the final room ?
.....
2. **SB** Why do you think the teacher was proud of the children ?
.....

9 Write an email of about A HUNDRED (100) words :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

To your friend Abdelrahman about a famous scientist. Your name is Akef and your email address is akef@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is abdelrahmanAl@gmail.com.

From

To

Subject

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

https://t.me/G5_Y5

Review 1



SB pages 55 : 58

Vocabulary

Lesson 1 ▶ SB pages 55 & 56

| | | | |
|-------------|---------------|----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| smartboard | سبورة ذكية | Cairo Monorail | القطار الاحادي [مونوريل القاهرة] |
| respect | احترام | transportation project | مشروع نقل |
| kinesthetic | حركى | traveling | السفر |
| achievement | إنجاز | crowded | مزدحم |
| digital | رقمى | New Administrative Capital | العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة |
| experiment | تجربة | reduce | يقلل |
| determined | مصمم | pollution | التلوث |
| website | موقع إلكترونى | electricity | كهرباء |
| auditory | سمعى | fuel | وقود |
| ebook | كتاب إلكترونى | traditional trains | قطارات تقليدية |
| visual | مرئى | single rail | سكة حديدية أحادية |
| brave | شجاع | stuck | عالق |
| cultures | ثقافات | search online | يبحث عبر الإنترنت |

Lesson 2 ▶ SB pages 56 : 58

| | | | |
|------------------|----------------|----------------------|----------------|
| collaborate | يتعاون | focused | مركز / متيقظ |
| organize | ينظم | communication skills | مهارات التواصل |
| progress | تقدم | distraction | تشتيت الانتباه |
| confident | واثق | methods | طرق |
| challenge | تحدي | focus | يركز |
| peaceful | هادئ | digital learning | التعليم الرقمى |
| tablet | جهاز لوحي | digital devices | أجهزة رقمية |
| laptop | حاسوب محمول | smartphones | هواتف ذكية |
| video call | مكالمة فيديو | motivation | دافع |
| modern education | التعليم الحديث | apps | تطبيقات |
| courage | شجاعة | community support | دعم المجتمع |
| determination | إصرار | underground | تحت الأرض |
| daily life | الحياة اليومية | | |



Listening

- Exercise 2 on Lesson 1 SB page 55

The Cairo Monorail⁽¹⁾ Project

The Cairo Monorail is considered an important **transportation project**⁽²⁾ in Egypt because it helps solve traffic problems and makes traveling easier for people in **crowded**⁽³⁾ cities like Cairo. It connects important areas such as downtown Cairo with Giza and the **New Administrative Capital**⁽⁴⁾.

The monorail will improve the daily life of Egyptian **citizens**⁽⁵⁾ in many ways. First, it will **reduce**⁽⁶⁾ travel time, making it faster for people to move between different parts of the city. Second, it will help reduce pollution because it uses electricity **instead of**⁽⁷⁾ fuel.

There are some main differences between the monorail and other types of **public transportation**⁽⁸⁾. Unlike traditional trains or buses, the monorail runs above the ground on a **single rail**⁽⁹⁾, so it doesn't get stuck in **traffic**⁽¹⁰⁾. Also, it's faster, quieter, and more modern than older systems.

One of the project's goals is to encourage people to use public transportation instead of private cars. This helps reduce traffic and protect the **environment**⁽¹¹⁾. The monorail is a smart and clean way to travel in Egypt's big cities.

| | | | | | |
|-------------|------------------|------------------------------|----------------------|---------------|---------------------|
| (6) يقلل | (5) مواطنون | (4) العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة | (3) مزدحم | (2) مشروع نقل | (1) مونوريل القاهرة |
| (11) البيئة | (10) حركة المرور | (9) سكة أحادية | (8) المواصلات العامة | (7) بدلاً من | |

- Exercise 3 on Lesson 1 SB page 55

Digital learning⁽¹⁾ has become a key part of modern **education**⁽²⁾. With devices like tablets, **smartboards**⁽³⁾, and smartphones, students can learn anywhere and work with others around the world. **Online learning**⁽⁴⁾ needs focus and **motivation**⁽⁵⁾, but it also gives students the **chance**⁽⁶⁾ to learn in their own way.

Technology helps improve **communication**⁽⁷⁾ through apps and **group chats**⁽⁸⁾, and it builds important **skills**⁽⁹⁾. However, technology alone isn't enough—teachers and **community support**⁽¹⁰⁾ are still very important in education.

| | | | | |
|------------------|-------------------------|-------------------|-------------|-------------------|
| (5) دافع | (4) التعلم عبر الإنترنت | (3) سيورات ذكية | (2) التعليم | (1) التعلم الرقمي |
| (10) دعم المجتمع | (9) مهارات | (8) دردشات جماعية | (7) التواصل | (6) الفرصة |

General Exercises



On Review 1

Lesson 1

1 Complete the sentences with words from the list below:

smartboard – sad – respect – kinesthetic – goal – cheerful – achievement

1. My main for this year is to learn to search online.
2. The students used the to share their ideas in the classroom.
3. She is always, even when things are difficult.
4. Many people prefer learning, where they learn by doing activities.
5. It's important to show for different cultures.
6. Winning the championship was a huge for the team.
7. She looked when she heard the bad news.

2 A. Listen to the audio text and answer the following questions:

1. Why is the Cairo Monorail considered an important transportation project in Egypt?
2. In what ways will the Monorail improve the daily life of Egyptian citizens?
3. What are the main differences between the Monorail and other types of public transportation in Cairo? Mention two.

B. Listen again and put T (True) or F (False):

1. The Monorail will only connect downtown Cairo with Giza.
2. The Cairo Monorail is a traditional railway system that runs underground.
3. One of the aims of the project is to encourage people to use public transportation instead of private cars.

3 Listen and answer the questions below:

1. What are some digital devices used in modern learning?
2. What does online learning need students to be?
3. How can technology help to improve communications?
4. In what way does digital learning improve communication skills?
5. Why are people still important in education, even with technology?

https://t.me/G5_Y5

4 Writing an email:

Imagine you are having some trouble understanding a topic in your class. Write an email to your teacher of (80-100) words, explaining your difficulty and asking for help.

To write an email:

- Add a clear subject line
- Add a polite greeting
- Mention the topic you find it difficult
- Explain why you are finding it difficult
- Ask for suggestions or resources that might help
- Add a polite closing

Lesson 2

► World Classification

1 Classify the following words into the correct categories.

digital – experiment – caring – screen – kinesthetic – determined – website
– auditory – hero – ebook – visual – brave

| Technology | Learning Styles | Personal Qualities |
|------------|-----------------|--------------------|
| digital | kinesthetic | caring |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

2 Complete the following sentences using words from the list below.

collaborate – monitor – organize – progress – confident – challenge – peaceful

1. Students need to their time before exams.
2. The teacher will our performance during the test.
3. Working together helps us better.
4. She feels about her presentation skills.
5. Learning a new language is always a
6. We should watch our in each subject.
7. The library provides a place to study.

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions below:

Technology has changed the way students learn. With devices like tablets and laptops, they can access information easily and learn at their own speed. Different students learn in different ways—some by seeing, some by listening, and others by doing activities. Modern classrooms now have smartboards and video calls, which help students learn better and connect with people around the world.

But there are also problems. Students need to learn how to use technology wisely and stay focused without getting distracted. Still, technology makes learning more interesting and helps students get ready for the future. A good mix of old and new learning methods is important.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Students use digital devices like tablets and laptops to
 - a. play games in class
 - b. take breaks from learning
 - c. access information and communicate
 - d. avoid doing homework
2. One challenge of digital learning is that students must
 - a. stop using the internet completely
 - b. learn to use technology wisely and stay focused
 - c. ignore their classmates
 - d. study only with books

b. Answer the following questions:

3. Mention some digital devices students use to learn today.
4. Name three types of learning styles mentioned in the text.
5. How do modern classrooms use technology to improve learning?

4 Complete the dialog between Ahmed and Mariam:

Ahmed : Hi Mariam! What are you doing? You look very focused.

Mariam : Hi Ahmed! I'm actually trying to organize my notes for the history project.
It's a bit of a challenge.

Ahmed : (1)

Mariam : Oh, thank you! I'm using a new app that helps create mind maps.

Ahmed : That sounds really helpful. I usually just write everything down.

Mariam : (2)

Ahmed : Wow, that's smart! I often find it hard to remember all the details.

Mariam : Exactly! It really helps to see the connections visually.

5 Read and circle the correct word.

1. My brother (**always watching / always watches**) TV in the evening.
2. A fish (**can / can't**) fly, but it (**can / can't**) swim.
3. Yesterday, I (**go / went**) to the library.
4. She (**is writing / writes**) an email right now.
5. The cat sat (**on / under**) the mat.

6 Writing a Short Biography:

Choose someone you admire who shows great courage or determination.

In your notebook, write a short biography of (80-100) words.

You can use the following ideas:

- Their names and what they are known for
- Why you consider them a role model and how they inspire you

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

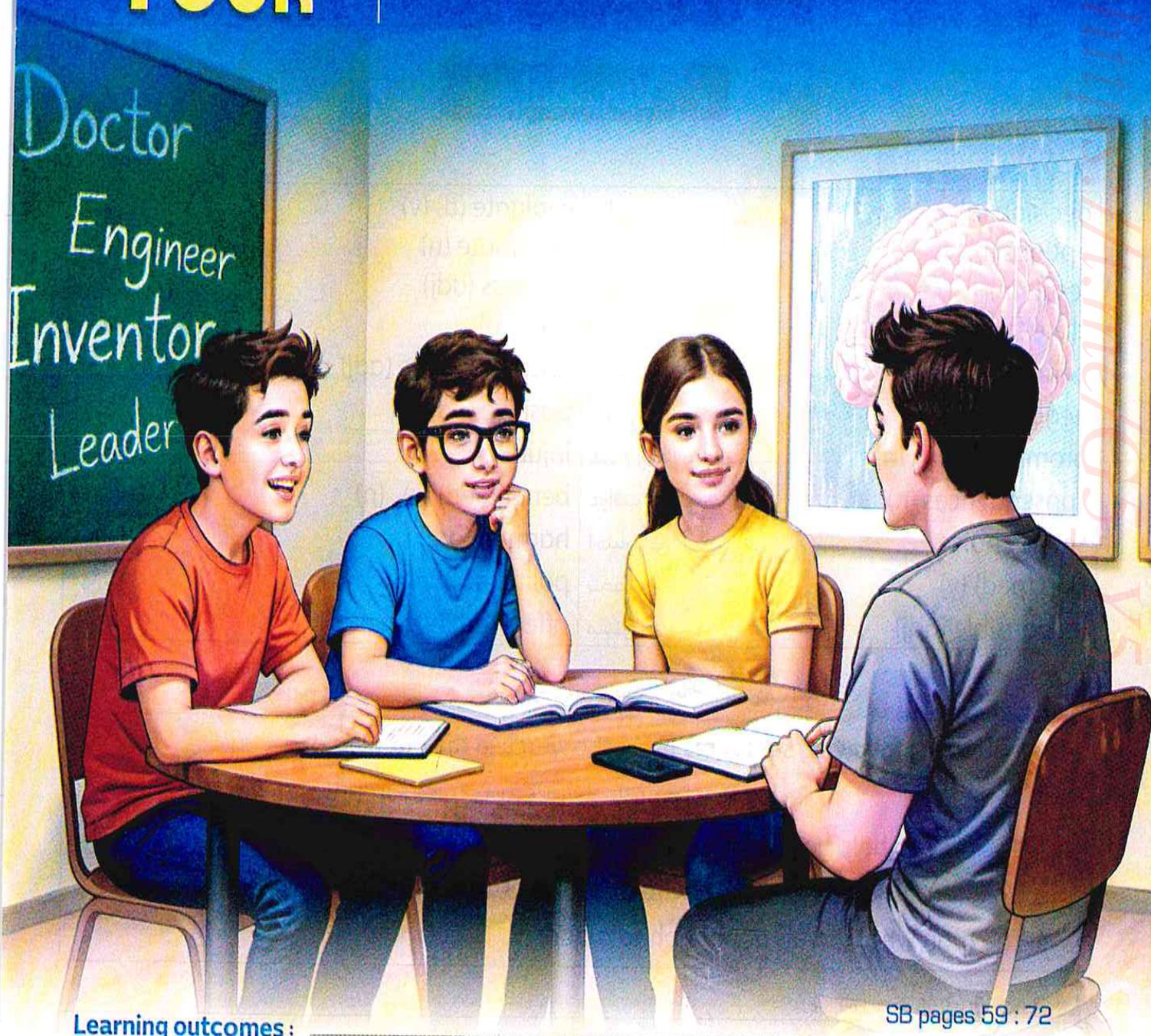
.....

.....

.....

Unit FOUR

Smart Choices



Learning outcomes :

SB pages 59 : 72

• Reading :

- Identify the main idea and at least two specific details in a text about your choices
- Use context clues to understand vocabulary related to making smart choices

• Listening :

- Identify the main idea in conversations about making difficult choices
- Find specific details about options and advice in situations

• Speaking :

- Talk about personal daily choices
- Give and ask for advice using "should"

• Language :

- Identify and create first conditional sentences to talk about future possibilities
- Use [should and shouldn't] for advice

• Writing :

Write a blog post about a personal problem



SB pages 60 : 63

Lessons

1 & 2

▶ Think Before You Choose
▶ Decisions and Consequences

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|-----------------------|---------------|------------------------|---------------|
| decision (n) | قرار | evaluate (d) (v) | يقيم |
| options (n) | خيارات | classmate (n) | زميل فصل |
| result (n) | نتيجة | careless (adj) | مهمل |
| close friend (n) | صديق حميم | sides (n) | جوانب |
| behave (d) (v) | يتصرف / يسلك | uncomfortable (adj) | غير مريح |
| negative (adj) | سلبى | positive (adj) | ايجابي |
| promise (d) (v) , (n) | يعد / وعد | injury (n) | إصابة |
| consequences (n) | عواقب / نتائج | benefit (ed) (v) , (n) | يُفيد - فائدة |
| smart choice | اختيار ذكي | harmful (adj) | ضار , مُؤذٍ |
| skip (ped) (v) | يتخطى | polite (adj) | مهذب |
| responsible (adj) | مسئول | affect (ed) (v) | يؤثر على |



Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

decisions - behave - sides - promise - injury

1. I to help you with your homework.
2. Children should well with others.
3. Good leaders make smart
4. The man who had an accident had a bad

Lesson 1 ▶ SB pages 60 & 61

| | | | |
|----------------|-----------------|----------------------|-------------|
| party (n) | حفل | plan (ned) (v) , (n) | يخطط - خطة |
| invite (d) (v) | يدعو | encourage (d) (v) | يشجع |
| join (ed) (v) | ينضم إلى / يربط | main idea (n) | فكرة رئيسية |

Lesson 2 ▶ SB pages 62 & 63

| | | | |
|--------------|-------|-----------------|--------|
| useful (adj) | مفيد | carefully (adv) | بعناية |
| effect (n) | تأثير | library (n) | مكتبة |

| | | | |
|--------------------|---------------|------------------|----------|
| school trip | رحلة مدرسية | parents (n) | الوالدين |
| computer games (n) | ألعاب كمبيوتر | discuss (ed) (v) | يناقش |
| daily (adv) | يوميًا | angry (adj) | غاضب |
| probable (adj) | محتمل | | |

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

| Present المضارع | Past الماضي | P.P. التصريف الثالث |
|-----------------------|-------------|---------------------|
| let يسمح / يدع / يترك | let | let |
| understand يفهم | understood | understood |
| mean يعنى/يقصد | meant | meant |
| forget ينسى | forgot | forgotten |

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

| | | |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------|----------------|
| decision | a choice you can make | قرار |
| evaluate | to think carefully before deciding | يُقيم |
| positive | a good or helpful result | إيجابي |
| negative | bad or harmful | سلبى |
| responsible | to act with care and think of others | مسئول |
| consequence | the result or effect of an action | نتيجة |
| benefit | to be useful to someone | يُفيد / يستفيد |
| careless | not caring about your actions | مهمل |
| goal | something you want to achieve | هدف |

Vocabulary Study

► Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

| Word الكلمة | Synonym المرادف | Antonym /Opposite المضاد |
|----------------|-----------------|--------------------------|
| smart ذكى | intelligent | stupid غبى |
| let يدع / يترك | allow | stop / prevent يمنع |
| close قريب | near | far بعيد |

► Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة ونهاية

| Prefix / Suffix بادئة / نهاية | Function الوظيفة | Examples أمثلة |
|-------------------------------|------------------|------------------------|
| un - | تعطى عكس الكلمة | uncomfortable غير مريح |
| - ful | تحول الاسم لصفة | useful مفيد |
| - less | تعطى عكس الكلمة | careless مهمل |

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- He is enough to answer these math problems.
 a. lazy b. smart c. far d. weak
- "Close" and "" have the same meaning.
 a. smart b. near c. careless d. useful
- To give the opposite of the word "comfortable", we add the prefix ""
 a. im- b. un- c. dis- d. mis-
- The suffix "" gives the adjective from the noun "care".
 a. -less b. -ness c. -able d. -ist



General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 effect - affect

* effect ⇒ (n)

▶ Smoking has a bad **effect** on your health.

تأثير

* affect ⇒ (v)

▶ Smoking **affects** your health badly.

يؤثر على

2 let - allow

* let ⇒ (obj) + (inf.)

▶ Father **let** us play football.

يسمح / يترك

* allow ⇒ (obj) + to+ (inf.)

▶ Father **allowed** us **to** play football.

يسمح / يترك

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعابير و حروف جر هامة

| Expressions | | التعابير | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------|---|----------------|
| make a decision | تتخذ قرار | waste time | يضيع الوقت |
| make mistakes | يرتكب أخطاء | cross the road | يعبر الطريق |
| positive and negative sides | جوانب إيجابية وسلبية | pass the test | يجتاز الامتحان |
| feel proud | يشعر بالفخر | study for a test | يذاكر للامتحان |
| ask for advice | يطلب النصيحة | stay home | يبقى في البيت |
| feel left out | يشعر بأنه مستبعد | لقد حققت الحفلة نجاحاً كبيراً. The party was a success. | |
| Prepositions | | حروف الجر | |
| close to | قريب من | invite to | يدعو إلى |
| excited about | متحمس بشأن | act with | يتصرف/يسلك مع |
| care about | يعتنى بـ | lead to | يؤدي إلى |
| focus on | يركز على | | |



Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

on lesson 1 SB page 60

Think before you choose

1. Youssef was **excited**⁽¹⁾ about his birthday and planned a small party after school.
2. He invited eight close friends who had been **responsible**⁽²⁾ in class and finished their homework.
3. A day before the party, two classmates asked to join.
4. They weren't very close to Youssef, and one had been **careless**⁽³⁾ in class.
5. He thought well before taking his **decision**⁽⁴⁾ and thought about both **positive**⁽⁵⁾ and **negative**⁽⁶⁾ sides.

6. At the end, he made a responsible and polite decision.
7. He explained that the party would be only for close friends who only **behaved**⁽⁷⁾ well.
8. This smart idea encouraged others to be good and responsible in the future.
9. All friends promised to improve and Youssef felt proud of making a positive decision.

| | | |
|----------|------------|------------------|
| مهم (3) | مسئول (2) | متحمس (1) |
| سلبى (6) | إيجابى (5) | قرار (4) |
| | | تصرف / تعامل (7) |

تنويه : الجمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل أو كتابة فقرات إنشائية أخرى:

* Solving problems

* Taking right decisions

1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz

تدرب على 10 من
قطع الفهم
وتصوص الاستماع

Reading

• on Lesson 1 SB page 60

Youssef was excited about his birthday and planned a small party after school. He invited eight close friends who had been **responsible**⁽¹⁾ in class and finished their homework. A day before the party, two classmates asked to join. They weren't very close to Youssef, and one had been **careless**⁽²⁾ in class. Youssef faced a difficult **decision**⁽³⁾.



He thought, and said "If I let them come, the party may become too big and make others **uncomfortable**⁽⁴⁾", "And if I say no, the two may feel **left out**⁽⁵⁾." He carefully thought about the **positive**⁽⁶⁾ and **negative**⁽⁷⁾ sides of each choice. In the end, Youssef made a responsible and polite decision. He explained that the party was only for close friends who had behaved well, and he encouraged the boys to be more responsible in the future. To his surprise, they understood and respected his decision. One even promised to improve. The party was a success, and Youssef felt **proud**⁽⁸⁾ and said, "If everyone thinks well before taking a decision, they won't make mistakes."

| | | | |
|--------------|----------|------------|------------|
| (4) غير مريح | (3) قرار | (2) مهمل | (1) مسئول |
| (8) فذور | (7) سلبي | (6) إيجابي | (5) مستبعد |

Listening

• on Lesson 2 SB page 62

Every day, we make many decisions. Some are small, like choosing clothes. Others are big, and **affect**⁽¹⁾ our future. Making smart choices is important because all choices have **consequences**⁽²⁾.

A smart choice can **lead to**⁽³⁾ good results, while a poor choice might cause problems. To make smart choices, consider all your options. Then, you should think about the possible consequences of each option. Also, try to **focus on**⁽⁴⁾ what is most important for your future. For example, if you choose to finish your homework before playing, it will benefit your grades. Remember, smart choices help us reach our goals and live happier lives.

(1) يؤثر (2) عواقب (3) يؤدي إلى (4) يركز على

• on Lesson 2 SB page 62

Akmal : Yesterday, I had to make a smart choice. My friends wanted to go to the park, but I had a test today. I really wanted to go, but I remembered my teacher's advice "Think about tomorrow, not just today" . I stayed home and studied. Today, I passed my test with a high score! I felt proud because I made the right decision. Smart choices are not always easy, but they help us reach our goals. Now, my friends are proud of me too.

Exercise on Vocabulary

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

► Key vocabulary

1. Hard work leads to brilliant
a. injury b. success c. mistake d. accident
2. Samir is He doesn't do his homework.
a. careful b. brave c. careless d. happy
3. The boy is bad. He has a effect on his classmates.
a. positive b. good c. nice d. negative
4. Parents are for their children.
a. responsible b. careless c. lazy d. ugly
5. Making the right can change our life into the better.
a. noise b. decision c. mistake d. problem

SB Exercises

6. **SB** If you think carefully before you decide, you will problems.
a. affect b. avoid c. join d. encourage
7. **SB** A is something you want to achieve.
a. benefit b. goal c. consequence d. decision
8. **SB** The party was a success, and Youssef felt
a. sad b. angry c. proud d. tired

EI-Moasser Exercises

9. Saying "please" and "thank you" shows you are
a. harmful b. hungry c. angry d. polite
10. Yesterday, we joined an art at school.
a. result b. competition c. advice d. choice

11. Throwing trash on the ground is to the environment.
 a. helpful b. polite c. harmful d. safe

Definitions

12. To means to think carefully before deciding.
 a. forget b. evaluate c. avoid d. discuss
13. A is the result or effect of an action.
 a. decision b. consequence c. benefit d. promise

► Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. My parents me stay up late on Fridays.
 a. allow b. let c. affect d. decide
15. Don't time on playing games all day.
 a. lose b. miss c. waste d. pass
16. I want to invite all my friends the party.
 a. for b. to c. at d. in

2. Speaking

مهارة التحدث

► 1. Asking and answering questions about a problem you faced.

توجيه أسئلة والرد عليها عن مشكلة واجهتك.

Questions ?

1. Have you ever had a difficult problem ?

هل واجهت مشكلة صعبة من قبل ؟

2. What was the problem that you faced ?

ما المشكلة التي واجهتها ؟

3. Who helped you to solve it ?

من ساعدك في حلها ؟

4. What lesson did you learn from it ?

ما الدرس الذي تعلمته من ذلك ؟

Answers ✓

- Yes, I have a difficult problem.

نعم، لقد واجهتني مشكلة صعبة.

- I had to give a presentation in front of the class, but I was very nervous.

كان علي أن أقدم عرضاً أمام الفصل ولكن كنت متوتراً جداً.

- My older brother helped me. He listened to my presentation at home and gave me some tips to speak better.

ساعدني أخي الأكبر، استمع إلى العرض في المنزل وأعطاني بعض النصائح لأتحدث بشكل أفضل.

- I learned that practice makes me better.

تعلمت أن التدريب يجعلني أفضل.

2. Asking and answering questions about personal daily choices.

توجيه أسئلة والرد عليها عن الاختيارات الشخصية اليومية.

Questions

1. Do you think you often make smart choices ?

هل تعتقد أنك غالبًا ما تتخذ قرارات ذكية؟

2. What do you usually have to choose daily ?

ما الأشياء التي يجب عليك أن تختارها يوميًا؟

3. Do you usually choose your study time ?

هل تختار عادة وقت المذاكرة بنفسك؟

Answers

- Yes, I think so.

نعم، أعتقد ذلك.

- I usually choose what to wear, what to eat, and how to study and spend my free time.

عادة ما اختار ما أرتدي، وما أكل وكيف أذاكر وأقضي وقت فراغي.

- My parents always help me choose a good time to study.

والداي دائمًا يساعداني في اختيار وقت مناسب للمذاكرة.

III Language in use

1. The first conditional "If" الحالة الشرطية الأولى "If"

Usage الاستخدام

▶ We use the first conditional to talk about the probable result of an action.

◀ نستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى للتحدث عن حدث من المحتمل أن يحدث في المستقبل والنتيجة المترتبة عليه.

Formation التكوين

1 Statement الجملة الخبرية

If / When + simple present tense , subject + will ('ll) + inf.
 زمن المضارع البسيط الفاعل will not [won't] مصدر

ex. - If you **study** hard, you **'ll pass** the test.

- If you **don't study** hard, you **won't pass** the test.

Note

- ▶ Don't use "if" and "will" in the same part of a first conditional sentence.

e.g. If I ~~will~~ study لا تستخدم "Will" و "If" في نفس الجزء في جملة الحالة الشرطية الأولى.

- ▶ The part of the sentence with "if" can be the first or the second part of the sentence.

- الجزء الذي به "If" يمكن أن يكون الجزء الأول أو الثاني في الجملة الشرطية.

Subject + $\frac{\text{will ('ll)}}{\text{will not (won't)}}$ + inf. + if + $\frac{\text{simple present tense}}{\text{زمن المضارع البسيط}}$

الفاعل + مصدر

ex. - She'll feel sick if she eats too much.

Note

- ▶ When we **begin** a conditional sentence with "If", we use a **comma** in the middle of the sentence.

- نستخدم "comma" في منتصف الجملة إذا كانت "If" في بداية الجملة الشرطية.

ex. - If I go to Paris, I will see new places.

- ▶ When we use "if" in the middle of the sentence, we don't use a **comma**.

- عندما نستخدم "if" في منتصف الجملة لا نستخدم "comma".

ex. - I will see new places if I go to Paris.

2 Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام**A Yes/No question** : السؤال بـ «هل» :

Will + subj. + inf. + if + simple present ?
الفاعل + مصدر + جملة المضارع البسيط ?

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓

Will she catch the bus if she leaves now ?

B Wh- question : السؤال باستخدام كلمة استفهام :

Question word + will + subj. + inf. + if + simple present ?
كلمة استفهام + الفاعل + مصدر الفعل + جملة المضارع البسيط ?

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓

How will he get to his school if he gets up late ?

Exercises on Language in use

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB Exercises

- SB** If I a school trip, I will get up very early.
a. having b. have c. has d. had
- SB** If he do his homework, his teacher will be angry.
a. doesn't b. don't c. won't d. am not
- SB** You pass the test if you study hard.
a. were b. are c. could d. will
- SB** If she too much candy, she will feel sick.
a. ate b. eats c. eat d. eating
- SB** If you a wise decision, you will have a better future.
a. made b. making c. make d. makes

El-Moasser Exercises

- You will better if you take some rest.
a. to feel b. feel c. feels d. feeling
- If we hurry, we will miss the train.
a. aren't b. won't c. don't d. weren't
- She go to the party if she is tired.
a. didn't b. don't c. isn't d. won't
- the team train hard, they will win the match.
a. But b. If c. Although d. So
- We won't go to the Pyramids if it too hot.
a. will b. was c. is d. am
- How will Ashraf get to the school if he up late ?
a. get b. gets c. got d. getting

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB Exercises

- SB** If Nawal doesn't get to school early, she'll [skipped] her lessons.
- SB** If you [will eat] less sugar, you will be healthy and strong.
- SB** You'll [won] the competition if you train well.
- SB** If I [studies] hard, I will get good grades.
- SB** If he [not come], we 'll leave without him.

El-Moasser Exercises

6. If it [rain] tomorrow, we'll stay at home
7. When the party finishes, we [would] clean our house.
8. He will be responsible if he [face] his problems.
9. What [would happen] if you study hard ?
10. He will feel left out when he [not behaved] well.
11. Will you catch the bus if you [not leave] now ?

2. Giving advice using "should & shouldn't"

إعطاء النصيحة باستخدام (should & shouldn't) بمعنى ينبغي أن / لا ينبغي أن .

الاستخدام Usage

▶ We use (should / shouldn't) for advice.

▶ نستخدم (should / shouldn't) لإعطاء النصيحة.

التكوين Formation

should

• ينبغي أن «تستخدم للنصح بفعل شيء جيد أو مفيد»

المصدر should + Subject الفاعل

ex.- You **should eat** a lot of fruit and vegetables daily.

shouldn't

• لا ينبغي أن «تستخدم للنصح بعدم فعل شيء غير جيد أو غير مفيد»

المصدر shouldn't + Subject الفاعل

ex.- You **shouldn't eat** too many crisps and sweets.

صيغة الاستفهام Interrogative

A. Yes / No question :

أ. السؤال بـ (هل) :

? المصدر Should + subject الفاعل

ex.- **Should** we eat lots of fish ? * **Yes**, you **should**. * **No**, you **shouldn't**.

B. Wh - question :

ب. السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام :

? المصدر Question word + should + subject الفاعل
كلمة الاستفهام

ex.- What **should** I eat ? - You **should** eat healthy food.

Exercises on Language in use

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB Exercises

- SB** You listen to your teacher before the exam.
a. can't b. shouldn't c. should d. have
- SB** What do to stay healthy?
a. the children should b. he should
c. they should d. should I
- SB** You should to the coach to avoid injury.
a. listening b. listen c. listens d. listened
- SB** You waste your time on computer games.
a. should b. do c. shouldn't d. wasn't

EI-Moasser Exercises

- You should all your friends to your birthday party.
a. inviting b. invites c. invite d. invited
- What he do to make the right decision?
a. was b. should c. do d. is
- They focus on the negative side and give up.
a. will b. doesn't c. are d. shouldn't
- You should your classmates to volunteer.
a. encouraged b. to encourage c. encourage d. encourages
- explain my answer? -Yes, you should.
a. He should b. Should I c. They shouldn't d. Should you
- You should responsible.
a. be b. to be c. being d. been

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB Exercises

- SB** You [shouldn't] eat healthy food to stay strong.
- SB** We [should] be careless when we cross the road.
- SB** You should [going] to bed early before the test.
- SB** [Should You] ask your parents for advice.

EI-Moasser Exercises

- You [shouldn't] wear a jacket. It's cold outside.
- We should [helped] our classmates when they have problems.
- What [he should] do to be fluent in English?

8. Should they stay up late? - No, they [should].
9. She should [depends] on her skills.
10. [Did] children use phones at school ? - No, they shouldn't.

3. Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets :

SB Exercises

- | | |
|--|-------------|
| 1. SB Listen to the coach to avoid injury. | (should) |
| 2. SB If you don't study hard, you will fail. | (won't) |
| 3. SB Don't waste time on computer games. | (shouldn't) |
| 4. SB Eat healthy food to feel strong. | (should) |

EI-Moasser Exercises

- | | |
|--|-------------|
| 5. If you behave well, they won't dislike you. | (like) |
| 6. When you help me, I will be happy. | (If) |
| 7. Never sleep late on school days. | (shouldn't) |
| 8. You should be positive. | (negative) |

4. Correct the mistakes in the following sentences:

SB Exercises

- | | |
|--|-----------|
| 1. SB If Nawal <u>didn't</u> get to school early, she'll skip the first lesson. | (.....) |
| 2. SB We <u>should</u> be careless when we cross the road. | (.....) |
| 3. SB If you eat less sugar, you will <u>being</u> healthy and strong. | (.....) |
| 4. SB What should I <u>did</u> to stay healthy ? | (.....) |

EI-Moasser Exercises

- | | |
|--|-----------|
| 5. When the party finishes, we <u>would</u> clean the house. | (.....) |
| 6. He will be responsible if he <u>face</u> his problems. | (.....) |
| 7. What <u>would</u> happen if you study hard ? | (.....) |
| 8. <u>Did</u> children use phone at school ? - No, they shouldn't. | (.....) |

5. Find the mistakes in the following and correct them:

EI-Moasser Exercises

- | | |
|---|-----------|
| 1. Should they stay up late ? - No, they should. | (.....) |
| 2. He will feel left out when he don't behave well. | (.....) |
| 3. She should depends on her skills. | (.....) |
| 4. Where you help him, he will pass the test. | (.....) |

General Exercises



On Lessons 1 & 2

التقييمات اليومية
والأسبوعية والشهرية
فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- To "....." means to be useful to someone.
a. evaluate b. solve c. face d. benefit
- Always look before you the road.
a. pass b. cross c. walk d. go

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

scored - goals - stayed - test - decision

Yesterday, I had to make a smart choice. My friends wanted to go to the park, but I had a (1) today. I really wanted to go, but I remembered my teacher's advice: "Think about tomorrow, not just today." I (2) home and studied. Today, I passed my test with a high score! I felt proud because I made the right (3) Smart choices are not always easy, but they help us reach our (4) Now, my friends are proud of me, too.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Every day, we make many decisions. Some are small, like choosing clothes. Others are big and can affect our future. Making smart choices is important because they have consequences. If you make a smart choice, it can lead to good results, while a poor choice might cause problems. To make smart choices, you should follow some steps. First, consider all your options. Then, you should think about the possible consequences of each option. Also, try to focus on what is the most important for your future. For example, if you choose to finish your homework before playing, it will benefit your grades. Remember, smart choices help us reach our goals and live happier lives.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- The underlined word "lead to" means ".....".
a. cause b. choose c. finish d. like
- The underlined pronoun "they" refers to ".....".
a. lives b. options
c. possible consequences d. smart choices

b. Answer the following questions.

3. What is the main idea of the text ?

.....

4. Give an example of a big decision you made.

.....

5. What can a poor choice cause?

.....

6. How do smart choices help us ?

.....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- How much water should we every day?
 a. drinks b. drink c. drank d. drinking
- If she late, the teacher will be angry.
 a. will be b. is c. has d. to be

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

- If he [understand] the lesson, he will do his homework.
- She [will] buy new shoes if she doesn't have enough money.
- The students will be surprised [where] they see the smartboard.
- You will [found] a solution when you face the problem.

6 Complete the following dialog :

Gehad asks Rahma for advice.

Gehad : Rahma, I need your advice.

Rahma: Sure. (1)

Gehad : I face a difficult situation, but I can't make a decision .

Rahma: (2) ?

Gehad : Because there are many choices.

Rahma: Okay. Tell me more.

Gehad : My parents encourage me to do a sport I like.

Rahma: What's your favorite sport?

Gehad : (3)

Rahma: Oh, you love them all! You should decide which one you are good at.

Gehad : OK. (4) Thanks.

7 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"An important decision you made"

.....

.....



SB pages 64 & 65

Lesson

3

▶ An Interview with an Athlete

تنويه: الدرس الرابع القصة المقررة في نهاية الكتاب

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|-------------------------|-------------|----------------------------|----------------|
| athlete (n) | لاعب رياضي | coach (n) | مدرب |
| wise (adj) = wise (adj) | حكيم / عاقل | problem-solving | حل المشكلات |
| race (n) | سباق | influence (n) = impact (n) | تأثير |
| injured (adj) | مصاب | recover (ed) (v) | يُشفى / يتعافى |
| training (n) | تدريب | fully (adv) | بشكل كامل |
| tough (adj) | صعب / قاس | risk (n) | مخاطرة |
| foolish (adj) | أحمق | | |



Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

• Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

injured - interview - influence - wise - athletes

1. A person thinks carefully before making a decision.
2. He couldn't play football because of his leg.
3. Many took part in the Olympic Games.
4. Doing sports has a great on young people's personality.

Lesson 3 ▶ SB pages 64 & 65

| | | | |
|--------------------|---------------|--------------------|---------------|
| missing (n) | خسارة / فقدان | rest (ed) (v), (n) | يستريح / راحة |
| resting (n) | راحة | better future | مستقبل أفضل |
| possible (adj) | ممكن / محتمل | mind (ed) (v), (n) | بمانع - عقل |
| accident (n) | حادثة | personal (adj) | شخصي |
| cause (d) (v), (n) | يسبب / سبب | article (n) | مقال |
| post (ed) (v), (n) | ينشر / منشور | source (n) | مصدر |
| letter (n) | خطاب | newspaper (n) | جريدة - صحيفة |

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

| Present المضارع | Past الماضي | P.P. التصريف الثالث |
|------------------|-------------|---------------------|
| give يعطي | gave | given |
| win يفوز | won | won |
| lose يخسر / يفقد | lost | lost |

Vocabulary Study

► Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

| Word الكلمة | Synonym المرادف | Antonym / Opposite المضاد |
|-------------------|-----------------|---------------------------|
| cause سبب | reason | result نتيجة |
| wise عاقل / حكيم | sensible | foolish أحمق |
| responsible مسئول | reliable | careless مهمل |

► Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة ونهاية

| Prefix / Suffix بادئة / نهاية | Function الوظيفة | Examples أمثلة |
|-------------------------------|---------------------|--------------------|
| dis- | تعطي عكس الصفة | dishonest غير أمين |
| -ion | تعطي الاسم في الفعل | decision قرار |

✓ Exercise on Vocabulary Study

◉ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- "Wise" and "sensible" are in meaning.
 - synonyms
 - opposites
 - prefixes
 - suffixes
- "Cause" and "....." have the same meaning.
 - result
 - reason
 - post
 - article
- "Responsible" has the same meaning as ".....".
 - reliable
 - careless
 - lazy
 - angry



General Notes on Reading & Listening

* member - organ

* member

فرد أو عضو من أعضاء أسرة / نادي

▶ Father and mother are the most important **members** in our family.

* organ

عضو من أعضاء الجسم

▶ Kidneys and the heart are important **organs** in our body.

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| Expressions التعبيرات | |
|------------------------|-------------|
| take part in | بشارك في |
| take a risk | يخطر |
| That's tough | هذا أمر صعب |
| Prepositions حروف الجر | |
| on my way | في طريقي |

| | |
|-------------------|------------------|
| get a rest | يستريح |
| make up your mind | اتخذ قرارك |
| face a problem | يواجه مشكلة |
| in the next race | في السباق التالي |

A week is enough

مراجعة المنهج
والتمكن منه في
اسبوع واحد فقط

EL-MOASSER





Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

on Lesson 3 SB page 64

An interview with an athlete

1. Adam is a young **athlete**⁽¹⁾; he had to make a **wise decision**⁽²⁾.
2. Last year, Adam faced a problem before **taking part in**⁽³⁾ an important race.
3. He talked to his **coach**⁽⁴⁾, who had a big influence on him.
4. Adam used **problem-solving skills**⁽⁵⁾ to think about what to do.
5. He thought and considered the **consequences**⁽⁶⁾ of running.
6. He made a wise decision not to run, because the injury could get worse.
7. Instead, he chose to rest and **recover**⁽⁷⁾ fully for the **next race**⁽⁸⁾.
8. Because he recovered, Adam won a gold medal in the next race.
9. The impact of his wise choice was positive.

* Making good decisions

* A wise decision

10. His decision helped him have a better future in sports.
11. Adam now gives advice to young athletes to think carefully before taking a risk.
12. He believes that good decisions can lead to **success**⁽⁹⁾.

| | | | |
|----------------|-----------------|---------------|-----------------------|
| (4) مدرب رياضى | (3) المشاركة فى | (2) قرار حكيم | (1) لعب رياضى |
| (8) سباق | (7) يتعافى | (6) عواقب | (5) مهارات حل المشكلة |
| | | | (9) نجاح |

الجملة السابقة تساعدك على التعامل أو كتابة فقرات إنشائية أخرى:

نصوبه :

https://t.me/G5_Y5

on Lesson 3 SB page 64

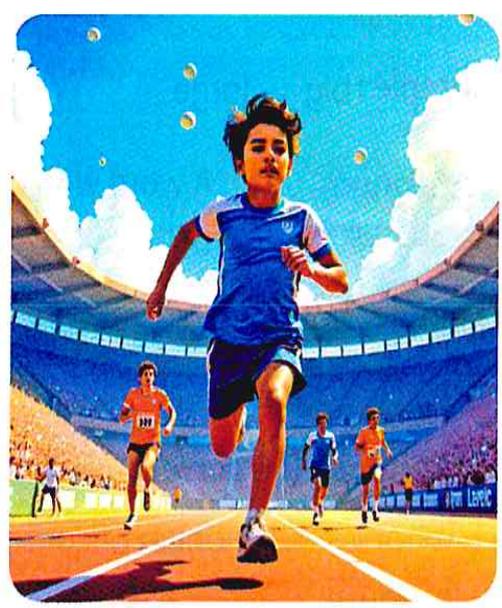
A Wise Decision

Interviewer: Today, we are talking to Adam, a young athlete, about a wise decision he had to make. Adam, could you please tell us about it?

Adam: Last year, I faced a problem before a big race. I injured⁽¹⁾ my foot during training. I had to choose between taking a risk⁽²⁾ and taking part in the race, or resting and missing it.

Interviewer: That's tough. What helped you make up your mind?

Adam: I used problem-solving⁽³⁾ skills. I talked to my coach, who had a big influence⁽⁴⁾ on me. We discussed the possible consequences⁽⁵⁾. I thought, and said "If I run, it will make the injury worse". "And if I rest, I will recover⁽⁶⁾ fully for the next race".



Interviewer: What did you decide?

Adam: I decided I shouldn't run. It was a wise choice. The impact was positive because I recovered, and I won a gold medal in the next race.

Interviewer: What advice can you give to young athletes?

Adam: You should think carefully and ask for advice before taking a risk. If you make a wise decision, you will have a better future in sports.

Choose the correct answer.

- Guess the meaning of vocabulary in context. تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية في النص.
- Learn** 1. The underlined word "decision" means ".....".
 a. risk b. choice c. cause d. question
- Practice** 2. The underlined word "impact" means ".....".
 a. source b. result c. influence d. cause

Word-building skills

Synonyms & Antonyms :

المترادفات والمتضادات :

1 Learn

- **Synonym** → A word with the same meaning. هي عبارة عن كلمة تحمل نفس المعنى.
المرادف

Example : big → large

- **Antonym** → A word with an opposite meaning. هي عبارة عن كلمة تحمل معنى مضاد / عكس المعنى.
المتضاد

Example : hot → cold

2 Practice

⊙ **SB** Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. What is the synonym of consequence ? ""
a. Cause b. Result c. Rule d. Source
2. What's the synonym of "decision" ? ""
a. Choice b. Question c. Risk d. Cause
3. Mr. Nader is a wise man. What is the antonym of "wise" "" ?
a. Foolish b. Sensible c. Lazy d. Clever

Exercise on Vocabulary

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

▶ Key vocabulary

1. We worked on the school project last week, so we came first.
a. bad b. big c. tough d. hard
2. Mr Ayman is great and has a good on me.
a. recipe b. menu c. influence d. problem

3. After the accident, he needed a long time to

- a. ignore b. invent c. cover d. recover

4. Adam is a good athlete. He trained hard to win the

- a. risk b. race c. influence d. invention

SB Exercises

5. **SB** His project has a positive on us.

- a. athlete b. impact c. interview d. pipe

6. **SB** Last year, A dam a problem before a big race.

- a. took b. faced c. made d. recovered

El-Moasser Exercises

7. He is a/an leader who listens to all the team.

- a. injured b. wise c. foolish d. tired

8. The encourages the players to train hard.

- a. visitor b. coach c. painter d. tourist

9. He can't play tennis today because he is

- a. angry b. hungry c. injured d. ready

10. The test was very, but I did well.

- a. soft b. clean c. short d. tough

11. Jumping from a high place is a big

- a. prize b. fun c. risk d. break

12. I had a/an for a part-time job yesterday.

- a. advice b. interview c. picnic d. place

► Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

13. Don't give, you're doing a great job!

- a. on b. up c. about d. of

14. My students wanted to part in the art competition.

- a. create b. make c. take d. have

15. We need to be Everyone's ideas matter.

- a. injured b. fair c. foolish d. tough

General Exercises

On Lesson 3

التقييمات اليومية
والأسبوعية والشهرية
في نهاية الكتاب

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. He needs a medical care to from the injury.
a. decide b. burn c. recover d. join
2. If you make a decision, you will reach your goal.
a. wise b. hard c. difficult d. period

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

award - injury - recover - influence - risk

Last summer, I had to make a big decision. I wanted to join a football club. I asked my father's advice who had a great (1) on my decision. Before I started training, I had a bad (2) I couldn't take a (3) and join that club, but I got rest which helped me to (4) This accident had a great impact on my way of taking decisions.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. If I run, it make the injury worse.
a. would b. will c. could d. did
2. She won't come if you invite her.
a. won't b. aren't c. don't d. doesn't

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. If you make a wise decision, you will [had] a better future.
2. If you [finished] your homework, you'll play video games.
3. When he [feel] sick, he will visit a doctor.
4. They [not be] angry if you fix their machine.

5 Complete the following dialog :

Tarek injured his foot during the football training.

Alaa : What's the matter, Tarek?

Tarek : I (1) my foot during the football training.

Alaa : I'm sorry to hear that! (2) you see a doctor?

Tarek : Yes. He said I shouldn't walk on my foot for 2 weeks to recover.

Alaa : (3) about the next match?

Tarek : I decided to cancel it.

Alaa : That's a (4) decision.

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"A problem you faced"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



SB pages 68 : 71

Lessons

5 & 6

- ▶ Asking for and Giving Advice
- ▶ Team - Project Roundtable

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|-------------------|--------------|------------------|--------------|
| nervous (adj) | متوتر / عصبي | joy (n) | سعادة |
| effectively (adv) | بفاعلية | stressed (adj) | مضغوط |
| emotion (n) | عاطفة | drawings (n) | رسومات |
| emphasis (n) | تأكيد | explore (d) (v) | يستكشف |
| anger (n) | غضب | display (ed) (v) | يعرض / يُظهر |
| | | presentation (n) | عرض تقديمي |

Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

• Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

nervous - receive - stressed - Display - effectively

1. Don't get , take a break.
2. your poster on the classroom wall.
3. My brother was on his first day at school.
4. She studies by making a plan.

Lesson 5 ▶ SB pages 68 & 69

| | | | |
|-----------------|----------------|------------------|-------------|
| blog post (n) | منشور في مدونة | surprise (n) | دهشة - فجأة |
| whether (conj.) | ما إذا / سواء | worried (adj) | قلق |
| receive (d) (v) | يستلم / يتلقى | movie (n) | فيلم |
| floor (n) | أرضية | express (ed) (v) | يعبر |
| waste (d) (v) | يضيع / يسرف | | |

Lesson 6 ▶ SB pages 70 & 71

المفردات اللغوية للمساعدة لأداء الـ "Project"

| | | | |
|------------------|------|-----------------|------------|
| present (ed) (v) | يقدم | candy (n) | حلوى |
| chance (n) | فرصة | good grades (n) | درجات جيدة |
| climbing (n) | تسلق | colorful (adj) | ملون |
| guide (n) | مرشد | wall (n) | حائط |
| mountain (n) | جبل | | |

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

| Present المضارع | Past الماضي | P.P. التصريف الثالث |
|-----------------------|-------------|---------------------|
| spend ينفق/يقضى | spent | spent |
| leave يغادر/يترك | left | left |

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

| | | | |
|------------|------------|-----------------|------------|
| spend time | يقضى وقت | have a problem | لدية مشكلة |
| waste time | يضيع الوقت | make a decision | يتخذ قرارا |

Vocabulary Study

▶ **Synonyms and Antonyms**

مترادفات ومتضادات

| Word الكلمة | Synonym المرادف | Antonym /Opposite المضاد |
|-----------------|-----------------|--------------------------|
| start يبدأ | begin | stop يتوقف |
| easy سهل | simple | difficult صعب |
| clean نظيف | neat | dirty متسخ |

▶ **Prefixes & Suffixes**

مقاطع بادئة ونهاية

| Prefix / Suffix | Function الوظيفة | Examples أمثلة |
|-----------------|---------------------|---|
| -ly | تحويل الصفة الى ظرف | effectively بفعالية |
| -ful | تحويل الاسم الى صفة | careful حريص colorful ملون |

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- To get the adverb from the adjective "effective", we add the suffix ".....".
a. -or b. -ly c. -ing d. -er
- "Stop" is the antonym of ".....".
a. hit b. clean c. begin d. start
- The word "clean" has the same meaning as ".....".
a. stupid b. difficult c. simple d. neat

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| Expressions | | التعبيرات | |
|----------------------|---------------------------|--------------------|----------------------|
| end up stressed | ينتهي به الأمر إلى التوتر | Be careful ! | كن حذرا ! |
| give an example from | يعطى مثالا من | think carefully | يفكر بعناية |
| go to bed | يذهب إلى الفراش | feel sick | يشعر بالمرض |
| study effectively | يذاكر بفاعلية | get good grades | يحصل على درجات عالية |
| Prepositions | | حروف الجر | |
| come up | قادم | a piece of | جزء/قطعة من |
| write down | يدون | easy to | سهلا لـ |
| on time | في الوقت المحدد | end with | ينتهي بـ |
| related to | متعلق بـ | give details about | يعطى تفاصيل عن |

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

- She looked after a long tiring day at work.
a. cheerful b. stressed c. happy d. beautiful
- He couldn't hide his when he lost the race.
a. performance b. joy c. anger d. choice

3. Sleeping early instead of playing online games is a smart
a. color b. choice c. exam d. hobby
4. Dad gave a short about his new project.
a. image b. anger c. presentation d. test
5. The wall of our classroom was full of beautiful
a. drinks b. lessons c. emotions d. drawings

SB Exercises

6. **SB** They want advice on to spend some money or save it.
a. treasure b. whether c. weather d. anger
7. **SB** Who do you usually ask for advice when you a problem?
a. take b. have c. express d. want

EI-Moasser Exercises

8. Adam studied hard and got good
a. trains b. grades c. floors d. difficulties
9. Let's the park in our city together.
a. invent b. climb c. explore d. run
10. Our tour showed us the way to the Pyramids.
a. class b. guide c. trip d. idea
11. I wrote a blog about my daily life.
a. situation b. post c. surprise d. chance

► **Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions**

12. He needs a lot of time to carefully about his decision.
a. write b. think c. give d. end
13. His illness is related the food he ate yesterday.
a. on b. to c. at d. of
14. You may up missing the bus if you don't hurry.
a. stay b. start c. end d. finish
15. We are studying hard. There's a big test coming tomorrow.
a. about b. up c. down d. in
16. There's a big test coming tomorrow.
a. about b. up c. down d. in

A A blog post

1 Learn

- To write a blog post** عند كتابة منشور في مدونة
- 1 Start with a title that gets people interested.
ابدأ بعنوان يجذب انتباه الناس.
 - 2 Give details about the topic.
قدم تفاصيل عن الموضوع.
 - 3 Use images related to the topic.
استخدم صورًا مرتبطة بالموضوع.
 - 4 End with a call action.
اختم بدعوة لاتخاذ إجراء.

2 Practice

- Write a blog post of (80 – 100) words about a problem you faced including some advice.



HOME | ABOUT | DOWNLOAD

.....

.....

.....

.....

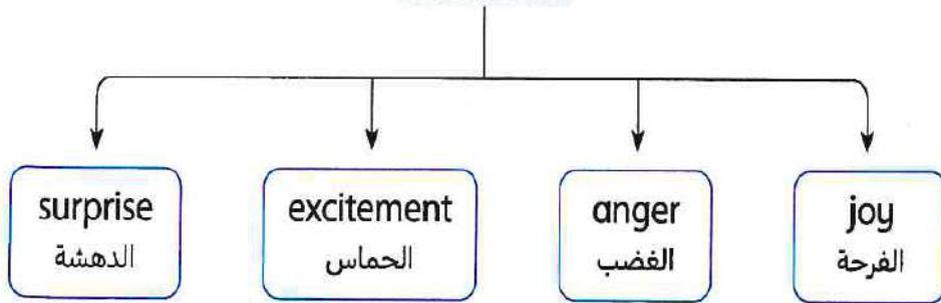
B Punctuation Marks علامات الترقيم

Exclamation point (!) علامة التعجب

1 Learn

- ▶ We use the exclamation point (!) نستخدم علامة التعجب (!)
- at the end of a sentence. ← في نهاية الجملة.
- to express strong emotion or emphasis. ← للتعبير عن شعور قوي أو للتأكيد.

such as



Examples : - That movie was fantastic !
- Be careful! The floor is wet.

2 Practice

• Add the correct punctuation comma (,), period (.), question mark (?) or exclamation point (!) to the following sentences.

1. **SB** I like pizza ice cream and cake

.....

2. **SB** Where is my pencil

.....

3. **SB** Wow that's a big dog

.....

4. I feel excited it's my birthday

.....

5. It's a wonderful view

.....

6. **SB** My brother has two cats

.....

7. **SB** Do you like to play football

.....

General Exercises

On Lessons 5 & 6

التقييمات اليومية
والأسبوعية والشهرية
في نهاية الكتاب

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. If you can't make a decision, ask for
a. work b. advice c. options d. hobbies
2. She was when she lost her bag.
a. excited b. responsible c. comfortable d. nervous

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

recover - learn - wise - choices - carefully

Taking a risk can sometimes lead to unexpected results. If you don't think (1), your actions might harm. A smart person evaluates the effect of their (2) Being (3) means learning from mistakes and knowing how to (4) from them.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. If you try fish soup, you will it.
a. loving b. loves c. love d. loved
2. She'll feel stressed when she her school project to last minute.
a. leaves b. leaving c. to leave d. leave

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. You [shouldn't] be polite and kind.
2. If he [not organize] his time, he'll waste it.
3. I [go] on vacation if I save a lot of money.
4. If they are responsible, they [not/will] play all the time.

5 Complete the following dialog :

Roqia discusses a problem with her father.

Father : Roqia, you spend a lot of time playing video games.

Roqia : I'm sorry, dad. I have much (1) time.

Father : You (2) waste your free time on video games.

Roqia : (3) should I do?

Father : You can explore new hobbies.

Roqia : Can you (4) me an example?

Father : Yes. What about playing football, chess or reading a book ?

Roqia : I think I'll try chess first.

6 Write a blog post of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"A smart choice you made"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Review



on unit 4

https://t.me/G5_Y5

| Vocabulary | Language | Speaking |
|---|---|---|
| Lessons 1 & 2 responsible مسئول decision قرار behave يتصرف promise وعد / يعد careless مهمل negative سلبى classmate زميل فصل consequences عواقب evaluate يقيم Lesson 3 injury إصابة athlete لاعب رياضى injured مصاب impact تأثير influence تأثير recover يتعافى / يشفى Lessons 5 & 6 nervous عصبى / متوتر stressed مضغوط display عرض worried قلق effectively بفاعلية performance عرض - أداء choice اختيار | <p>1. The first conditional "if" الحالة الشرطية الأولى "if"</p> <p>① present tense زمن المضارع البسيط If + simple subject + will [I] + inf. will not [won't]</p> <p>ex.- If you study hard, you will pass the exam.</p> <p>② Will + subj. + inf. + if + present simple ?</p> <p>ex.- Will he catch the train if he leaves now?</p> <p>③ Q: w + will + subj + inf. + if + present simple ? ex.- What will he pass if he studies hard ?</p> <p>2. Should & Shouldn't for giving advice. استخدام [should] و [shouldn't] لإعطاء النصيحة.</p> <p>Should ينبغى أن تستخدم للنصح بفعل شئ جيد أو مفيد Subject + the fاعل + should + inf. المصدر .</p> <p>ex.- You should eat a lot of fruits every day. Shouldn't لا ينبغى أن [تستخدم للنصح بعدم فعل شئ غير جيد أو مفيد] Subject + shouldn't + inf. المصدر .</p> <p>ex.- You shouldn't waste your time on playing video games.</p> | <p>Speaking</p> <p>Talking about personal daily choices الحديث عن الاختيارات الشخصية اليومية A: Do you think you often make smart choices ? B: Yes, I think so. A: What do you usually have to choose daily ? B: I usually have to choose my study time.</p> |

Skills

1 Reading Comprehension

Guessing the meaning

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مهارة [تخمين المعنى في النص].

اقرأ وقيم بالإجابة.

Read the following and answer the questions :

Last year, I made a smart choice to start waking up early. I used to go to bed late and wake up late. I always felt tired and rushed in the morning, so I decided to change my routine. I set my alarm for 6:00 am every day. At first, it was hard to get out of bed. However, after a few days, it got easier. Now, I had more time in the morning to relax. I could enjoy breakfast without rushing. I also started going for a walk. The fresh air helped me feel refreshed. I felt more active and happy. My schoolwork improved too. Waking up early gave me a fresh start each day. It was a small but smart choice that truly helped me a lot.

- The underlined word "improved" means ".....".
- a. got worse
b. got better
c. failed
d. damaged

التحدى قد تجد صعوبة في معنى مفردة في النص.

مفتاح الحل عند قراءة الفقرة حول تحديد الحدث أو الشخص أو المكان الذي تشير إليه الكلمة أو الضمير.

2

Speaking

Making a smart choice

يختبر سؤال المحادثة [dialog] قدرتك للتعبير عن مواقف معينة.

اقرأ وقيم بالإجابة.

Complete the following dialog :

Basant and Salma are talking about a smart choice.

Basant: Hi Salma! Have you made a smart choice before?

Salma : Yes, I (1)

Basant: (2) was it about?

Salma : It was about studying for my test.

Basant: Was it a (3) choice to make?

Salma : Yes, it was difficult.

Basant: Did you feel better after studying?

Salma : Yes, I felt more (4) and ready for the test.

التحدى تريد السؤال عن [اختبار ذكي] وتجد صعوبة في تكوين أسئلة والرد عليها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من الأسئلة والردود عن الموضوع.

General Exercises on unit 4

التقييمات اليومية
والأسبوعية والشهرية
فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions :

استمع إلى معلمك واجب عن الاسئلة. [نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب]

1. What was Youssef excited about ?

.....

2. When did Youssef plan the party ?

.....

3. How many friends did Youssef invite ?

.....

4. Who asked to join the party ?

.....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A is a choice you can make.

a. mistake b. decision c. situation d. competition

2. Don't, you can win the race.

a. create b. lead c. give up d. improve

3. If you wake up early, you'll miss the train.

a. won't b. didn't c. don't d. aren't

4. You should on time.

a. arrived b. arrive c. arriving d. to arrive

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

polite - behave - responsible - negative - hobbies

Close friends often help each other and show respect. It's important to (1) well at school and at home. Being (2) means you take care of your actions. A (3) action can hurt your friendships. Always try to be (4) when talking to others.

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Laila was angry when she read a **rude** comment about her photo. She started typing a bad reply but stopped. She thought, "What will happen if **I** post this?" Laila took a break, then wrote a polite message asking the person to be respectful. To her surprise, they apologized. Laila felt proud that she chose kindness over anger.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Laila felt when she chose kindness.
 a. nervous b. afraid c. proud d. rejected
- The opposite of the underlined word "rude" is ".....".
 a. confident b. careless c. negative d. polite

B. Answer the following questions :

3. What do you think of Laila's decision to solve the problem ?

.....

4. Give a suitable title to the text.

.....

5. What does the underlined pronoun "I" refer to?

.....

6. Why was Laila angry ?

.....

5 Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets :

1. Eat healthy food to feel strong. (should)

.....

2. If you arrive early, you will catch the bus. (won't)

.....

6 Find the mistakes in the following and correct them :

1. If you study hard, you won't succeed. (.....)

2. If you eat less sugar, you will being healthy. (.....)

3. You should waste your time. (.....)

4. What should I did to be strong ? (.....)

7 Complete the following dialog :

Asser invites Basel to his birthday party.

Asser : Hello, Basel. You're invited to my birthday party.

Basel : Oh! (1)

Asser : Thank you.

Basel : (2) ?

Asser : It is on Friday at 7 pm.

Basel : (3) ?

Unit FIVE

Future Dreams



SB pages 73 : 86

Learning outcomes :

• Reading :

- Identify the main idea and at least two supporting details in different text types
- Use context clues to understand new words related to jobs and future planning

• Listening :

- Identify the main idea in a text about future plans and careers
- Identify at least two supporting details in a text about future plans and careers

• Speaking :

- Talk about personal future goals and describe steps to achieve them using "going to"
- Share personal dreams and give reasons in a short presentation or discussion

• Language :

- Recognize and explain future-tense structures with "going to" in context

• Writing :

- Write a structured review about a dream job and steps to achieve it



SB pages 74 - 77

Lessons

1 & 2

- ▶ Discover Your Future !
- ▶ An interview with a scientist

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|--------------------|--------------------------------|------------------|---------------------|
| advertisement (n) | إعلان | develop (ed) (v) | يطوّر |
| effort (n) | مجهود | support (ed) (v) | بدعم / يساند |
| future career path | مسار الحياة المهنية المستقبلية | passion (n) | شغف / عاطفه تجاه شئ |
| astronauts (n) | رواد فضاء | profession (n) | مهنة / وظيفة |
| ambition (n) | طموح | path (n) | مسار / ممر |
| opportunities (n) | فرص | graduate (d) (v) | يتخرج |
| reality (n) | حقيقة / واقع | designer (n) | مصمم |
| mention (ed) (v) | يذكر | chemistry (n) | الكيمياء |
| talent (n) | موهبة | geology (n) | علم الجيولوجيا |



Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

ambition - talent - advertisements - path - gift

1. We can see interesting on TV.
2. Ali's is to be a famous actor.
3. They followed the to the river in the forest.
4. Mohamed Salah has a great in football.

Lesson 1 ▶ SB pages 74 & 75

| | | | |
|-------------------|------------|--------------------|----------------|
| discover (ed) (v) | يكتشف | dream (ed) (v),(n) | يحلم / حلم |
| gift (n) | هدية | rocks (n) | صخور |
| skill (n) | مهارة | career workshop | ورشة عمل مهنية |
| step (n) | خطوة | contact (ed) (n) | يتصل / يتواصل |
| special (adj) | خاص / مميز | readers (n) | قراء |

| | | | |
|------------------|--------------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| career (n) | حياة مهنية / مهنة / حرفة | wait (ed) (v) | ينتظر |
| successful (adj) | ناجح | classmates (n) | زملاء فصل |
| skillful (adj) | ماهر | carefully (adv) | بعناية / بحذر |
| unsure (adj) | غير متأكد | job history | التاريخ الوظيفي |

Lesson 2 ▶ SB pages 76 & 77

| | | | |
|-----------------|----------------------------|------------------|--------------|
| hero | بطل | free (adj) | مجاني |
| university (n) | جامعة | try hard | يحاول جاهداً |
| United States | الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية | land (ed) (v) | يهبط |
| select (ed) (v) | يختار | program (n) | برنامج |
| tonight (adv) | الليلة | collect (ed) (v) | يجمع |
| real (adj) | حقيقي | closer (adv) | أقرب |

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

| Present المضارع | Past الماضي | P.P. التصريف الثالث |
|-----------------|-------------|---------------------|
| meet يقابل | met | met |
| become يُصبح | became | become |
| find يجد | found | found |

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

| | | |
|---------------|-------------------------------|-------|
| talent | natural skill or ability | موهبة |
| effort | trying hard to do something | جهد |
| goal | something you want to achieve | هدف |

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

| | | | |
|-----------------------|-------------|----------------------------|------------|
| bright future | مستقبل مشرق | find a job | يجد وظيفة |
| develop skills | يطور مهارات | find an ambition | يكتشف طموح |
| work hard | يعمل بجد | take an opportunity | يغتني فرصة |

Vocabulary Study

| Word الكلمة | Synonym المرادف | Antonym / Opposite المضاد |
|---------------------------|-------------------|-----------------------------------|
| bored متضجر (شاعر بالملل) | disappointed | interested / excited مهتم / متحمس |
| skilful ماهر | clever / talented | unskilful غير ماهر |
| unsure غير متأكد | uncertain | certain / sure متأكد |
| true حقيقي | real | false زائف |
| remember يتذكر | keep in mind | forget ينسى |

► Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة ونهاية

| Prefix / Suffix | Function الوظيفة | Examples أمثلة |
|-----------------|-------------------------|----------------------|
| -ed | تحول الفعل إلى صفة | disappointed مُحبَّب |
| -er | تحول الفعل إلى اسم فاعل | designer مُصمم |
| -ly | تحويل الصفة لظرف | carefully بعناية |
| un- | يعطى عكس المعنى | unsure غير متأكد |

✓ Exercise on Vocabulary Study

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- The words "interested" and "bored" are
 a. synonyms b. antonyms c. prefixes d. suffixes
- To form the adjective from the verb "disappoint", we add the suffix ".....".
 a. -er b. -ed c. -ly d. -ment
- "....." and "Real" have the same meaning.
 a. Lazy b. Bored c. True d. Helpful
- The suffix "-er" changes the verb "design" into a/an ".....".
 a. adjective b. noun c. adverb d. verb



General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 Graduate $\begin{cases} (v) & \text{يتخرج} \\ (n) & \text{خريج} \end{cases}$

- ▶ Mr. Ahmed **graduated** from Zagazig University.
- ▶ The manager is going to meet the new **graduates**.

2 feel - fall - fail - fill

* **feel - felt - felt**

- ▶ I **feel** happy today.

يشعر

* **fall - fell - fallen**

- ▶ The leaves **fall** from trees in autumn.

يسقط / يقع

* **fail - ed - ed**

- ▶ The lazy student will **fail** the exam.

يفشل

* **fill - ed - ed**

- ▶ Can you **fill** this bottle with water ?

يملأ

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

| Expressions التعبيرات | | | |
|------------------------|----------------|---------------------|-------------------|
| achieve their goals | يحققوا أهدافهم | participate in | يشارك في |
| whatever your plan | مهما كانت خطتك | reach your goal | تصل لهدفك |
| a rule to follow | قاعدة مُتبعة | become your reality | يصبح واقعك |
| world of opportunities | عالم من الفرص | still unsure | لا يزال غير متأكد |
| Prepositions حروف الجر | | | |
| full of | ملىء بـ | according to | وفقاً لـ |
| dream of | يحلم بـ | for dinner | على وجبة العشاء |
| the purpose of | الغرض من | in the future | في المستقبل |

Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

on Lesson 1 SB page 74

Discover your future!

1. If you dream of a **bright future**⁽¹⁾, you should choose your **dream profession**⁽²⁾ today.
2. You can find a job that makes you excited every day.
3. At Future Career Path, you can find your **ambition**⁽³⁾ and **develop**⁽⁴⁾ your skills.
4. You can discover a new world full of **opportunities**⁽⁵⁾.
5. Some people want to become doctors, while others want to be **designers**⁽⁶⁾ or teachers.
6. You'll find your path if you work hard and believe in yourself.
7. You'll decide to **explore**⁽⁷⁾ your options.
8. If you join this workshop, you'll discover your passion.
9. Your dream profession will become your **reality**⁽⁸⁾.

| | | |
|------------|------------------|-----------------|
| طموح (3) | وظيفة / مهنة (2) | مستقبل باهر (1) |
| مصممين (6) | فرص (5) | يطور (4) |
| | حقيقة / واقع (8) | يستكشف (7) |

* Your dream job

* Discover your dream profession

Malek's social media post

1. Malek dreams to become a **graphic designer**⁽¹⁾.
2. He enjoys drawing using technology.
3. He joined a free art program in his city.
4. Malek's teacher told him that he had a real **talent**⁽²⁾.
5. Malek set a new goal to design his own website.
6. Every step brings him closer to his future.

An interview⁽³⁾ with Dr. Farouk El-Baz

1. Dr. Farouq El-Baz is a famous scientist.
2. He studied **geology**⁽⁴⁾ and **chemistry**⁽⁵⁾ at Ain Shams University.
3. He worked with NASA during the Apollo **missions**⁽⁶⁾.
4. He helped **astronauts**⁽⁷⁾ select safe landing sites on the Moon.
5. He also trained them to read maps and collect rocks.

| | | |
|------------------|--------------|----------------|
| مقابلة شخصية (3) | موهبة (2) | مصمم (1) |
| بعثات (6) | الكيمياء (5) | الجيولوجيا (4) |
| | | رواد فضاء (7) |

الجميل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل أو كتابة فقرات إنشائية أخرى:

تنويه :

* A famous scientist

1. Reading and Listening

Reading

Pop Quiz
تدرب على 10 من
قطع الفهم
ونصوص الاستماع

https://t.me/G5_Y5

on Lesson 1 SB page 74

Read the advertisement⁽¹⁾ below. What is it about ?

Discover Your Future:
Choose Your Dream Profession⁽²⁾ Today

Are you dreaming of a bright future ?

Do you hope to find a job that makes you excited every day?

At Future Career Path, we help you find your **ambition**⁽³⁾ and **develop**⁽⁴⁾ every skill you need to succeed. You are going to discover a whole new world of **opportunities**⁽⁵⁾ with us!

Some want to become doctors, while others want to be **designers**⁽⁶⁾ or teachers. Whatever your plan is, we are here to support you. You will find your **path**⁽⁷⁾ if you work hard and believe in yourself.

Maybe you are still unsure, but you will decide today to explore your options.

If you join our workshop, you will discover your **passion**⁽⁸⁾. We believe you can create the future you want!

Don't wait!!! Take this opportunity now. Your dream profession will become your reality if you start planning today.

Contact us now. Your future starts right now, right here!



(1) إعلان (2) مهنة / وظيفة (3) طموح (4) يُطور (5) فرص (6) مصممين (7) ممر (8) شغف / اهتمام


Listening

• on Lesson 2 SB page 76



HOME | ABOUT | DOWNLOAD

Malek's social media post

My dream is to become a **graphic designer**⁽¹⁾. I enjoy drawing and using technology. Last summer, I joined a free art program in my city. It was hard work, but I learned a lot. My teacher said I have a real **talent**⁽²⁾, and that gave me more **confidence**⁽³⁾. I set a new **goal**⁽⁴⁾: to design my own website. I know I'll need time, effort, and **support**⁽⁵⁾ from others. But I'm excited because every **step**⁽⁶⁾, I take brings me closer to my future.

(1) مصمم جرافيك (2) موهبة (3) ثقة بالنفس (4) هدف (5) دعم (6) خطوة

• on Lesson 2 SB page 76

An interview with a scientist

Student : Hello, Dr. Farouq El-Baz! I'm very happy to meet you.

Dr. El-Baz : Hello! I'm happy to meet you, too. Do you like science?

Student : Yes, I do! I want to learn more about your work. What did you study?

Dr. El-Baz : I studied **geology**⁽¹⁾ and **chemistry**⁽²⁾ at Ain Shams University in Egypt. Then I got my PhD in Geology in the United States.

Student : Wow! That's **amazing**⁽³⁾. How did you help the NASA scientists?

Dr. El-Baz : I worked with NASA during the Apollo missions. I helped the **astronauts**⁽⁴⁾ select safe landing sites on the Moon. I also trained them to read maps and collect **rocks**⁽⁵⁾.

Student : That's great! If you want to advise students who wish to be **successful**⁽⁶⁾ scientists, what will you say?

Dr. El-Baz : You should study science, work hard, never give up, and always try to help your country and the world.

Student : Thank you, Dr. El-Baz! You are a true hero in science.

Dr. El-Baz : Thank you! And remember, you can be a hero too!

(1) الجيولوجيا

(2) الكيمياء

(3) مدهش

(4) رواد الفضاء

(5) صخور

(6) ناجح

Exercise on Vocabulary

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

► Key vocabulary

- Manal's is to become an engineer when she grows up.
a. support b. ambition c. gift d. talent
- We need to each other in the team to succeed.
a. read b. neglect c. report d. support
- This art work shows your in art.
a. talent b. writing c. asking d. science
- You should follow a clear future career to become a businessman.
a. road b. path c. street d. station

SB Exercises

- SB** He studied chemistry at Ain Shams
a. University b. Square c. School d. Playground
- SB** Don't wait. Take this now.
a. game b. test c. opportunity d. exam
- SB** It is good to your skills.
a. damage b. hurt c. throw d. develop

El-Moasser Exercises

- You should have in yourself.
a. confidence b. doubt c. unsure d. worry
- I a new goal to be a web designer.
a. sit b. set c. sat d. sitting
- Don't people late at night.
a. laugh b. join c. protect d. contact
- Karim shows great for tennis.
a. career b. mission c. passion d. gift

Definitions

- " " means trying hard to do something.
a. Effort b. Talent c. Develop d. Opportunity
- Your is something you want to achieve.
a. tool b. goal c. gift d. wall

▶ Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. A tree down and blocked the road.

a. felt

b. failed

c. filled

d. fell

15. Dina, what will you have dinner ?

a. on

b. at

c. for

d. to

مهارة التحدث

2. Speaking

▶ Asking and answering questions about your dream goal :

توجيه الأسئلة والرد عليها عن الهدف الذي تتمنى تحقيقه :

Questions ?

Answers ✓

1. Are you dreaming of a bright future ?

هل تحلم بمستقبل مشرق ؟

- Yes, I really want to find a job that makes me happy every day.

نعم، أريد حقًا أن أجد وظيفة تجعلني سعيدًا كل يوم.

2. At Future Career Path, we can help you.

What's your dream goal ?

في مسار المستقبل الوظيفي يمكننا مساعدتك ما هو حلمك الذي تهدف لتحقيقه ؟

- Really ? I'm not sure what I want to be yet.

حقًا ؟ لست متأكدًا بعد ماذا أريد أن أكون.

3. That's Ok! We'll help you explore your goal.

لا بأس! سنساعدك على اكتشاف هدفك.

- That's great !

هذا عظيم!

4. Yes, we'll discover your passion. When will you start ?

نعم. سوف نكتشف شغفك، ومتى سوف تبدأ ؟

- I'll contact you today.

سأتواصل معكم اليوم.

▶ Asking and answering questions about dream jobs for the future :

توجيه الأسئلة والرد عليها :

Questions ?

Answers ✓

1. What job do you want in the future ?

ما الوظيفة التي ترغب بها في المستقبل ؟

- My dream is to become a graphic designer.

حلمي هو أن أصبح مصمم جرافيك.

2. Wonderful ! What do you enjoy doing ?

رائع ! ما الذي تستمتع بفعلة ؟

- I enjoy drawing and using technology.

استمتع بالرسم وباستخدام التكنولوجيا.

3. Have you done anything to improve your skill ?

هل قمت بفعل شيء لتحسين مهاراتك ؟

- Yes, I joined a free art program in my city last summer.

نعم، انضمت إلى برنامج فني مجاني في مدرستي الصيف الماضي.

4. You're talented. What's your next step ?

أنت موهوب. ما هي خطوتك التالية ؟

- I set a new goal to design my own website.

وضعت هدفًا جديدًا وهو تصميم موقع إلكتروني خاص.

III Language in use

Future with "(be) going to" : "[(be) going to]" استخدام المستقبل

Formation التكوين

1 Affirmative statement الجملة الخبرية المثبتة

| | | | | | |
|------------------------------|---|-----|---|----------|-------------------|
| I | → | am | | | |
| He / She / It / اسم مفرد | → | is | + | going to | + inf. مصدر الفعل |
| You / We / They / اسم جمع | → | are | | | |

ex. I'm going to help my father.

- He is going to join the team.

2 Negative statement الجملة الخبرية المنفية

| | | | | | | | | | |
|----------------|---|-----------------|---|-----------|---|-------------|---|-----------------|--------|
| Subject الفاعل | + | am is are | + | not [n't] | + | going to | + | inf. مصدر الفعل |? |
|----------------|---|-----------------|---|-----------|---|-------------|---|-----------------|--------|

ex. - They aren't going to visit Alexandria next week.

- I'm not going to eat fish.

- He isn't going to throw away his old phone.

3 Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

A Yes / No question : (أ) السؤال بـ "هل" :

| | | | | | | | | |
|-----------------|---|-------------------|---|----------|---|-----------------|---|--------|
| Am Is Are | + | subject الفاعل | + | going to | + | inf. مصدر الفعل | + |? |
|-----------------|---|-------------------|---|----------|---|-----------------|---|--------|

ex. * Are they going to win the race ?

- Yes, they are.

- No, they aren't.

B Wh - question : السؤال باستخدام كلمة استفهام :

Question word + am is are + subject + going to + inf. +?
 كلمة استفهام + الفاعل + مصدر الفعل

ex. How is she going to help the environment ?

Usage الاستخدام

▶ We use "(be) + going to + inf." to express : * نستخدم "(be) + going to + inf." لتعبر عن :

1 Future plans

١. لخطط المسبقة التي تم التخطيط لها بالفعل.

ex. - I'm going to decorate my house . = I have planned to decorate my house.

- We are going to buy a car next month.

2 Future intentions

٢. وايا يعتزم الشخص القيام بها.

ex. - I'm going to help my friend Sara prepare the food for the party.

ex. - I'm going to watch a movie tonight.

3 Prediction with evidence

٣. التنبؤ بدليل .

ex. - It's cloudy . It's going to rain . **ex.** - He drives too fast . He is going to crash.

↓
evidence
[دليل]

↓
evidence
[دليل]

Exercises on Language in use

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB Exercises

1. **SB** Are you going football?

a. playing

b. plays

c. play

d. to play

2. **SB** We going to visit the zoo next week.

a. will

b. have

c. are

d. was

3. **SB** I watch a movie tonight.

a. to going

b. am going

c. going

d. am going to

4. Look at the dark clouds! It's rain.

- a. will b. going to c. have d. can

5. You are going to a whole new world.

- a. explores b. explored c. explore d. exploring

El-Moasser Exercises

6. I am going to engineering.

- a. studying b. study c. studied d. studies

7. Are you meet your friends tonight?

- a. can b. will c. going to d. do

8. What going to do next weekend?

- a. are you b. you are c. do you d. you do

9. He going to clean his bedroom.

- a. won't b. isn't c. doesn't d. don't

10. I have a plan to finish the task. I'm going in the summer vacation.

- a. work b. works c. worked d. to work

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB Exercises

1. **SB** I [going] visit my uncle this weekend.

2. **SB** Mom is going [bake] delicious cookies for us.

3. **SB** The twins [going] participate in the art competition.

4. **SB** They [not] going to do their homework.

5. **SB** Hana is [travel] to Paris next month.

El-Moasser Exercises

6. It's going to [being] stormy today. The wind is strong.

7. We are going [having] dinner at home.

8. Where [you are] going to spend the weekend?

9. [Does] she going to join the tennis team?

10. Nader [going] to buy a new house by the sea.

3. Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets :

SB Exercises

1. **SB** I intend to visit my grandmother.
2. **SB** They plan to study medicine.
3. **SB** They are going to travel to Luxor.
4. **SB** Basant is going to sleep early.

- (going to)
(are going)
(Are)
(not)

El-Moasser Exercises

5. I decided to buy a new tablet.
6. She is going to cook lunch.
7. They intend to volunteer and help others.
8. Do you plan to fix the car?

- (going to)
(Is)
(going)
(Are)

4. Correct the mistakes in the following sentences :

SB Exercises

1. **SB** He going to watch a movie.
2. **SB** I am going visit my friend.
3. **SB** Are you going to plays football?
4. **SB** They not going to do their homework.

- (.....)
(.....)
(.....)
(.....)

El-Moasser Exercises

5. We are going having dinner at home.
6. Where you are going to spend the weekend ?
7. Does she going to join the tennis team ?
8. Nader going to buy a new house by the sea.

- (.....)
(.....)
(.....)
(.....)

5. Find the mistakes in the following and correct them :

SB Exercises

1. **SB** We is going to visit the zoo.
2. **SB** I am going visit my uncle this weekend.
3. **SB** Mom going to bake delicious cookies for us.
4. **SB** Hana is travelling to Paris next month. That's her plan.

- (.....)
(.....)
(.....)
(.....)

El-Moasser Exercises

1. I am going eat some snacks.
2. She going to play a game.
3. Are you going to swims alone ?
4. We are go to visit the Pyramids.

- (.....)
(.....)
(.....)
(.....)

General Exercises



On Lessons 1 & 2

التقييمات اليومية
والأسبوعية والشهرية
فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب]

1. Malek's dream is to be a/an
a. doctor b. graphic designer c. teacher d. engineer
2. He enjoys and using technology.
a. teaching b. helping people c. drawing d. experiments
3. He joined a free art program in his
a. house b. village c. school d. city
4. His teacher said he had a real
a. dream b. problem c. talent d. friends

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I learned a lot in the art
a. skill b. workshop c. dream d. plan
2. A is something you want to achieve.
a. path b. talent c. goal d. skill

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Mona isn't sure what she wants to do after finishing school. She enjoys art and is also good at solving math problems. Her teacher suggested she should take an online career quiz. Mona answered questions about her hobbies, skills, and interests. The result showed she might enjoy being an architect, a career that connects creativity and design with math. Mona is now excited to learn about her future career.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The opposite of the underlined word "result" is "....." .
a. skill b. consequence c. cause d. option
2. Mona's teacher suggested she take an online quiz to know her future
a. career b. age c. friends d. problems

b. Answer the following questions.

3. What does the underlined pronoun "Her" refer to ?
.....

4. What does Mona enjoy doing?

.....

5. What is the main idea of the text ?

.....

6. Do you think Mona can be a math teacher ? Why ?

.....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. **SB** Hana is going the basketball team.

a. to join b. joined c. joins d. joining

2. We plant trees in our street. It's our plan.

a. will b. are going c. can d. have

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Are you going to [**watching**] the match at home?

2. **SB** We [**be**] going to go to the club in the evening.

3. What sport are you going [**play**] ?

4. No, she [**not going**] to win. She's running slowly !

6 Complete the following dialog :

Rana and Nada are talking about their future dreams.

Rana : What are your future goals, Nada?

Nada : My future (1) are finishing school and studying medicine.

Rana : To study medicine ! Great. ?

Nada : Volunteering in the community is my second future goal.

What about (2) ?

Rana : I don't know! (3)

Nada : But, everyone should have a dream.

Rana : (4) ?

Nada : You should think of your favorite things and your talents.

7 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

مجاوب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Your future goal"

.....

.....



SB pages 78 & 79

Lesson

3

► My plan for a future career

تنويه: الدرس الرابع القصة المقررة في نهاية الكتاب

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|--------------------|----------------|-------------------|---------------|
| career plan | خطة مهنية | regularly (adv) | بانتظام |
| match (ed) (v) | يلائم / يُناسب | education (n) | تعليم |
| medicine (n) | الطب | training (n) | تدريب |
| natural (adj) | طبيعي | engineering (n) | هندسة |
| university (n) | جامعة | communication (n) | تواصل / اتصال |
| wish (ed) (v), (n) | يتمنى / أمنية | achieve (d) (v) | يحقق - ينجز |



Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

patients - success - skills - wish - University

1. I I could be a pilot in the future.
2. Reading and writing are important You should improve them.
3. My brother graduated from Cairo in 2006.

Lesson 3 ► SB pages 78 & 79

| | | | |
|---------------|-----------------|------------------|---------------|
| ability (n) | قدرة | practice (d) (v) | يمارس / يتدرب |
| save (d) (v) | يوفر / يدخر | language (n) | لغة |
| feel better | يشعر بتحسن | teamwork (n) | عمل جماعي |
| higher study | الدراسات العليا | painting (n) | الرسم |
| smile (d) (v) | يبتسم | hospital (n) | مستشفى |

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

| Present المضارع | Past الماضي | P.P. التصريف الثالث |
|-----------------|-------------|---------------------|
| go يذهب | went | gone |
| choose يختار | chose | chosen |
| feel يشعر | felt | felt |

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

| | | |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------|---------|
| education | learning at school or university | التعليم |
| success | to reach something you worked for | النجاح |
| talent | a natural ability you have | موهبة |
| wish | a strong hope for something | أمنية |
| university | a place for higher study | جامعة |

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

| | | | |
|----------------|-------------|--------------|--------------|
| come true | يتحقق | reach goals | يصل لأهدافه |
| matches talent | يلانم موهبة | reach dreams | يحقق الاحلام |

Vocabulary Study

► Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

| Word الكلمة | Synonym المرادف | Antonym /Opposite المضاد |
|--------------|-----------------|--------------------------|
| perfect مثال | ideal | imperfect غير مثال |
| success نجاح | achievement | failure فشل |

► Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة ونهاية

| Prefix / Suffix | Function الوظيفة | Examples أمثلة |
|-----------------|--------------------|-------------------------|
| -ing | تحول الفعل لاسم | training تدريب |
| -ly | تحول الصفة إلى ظرف | regularly بطريقة منتظمة |
| -ion | تحول الفعل لاسم | education التعليم |
| -al | تحول الاسم لصفة | natural طبيعي |

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- We can get the noun from the verb "educate" by adding the suffix ".....".
a. -ment b. -ness c. -ful d. -ion
- The words "success" and "....." have the same meaning.
a. damage b. collect c. achievement d. discourage
- The suffix "-ly" changes the adjective "regular" into a / an ".....".
a. preposition b. verb c. adverb d. noun
- The word "fix" and "destroy" are
a. synonyms b. antonyms c. adjectives d. adverbs



General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 make + (obj.) $\begin{cases} \rightarrow + (adj.) \\ \rightarrow + (inf.) \end{cases}$

- I wish to find the profession that **makes me happy**.
- Ahmed **makes me laugh**.

يجعل

2 miss - lose

* miss \Rightarrow (v)

- I **miss** my uncle so much.

يفتقد شخص / يُخطئ المرمى / يفوته وسيلة مواصلات

* lose \Rightarrow (v) lose - lost - lost

- I **lost** my mobile.
- We **lost** the game.

يفقد شيء / يخسر

3 $(subj. + \frac{can / can't}{could / couldn't} + inf.)$ جملة كاملة + **so that** + جملة كاملة

- SB** I want to study hard **so that I can reach** my dream.



Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

on Lesson 3 SB page 78

Omar's future dream

- Omar who is 11 years old, thinks about his future career.
- He wishes to find a profession that matches his talent⁽¹⁾.
- He loves helping people, so he wants to become a doctor one day.
- He also needs a good education⁽²⁾ to reach his dreams.
- Omar needs a good training⁽³⁾ in hospitals to get the skills he needed for this profession.
- Omar's biggest dream⁽⁴⁾ is to help people feel better and make them smile.

7. He works hard and studies well to become a good doctor.

8. Omar believes⁽⁵⁾ that if he studies well and practices alot, he'll become a good doctor.

| | | |
|-----------|-----------------|-----------|
| (1) موهبة | (2) تعليم | (3) تدريب |
| (4) حلم | (5) يؤمن - يصدق | |

الجملة السابقة تساعدك على التعامل أو كتابة فقرات إنشائية أخرى:

* How to achieve your dreams

* Your plan for a future career

نظيره :

1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz

تدرب على 10 من
قطع الفهم
ونصوص الاستماع

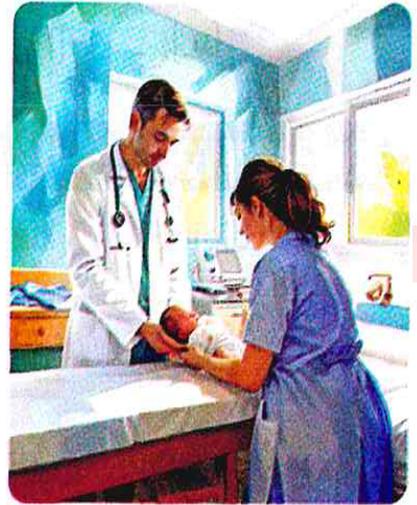
Reading

• on Lesson 3 SB page 78

Read the text. What is Omar's biggest dream?

My Future Dreams⁽¹⁾ and Career Plans

Hello, my name is Omar, and I am 11 years old. I always think about my future career. I wish to find a profession that matches my **talent**⁽²⁾ and makes me happy. I love helping people, so I want to become a doctor one day.



I know that I need a good **education**⁽³⁾ to reach my dream. After school, I will go to **university**⁽⁴⁾ to study medicine. I will also need **training**⁽⁵⁾ in hospitals, so I can learn how to **look after** patients. This training will help me have the **skills**⁽⁶⁾ I need for **success**⁽⁷⁾ in my profession.

My biggest dream is to help people feel better and to make them smile. I will work hard to **achieve**⁽⁸⁾ my goals. Sometimes, I feel tired of studying, but I remember that I am working for my future.

I believe that if I study well and practise a lot, I will become a good doctor. I will also have a job that I love. This is a very long way, but I will work very hard to make my dreams come true.

Choose
the correct
answer.

- Extracting information.

Learn

1. Training will help Omar to have

a. food b. games c. skills d. studying

Practice

2. The underlined phrase "look after" means ".....".

a. take care b. get up c. run through d. get down

استخراج معلومات.

| | | | |
|-----------|-----------|------------|--------------------|
| (4) جامعة | (3) تعليم | (2) مهبة | (1) أطلام مستقبلية |
| (8) يُحقق | (7) نجاح | (6) مهارات | (5) تدريب |

2. Word-building skills

Collocations متلازمات

▶ **Collocations** → are words that often go together naturally.

المتلازمات اللفظية ← هي كلمات غالبًا ما تأتي معًا بشكل طبيعي.

▶ Collocations can be :

verb فعل + noun اسم

ex. - match talent
↓ ↓
[v.] [n.]

ex. - achieve goals
↓ ↓
[v.] [n.]

Adjective فعل + noun اسم

ex. - digital life
↓ ↓
[adj.] [n.]

ex. - critical thinking
↓ ↓
[adj.] [n.]

ex. - clear dream
↓ ↓
[adj.] [n.]



Exercise

on Vocabulary

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

▶ Key vocabulary

- To win a game, is very important.
a. career b. success c. training d. patient
- Mazen has a great in art.
a. school b. talent c. sport d. view
- Good is the key to a successful future.
a. education b. music c. class d. smile

4. My sister, Noha studies medicine at a great
a. shop b. university c. class d. school

SB Exercises

5. **SB** Omar wishes to find a profession that his talent.
a. speaks b. watches c. sees d. matches
6. **SB** How can Omar his dream ?
a. arrive b. speak c. reach d. listen
7. **SB** I need training in hospitals so I can learn how to look after
a. goals b. patients c. talents d. medicine
8. **SB** She has a great cooking Her food is delicious.
a. skill b. problem c. study d. training

El-Moasser Exercises

9. We have an important competition, so we need to very hard.
a. train b. dream c. hope d. see
10. I work hard to make my dreams come
a. away b. far c. true d. late
11. They study at university. They want to be doctors.
a. medicine b. art c. engineering d. languages

Definitions

12. means to reach something you worked for is .
a. Success b. Talent c. Courage d. Opportunity
13. " " means a strong hope for something.
a. Test b. Exercise c. Art d. Wish

► Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. Teachers always look their students.
a. in b. on c. after d. off
15. He hurries he can catch the bus.
a. because b. so that c. but d. if
16. Basem tired, so he wants to sleep.
a. falls b. fell c. feels d. flies

General Exercises



On Lesson 3

التقييمات اليومية
والأسبوعية والشهرية
فى نهاية الكتاب

https://t.me/G5_Y5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Students have a good at school or universities.
a. gifts b. profession c. education d. games
2. Work hard to your goals.
a. achieve b. learn c. become d. forget

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

teacher - cooking - library - understand - important

During a career workshop, students tried different jobs to discover their future paths. Layla worked in the (1) and found it interesting. Then she tried (2) and realized that she enjoyed helping people more than making food. After trying many roles, Layla decided to become a (3) It is really important to (4) what you truly love doing.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Our school football team used to lose every game. But, everything changed when Coach Tariq arrived. He taught the players how to work as a team, not just chase the ball. "One person can't win alone," he said. The team began practicing together and helping each other. Soon, they won their first match! Now, students call them "the Dream Team" and younger kids look up to them. As heroes, coach Tariq believes teamwork can turn any group into champions.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The main idea of the text is about ".....".
a. Football cup b. Teamwork c. Schools d. Learning
2. The opposite of the underlined word "lose" is
a. believe b. miss c. win d. take

b. Answer the following questions :

3. What does the underlined pronoun "he" refer to ?

.....

4. Why do you think the team won the match ?

.....

5. What is Tarek's job?

.....

6. What did they call the school's football team ?

.....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. What you going to do tomorrow ?

a. will b. was c. are d. can

2. I'm going to in a hotel for a week.

a. staying b. stay c. stayed d. stays

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Is he going [be] a doctor ?

2. Who are you going [visiting] tomorrow ?

3. She [not be] going to tidy her room.

4. The car [going] to crash. It runs very fast.

6 Complete the following dialog :

Ziad and Adham are talking about their dream jobs.

Ziad : What is your dream job ?

Adham : I want to be a (1)

Ziad : (2) do you want to be a doctor ?

Adham : Because I love helping people. What about you?

Ziad : My (3) is to be an artist.

Adham : I think this profession matches your talent. I saw your painting.

Ziad : Thank you. Should (4) join an art workshop?

Adham : Yes. That improves your skills more.

https://t.me/G5_Y5



SB pages 82 - 85

Lessons

5 & 6

- ▶ My Dream Job!
- ▶ Team - Project Roundtable

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|------------------|-------------|----------------|--------------|
| design buildings | يُصمم مباني | focused (adj) | منتبه/متيقظ |
| owner (n) | مالك | course (n) | دورة تدريبية |
| prediction (n) | تنبؤ | review (n) | مقال نقدي |
| creative (adj) | مُبدع | treat (ed) (v) | يُعامل/يعالج |



Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

design - creative - tired - focused - course

1. I had a summer to improve my skills in English.
2. Hani is very ; he always has new ideas.
3. When you have enough sleep, you will feel in the morning.
4. Engineers can new buildings.

Lesson 5 ▶ SB pages 82 & 83

| | | | |
|-----------------|----------|-----------------|------------|
| engineering (n) | هندسة | vet (n) | طبيب بيطري |
| hard side | جانب صعب | important (adj) | هام |
| good side | جانب جيد | | |

Lesson 6 ▶ SB pages 84 & 85

المفردات اللغوية المساعدة لأداء الـ "project"

| | | | |
|-----------------|---------|-----------------|-------------|
| groups (n) | مجموعات | page (n) | صفحة |
| share (d) (v) | يشارك | drawings (n) | رسومات |
| improve (d) (v) | يُحسن | follow (ed) (v) | يتبع |
| phrase (n) | عبارة | mind map | خريطة ذهنية |
| add (ed) (v) | يُضيف | wants (n) | احتياجات |
| inspire (d) (v) | يُلهم | branches (n) | فروع |

Vocabulary Study

► Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات و متضادات

| Word الكلمة | Synonym المرادف | Antonym / Opposite المضاد |
|--------------------|-----------------|---------------------------|
| teach يعلم | educate | learn يتعلم |
| inside بالداخل | indoor | outside / outdoor بالخارج |
| special خاص / مميز | extraordinary | ordinary / normal عادي |

► Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة ونهاية

| Prefix / Suffix | Function الوظيفة | Examples أمثلة |
|-----------------|------------------|------------------|
| -ion | تحول الفعل لاسم | prediction تنبؤ |
| -ive | تحول الفعل لصفة | creative مبدع |
| -ment | تحول الفعل لاسم | assessment تقييم |

✓ Exercise on Vocabulary Study

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- The opposite of the word "in door" is ".....".
a. inside b. unknown c. special d. normal
- "Teach" and "....." have the same meaning.
a. find b. learn c. educate d. predict
- We can change the verb "create" into an adjective by adding the suffix ".....".
a. -ment b. -ness c. -ive d. -tion



General Notes on Reading & Listening

- learn → to + (inf.)
- learn → how to + (inf.)

يتعلم أن

► **SB** I'm going to **learn (how) to** design buildings.

► I **learned to** swim well.

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

| Expressions التعبيرات | |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------|
| make money يجمع مال | look back يسترجع / يستعيد |
| play the piano يعرف على البيانو | reach a job يحصل على وظيفة |
| Prepositions حروف الجر | |
| part of جزء من | important to مهم لـ |
| good for جيد لـ / مفيد لـ | in my opinion في رأي |

- SB page 82

My Dream Job !

My dream job is to become a vet. A vet is a doctor who treats animals. I love animals, so I think this job is good for me. The good side is caring for sick animals and making them feel better. Vets also work with many different animals, which is fun and exciting. However, there are some hard sides. Animals don't speak. It's hard to help them. Also, vets need to study hard for many years.

In my opinion, this job is very important. Helping animals makes a difference to them and their owners. This is my dream job. One day, I hope I can become a great vet.

Writing

مهارة الكتابة

▶ A. How to write a review :

كيفية كتابة مقال نقدي :

▶ To write a review :

- ▶ describe what you're writing about.
- ▶ write the good and hard sides.
- ▶ write what you think of it.

- صف ما تقوم بالكتابة عنه .
- اكتب الجوانب الجيدة والسلبية .
- اكتب ما تعتقده (رأيك) عنه .

Learn

My dream job is to become a doctor.

I like to help sick people get better. Doctors save lives and give hope to sick people.

There are many good sides of being a doctor.

Doctors help a lot of patients every day and make them healthy. It's a very important job.

What you're
writing about

Good sides

However, being a doctor is not easy.

It takes many years of studying and hard work. Doctors often work all the time even night or during holidays.

I believe that the good sides of the job are stronger than the hard sides.

Hard sides

Your opinion

Practice

Write a review of (80 - 100) words about your dream job.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

B. Punctuation Marks :

علامات الترقيم : [الفاصلة العلوية] (') "An apostrophe"

Learn

An apostrophe ['] is a punctuation mark we use to :

► Show possession → (something belongs to someone)

التعبير عن الملكية

- This is Noha's book

Singular

► If the noun is plural and ends in "s", just add the apostrophe after the "s"

إذا كان الاسم جمعاً وينتهي بـ "s" نضيف فقط الفاصلة العلوية (') بعد "s"

- The teachers' room is over there

Plural ends in "s"

► Make contractions → (short forms by joining words)

توضع بين التراكيب المختصرة.

- (I am → I'm)

- (He is → He's)

- (do not → don't)

Practice

Punctuate the following sentences.

1. She ll come soon
2. **SB** The girls bags are over there
3. Thats an interesting book
4. **SB** This is Amirs mobile phone
5. Lets go to the park on friday
6. I found my brothers phone

Exercise on Vocabulary

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

▶ **Key vocabulary**

1. You should make a clear to achieve your goals.
a. plan b. plane c. planet d. plant
2. help sick animals get better.
a. Vets b. Engineers c. Chemists d. Sailors
3. He always makes new art works which are amazing. He is really
a. busy b. creative c. free d. nervous

El-Moasser Exercises

4. Marwa's is to be a famous scientist.
a. work b. job c. dream d. hobby
5. She didn't go to school because she was
a. happy b. sick c. excited d. creative
6. My uncle is the of this factory. He bought it last week.
a. worker b. loser c. owner d. seller
7. Malak has a strong to become an engineer.
a. game b. drawing c. treat d. ambition
8. She has the of drawing and painting.
a. rule b. subject c. talent d. path
9. Ahmed Zewail is a/an scientist.
a. famous b. unknown c. unimportant d. owner

General Exercises



On Lessons 5 & 6

التقييمات اليومية
والأسبوعية والشهرية
في نهاية الكتاب

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. My dream is to be a scientist.
a. training b. study c. workshop d. job
2. Problem-solving is a very useful to be a leader.
a. dream b. skill c. path d. career

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

unsure - green - science - plants - work

Dr. Nabil is a famous scientist in Egypt. He studies how (1) grow in dry places. In an interview, he said that (2) helps us solve many problems. He told students to (3) hard at school and never stop asking questions. His dream is to help farmers grow food in deserts. He believes that one day, even dry lands can become (4)

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Yesterday, our class interviewed Dr. Samira Khaled, a marine biologist at Alexandria University. She studies dolphins and their habitats in the Mediterranean Sea. During the interview, Dr. Khaled explained that dolphins communicate with sounds and stay in groups called pods. She said: "If we protect the sea, dolphins will survive and help balance our marine ecosystem." She also described her favorite memory—a dolphin rescue last year. A baby dolphin was trapped in fishing nets, and the team freed it safely. Dr. Khaled hopes young people will learn about marine life and work to save our oceans.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The main idea of the text is about "Dr. Samira's".
a. life b. children c. city d. job
2. The underlined word "survive" can be replaced by
a. trap b. die c. live d. fish

b. Answer the following questions :

3. What does the underlined pronoun "She" refer to ?

.....

4. How do dolphins communicate?

.....

5. What does Dr. Samira study?

.....

6. Why do you think we should protect the sea?

.....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. We're going to a bigger tank for fish.

a. bought b. buying c. buys d. buy

2. Is he volunteer in the community garden?

a. will b. going to c. can d. should

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. When are you going [travel] to Port Said?

2. Be careful! You [be] going to fall.

3. She [going] to sew a dress for Nehal.

4. I'm going to [built] a fence around the garden.

6 Complete the following dialog :

Amgad : Hello, Younis. What are you doing?

Younis : Hello , Amgad . I'm (1)

Amgad : (2) you finish school?

Younis : Yes, I did. I'm studying at university now.

Amgad : (3) are you studying now?

Younis : I'm studying engineering.

Amgad : You will be a successful engineer, Younis.

Younis : It's my wish to be a famous (4) like Hassan Fathi.

7 Write a review of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

مناقشة شخصية في قراءة الكتاب

"Your dream job"

.....

.....

Review



on unit 5

| Vocabulary | Language | Speaking |
|---|--|--|
| Lessons 1 & 2 advertisement develop opportunities talent profession gift graduate career dream job Lesson 3 achieve success education university medicine training engineering Lessons 5 & 6 ambition prediction creative famous branches path | <p>المستقبل باستنداد : "be going to"</p> <p>Formation التكوين</p> <p>1 Affirmative statement الجملة الخبرية المثبتة</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - I'm going to travel tomorrow. - He's going to help his father. - They're going to go on a trip. <p>2 Negative statement الجملة الخبرية المنفية</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - I'm not going to play games. - She isn't going to sing. - They aren't going to bake cookies. <p>3 Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام</p> <p>A. Are they going to help the environment ? - Yes, they are. - No, they aren't.</p> <p>B. What is she going to do to help the environment ?</p> | <p>Asking and answering questions about your dream job.</p> <p>A: What job do you want in the future ?</p> <p>B: My dream is to become a graphic designer.</p> <p>A: Wonderful ! What do you enjoy doing ?</p> <p>B: I enjoy drawing and using technology.</p> <p>A: Have you done anything to improve your skill ?</p> <p>B: Yes, I joined a free art program in my city last summer.</p> <p>A: You're talented. What's your next step ?</p> <p>B: I set a new goal to design my own website.</p> |
| إعلان يطور فرص موهبة مهنة / وظيفة هدية يتخرج الحياة المهنية وظيفة الأحلام يحقق / ينجز نجاح تعليم جامعة الطب التدريب الهندسة طموح تنبؤ مبدع مشهور فروع مسار / طريق | | |

https://t.me/G5_Y5

Skills 1 Reading Comprehension

Understand reference

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مهارة [تحديد ما تشير اليه الكلمة في النص].

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة.

▶ Read and answer the questions :

Everyone has dreams and hopes for the future. Some people want to become doctors, engineers, or artists. Others dream of starting business or helping their community. To discover your future, you need to think about your talents and what you enjoy doing. It's also important to set clear goals and make a good plan. When you work hard and believe in yourself, you can achieve it well. Your future begins today - so take the first step and start building the life you want!

• What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to ?

.....

🗨️ التحدي قد تجد صعوبة في تحديد ما تشير اليه الكلمة التي تحتها خط في الفقرة.

🗨️ مفتاح الحل عند قراءة الفقرة تجد أن هناك دلالات للضمائر / الكلمات الموجود في الفقرة.

2

Speaking

My plan for a future career

تختبر سؤال المحادثة [dialog] قدرتك للتعبير عن مواقف معينة.

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة.

▶ Complete the following dialog :

Ali is asking Omar about his future job.

Ali : Hi Omar! Have you ever thought about your future job ?

Omar : Yes, I think about it a lot. I want to be a (1)

Ali : That's a great dream! Why do you want to be a doctor ?

Omar : Because I like to help (2)

Ali : What do you need to reach your goal ?

Omar : I need to (3) hard.

Ali : Will you get any training ?

Omar : Yes, I want to train in hospitals to learn how to look after patients.

Ali : (4)

🗨️ التحدي تريد السؤال عن [خطتي لمهنتي المستقبلية] وتجد صعوبة في تكوين أسئلة والرد عليها.

🗨️ مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من الأسئلة والردود عن الموضوع.

General Exercises on unit 5

التقييمات اليومية
والأسبوعية والشهرية
فمن نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions :

استمع إلى معلمك واجب عن الاسئلة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. Who is Dr. Farouq El-Baz ?

.....

2. Where was Dr. Farouq El-Baz born ?

.....

3. Where did he study ?

.....

4. What subject was his PhD in ?

.....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. **SB** We need to our next steps carefully.

a. participate b. waste c. plan d. join

2. A/An is a natural skill or ability.

a. profession b. list c. talent d. ambition

3. The party is crowded. The tickets are cheap.

a. should b. can c. will be d. going to be

4. Is he going windsurfing?

a. tried b. to try c. try d. tries

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

designers - curious - path - opportunities - support

At Future Path Careers, we help you find your ambition and develop every skill you need to succeed. You are going to discover a whole new world of (1) with us! Some want to become doctors, while others want to be (2) or teachers. Whatever your plan, we are here to (3) you. You will find your (4) if you work hard and believe in yourself.

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Hello, my name is Omar, and I am 11 years old. I always think about my future career. I wish to find a **profession** that matches my talent and makes me happy.

I love helping people, so I want to become a doctor one day.

I know that I need a good education to reach my dream. After school, I will go to university to study medicine. I will also need training in hospitals. so I can learn how to look after patients. This training will help me get the skills I need for success in my profession.

My biggest dream is to help people feel better and to make them smile. I will work hard, so I can achieve my goals. Sometimes, I feel tired.

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The underlined word "profession" means
 a. job b. competition c. university d. talent
2. Omar is going to study
 a. engineering b. music c. medicine d. math

b. Answer the following questions :

3. What does the underlined pronoun "me" refer to?

4. What is the main idea of the text?

5. Why does Omar want to become a doctor?

6. Do you think Omar is a kind person? Why?

5 Correct the mistakes in the following sentences :

1. They not going to visit their uncle. (.....)
2. Are you going to visiting Luxor ? (.....)
3. There are dark clouds! It is rain. (.....)
4. She is go to buy a new mobile. (.....)

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. I'm going to [wrote] a report about science.
2. Are you going [take] part in the competition?
3. What [be] he going to wear for the party?
4. Students are [going] support their community.

7 Complete the following dialog :

Noha is interviewing Dr. Zakaria , the famous surgeon.

Noha : Good Morning. Dr. Zakaria. It's my pleasure to be with you today.

Dr.Zakaria : Good Morning. (1)

Noha : (2)

Dr. Zakaria : Well! I'm a surgeon in a hospital and a volunteer in my community.

Noha : (3)

Dr. Zakaria : I think the best part of my job it is when we help people's lives.

Noha : Do you think it is a difficult job?

Dr. Zakaria : (4)

► **Story** The Dream Team (chapter two)

8 A. Read and write (T) True or (F) false :

1. The machine didn't work after hard work.

()

2. They were proud of the machine.

()

B. Who said the following ?

1. "We have an aspiration - to save water for our village . We can do this!"

.....

2. "We can make it better if we test it again and again"

.....

9 Write a biography of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

مخاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"A famous person who inspires you"

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

https://t.me/G5_Y5

Unit Six

Global Citizens



SB pages 87 : 100

Learning outcomes :

• Reading :

- Identify the main idea and specific details in texts about global citizenship and community rules
- Use context clues to understand new vocabulary related to global responsibility

• Listening :

- Identify the main idea and specific details in spoken texts about community or environmental topics
- Infer the meaning of key expressions from context

• Speaking :

- Describe good citizen behaviors using correct vocabulary and structures
- Explain community or school rules clearly

• Language :

- Use "must" and "mustn't" accurately to express rules and obligations

• Writing :

- Write a social media post on a list of rules for being a good citizen using target structures and vocabulary



SB pages 88 : 91

Lessons

1 & 2

- ▶ Being a global citizen
- ▶ Global citizen talk

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|--------------------|-------------|--------------------------|---------------|
| global citizen (n) | مواطن عالمي | protect (ed) (v) | يحمى |
| encourage (d) (v) | يشجع | electricity (n) | كهرباء |
| duty (n) | واجب | volunteer (ed) (v) , (n) | متطوع / يتطوع |
| unfair (adj) | غير عادل | responsibility (n) | مسئولية |
| law (n) | قانون | environment (n) | البيئة |



Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

volunteer – protect – unfair – electricity – responsibility

1. It's our to keep the environment clean.
2. Make a strong password to your account from hackers.
3. Ahmed likes working as a to help others without money.
4. We shouldn't waste

Lesson 1 ▶ SB pages 88 & 89

| | | | |
|-----------------|---------------|------------------------|---------------|
| community (n) | مجمع | support (ed) (v) , (n) | دعم/مساعدة |
| politely (adv) | بأدب | equal (adj) | مساو/مكافئ |
| follow (ed) (v) | يتبع | believe (d) (v) | يعتقد - يصدق |
| qualities (n) | سمات / مميزات | actions (n) | أحداث |
| culture (n) | ثقافة | ground (n) | الأرض |
| peace (n) | سلام | unkind (adj) | قاسي/غير عطوف |
| traditions (n) | تقاليد | fair (adj) | عادل - منصف |
| opinions (n) | آراء | | |

Lesson 2 ▶ SB pages 90 & 91

| | | | |
|------------------------|--------------------|-----------------|--------------------|
| global citizenship (n) | المواطنة العالمية | prize (n) | جائزة |
| rubbish (n) | القمامة | class rules (n) | قواعد الصف الدراسي |
| school project | مشروع مدرسي | exactly (adv) | بالضبط |
| care (n) | عناية/اهتمام | gloves (n) | قفازات |
| kindness (n) | عطف - حسن المعاملة | without (prep) | بدون |
| experiment (n) | تجربة علمية | necessary (adj) | ضروري |

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

| Present المضارع | Past الماضي | P.P. التصريف الثالث |
|-----------------|-------------|---------------------|
| think يعتقد | thought | thought |
| take care يهتم | took care | taken care |
| keep يحافظ | kept | kept |

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

| | | |
|-----------------------|--|-----------------|
| global citizen | being fair to people from different countries and cultures | المواطن العالمي |
| encourage | to help people do good things | يشجع |
| protect | to look after or save | يحمي |
| unfair | not to treat people in an equal way | غير عادل |
| volunteer | to give your time to help others without being paid | بتطوع |
| responsibility | to do your duty and take care of something | مستولية |
| environment | the world around us, like land, air and water | البيئة |

Vocabulary Study

► Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

| Word الكلمة | Synonym المرادف | Antonym /Opposite المضاد |
|-----------------|---------------------|--------------------------|
| fair منصف/عادل | just/equal | unfair غير عادل/ظالم |
| global عالمي | worldwide/universal | local محلي |
| necessary ضروري | important/vital | unnecessary غير ضروري |
| encourage يشجع | support | discourage يحبط - يمنع |
| waste يهدر/يضيع | lose | save/keep يوفر/يحافظ |

► Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة ونهاية

| Prefix / Suffix | Function الوظيفة | Examples أمثلة |
|-----------------|--|--------------------|
| -ful | تحول الاسم لصفة | careful حريص |
| -ship | تحول الكلمة من اسم فاعل لاسم يدل على صفة | citizenship مواطنة |
| dis- | تعطي عكس الكلمة | discourage يحبط |
| -y | تحول الصفة لاسم | honesty الأمانة |

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. She doesn't encourage her little children; she them.
a. takes care of b. discourages c. plays d. supports
2. water is a bad habit, you should save it.
a. Keeping b. Wasting c. Drinking d. Boiling
3. We can get the adjective from the noun "care" by adding the suffix ".....".
a. -ness b. -ity c. -ful d. -or
4. "....." is the opposite of the word "global".
a. Universal b. Local c. Peaceful d. Lazy



General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 fair

fair (adj)

عادل - منصف

▶ **SB** We believe it is **fair** to treat all people equally.

fair (adj)

وسيم/أشقر

▶ She has long **fair** hair.

fair (n)

معرض - سوق خيري

▶ Cairo Book **Fair** is famous all over the Middle East.

2 waste

waste (v)

يهدر - يبذر

▶ **SB** We mustn't **waste** food or throw rubbish on the ground.

waste (n)

مخلفات

▶ We can use animal **waste** as a fertilizer.

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| Expressions التعبيرات | |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| work together | يعمل معاً |
| no matter | لا يهم |
| keep our community safe | يحافظ على أمن مجتمعنا |
| make good choices | يقوم باختيارات سليمة |
| win a prize | يفوز بجائزة |
| follow each rule | نتبع كل قاعدة |
| unfair to | غير عادل لـ |
| keep our school clean | نحافظ على نظافة مدرستنا |
| show respect to | يظهر احتراماً لـ |
| make a big difference | يحدث فرقاً كبيراً |
| do your duty | تقوم بأداء واجبك |
| Prepositions حروف الجر | |
| plan to | يخطط لـ |
| in peace | في سلام |
| in need | في حالة احتياج |
| in an equal way | بطريقة متساوية |
| on the ground | على الأرض |
| according to | طبقاً لـ/تبعاً لـ |
| without being paid | بدون تقاضى أموال |
| care for = look after = take care of | يعتنى بـ |
| for the exam | من أجل الامتحان |
| with care | باهتمام/بعناية |
| share with | يتشارك مع |



Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

on Lesson 1 SB page 88

Being a global citizen ⁽¹⁾

1. Every student is a part of a **community**⁽²⁾ and a citizen of the world.
2. As global citizens, we must follow each rule and keep everyone safe.
3. We must keep our **environment**⁽³⁾ clean and save water and electricity to protect our planet.
4. We also must **encourage**⁽⁴⁾ others to volunteer to help people in need and protect animals and **nature**⁽⁵⁾.
5. Being a good global citizen means showing respect to everyone and work together in **peace**⁽⁶⁾.

6. It's important to be fair and respect different **cultures**⁽⁷⁾, languages and **traditions**⁽⁸⁾.
7. At school, we should teach children how to solve problems together and think about improving our world.
8. We can encourage students to plant trees and keep our community safe and clean.

| | | |
|------------|------------|---------------------|
| البيئة (3) | مجتمع (2) | المواطن العالمي (1) |
| سلام (6) | طبيعة (5) | يشجع (4) |
| | تقاليد (8) | ثقافات (7) |

تدوينة : الجمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل أو كتابة فقرات إنشائية أخرى:

* How to be a global citizen

* Keeping our community safe and clean

* Global citizenship

Reading and Listening

Reading

on Lesson 1 SB page 88

School Handbook: Being a Global Citizen

At our school, we believe every student is part of a community and is a citizen of the world. As **global citizens**⁽¹⁾, we must follow each rule and law to keep everyone safe and happy. We mustn't be unkind or **unfair**⁽²⁾ to others. Instead, we should be kind and help each other every day.

To **protect**⁽³⁾ our planet, we must keep our school clean and save water and electricity. We mustn't waste food or throw rubbish on the ground. We also must **encourage**⁽⁴⁾ students to volunteer to help others in need and to protect animals and nature.

Being a good global citizen means showing **respect**⁽⁵⁾ to everyone, listening to others, and working together in peace. We believe it is fair to treat all people with care, no matter where they come from. It is important to respect different **cultures**⁽⁶⁾, languages, and **traditions**⁽⁷⁾.

In our school, we learn to solve problems together and think about how we can **improve**⁽⁸⁾ our world. We must remember that even small actions can make a big difference. We can plant trees, share with others, and help keep our **community**⁽⁹⁾ safe and clean.

At our school, you are not just a student; you are a young leader who can change the world by making good **choices**⁽¹⁰⁾ and caring for others.

Determine the meaning of words and phrases in a text. تحديد معاني الكلمات والعبارات في نص.

Choose
the correct
answer.

Learn

1. The antonym of the word "**waste**" is ".....".

- a. treat b. save c. destroy d. choose

Practice

2. What does the word "**encourage**" in the second paragraph mean ?

- a. make them feel bad b. ask them politely
c. give them support d. destroy them

| | | | | |
|-------------|-----------|-----------|--------------|---------------------|
| (5) يحترم | (4) يشجع | (3) يحمي | (2) غير عادل | (1) المواطن العالمي |
| (10) خيارات | (9) مجتمع | (8) يُحسن | (7) تقاليد | (6) ثقافات |

Listening

• on Lesson 2 SB page 90

Listen to Mariam and Ziad talking about a school project.

Mariam : Hi Ziad ! Are you **ready for**⁽¹⁾ the new project ?

Ziad : I think so. Is it the one about helping our community ?

Mariam : Yes ! We're planning to clean the park and **plant flowers**⁽²⁾.

Ziad : That sounds fun ! Why are we doing this ?

Mariam : Because we are learning about global citizenship. It means we must help others and take care of the environment.

Ziad : I see. So we're volunteering.

Mariam : **Exactly**⁽³⁾ ! It's our **responsibility**⁽⁴⁾ as students.

Ziad : I like it. We can also make posters about keeping places clean.

Mariam : Great idea ! We can show respect by working together kindly.

Ziad : When are we doing it ?

Mariam : On Saturday morning. Don't forget your **gloves**⁽⁵⁾ !

Ziad : I won't. Let's make a big **impact**⁽⁶⁾ !

(1) مستعد ل (2) يزرع ورود (3) بالضبط (4) مسئولية (5) قفازات (6) تأثير

Exercise on Vocabulary

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

▶ Key vocabulary

- It's important to students to volunteer to help others.
a. forbid b. discourage c. ignore d. encourage
- Being a good global citizen means showing to everyone.
a. anger b. disrespect c. respect d. sadness
- We must follow each rule and to keep everyone safe and happy.
a. habit b. law c. suggestion d. tradition
- When we work together, we can our world.
a. destroy b. worsen c. improve d. neglect

SB Exercises

- SB** It is important to treat all people with, no matter where they come from.
a. care b. anger c. sadness d. fear
- SB** "Responsibility" means to do your and take care of something.
a. homework b. duty c. hobbies d. sleep

7. **SB** Mariam and Ziad are planning a school to help the community.
 a. party b. trip c. project d. exam
8. **SB** The project teaches children about global
 a. history b. geography c. citizenship d. mathematics

El-Moasser Exercises

9. A young leader is someone who can change the world by making good
 a. shoes b. choices c. chats d. problems
10. We must remember that even small actions can make a big
 a. care b. difference c. mistake d. ability
11. We learn to problems together at school.
 a. avoid b. solve c. create d. ignore

Definitions

12. To "....." means to look after or save.
 a. volunteer b. protect c. encourage d. improve
13. The "....." means the world around us, like land, air, and water.
 a. difference b. responsibility c. environment d. community

► Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. To protect our planet, we must our school clean.
 a. take b. find c. keep d. get
15. The Cairo International Book is a great event.
 a. Center b. Museum c. Temple d. Fair

2. Speaking

مهارة التحدث

► 1. Asking and answering questions about a good citizen :

توجيه أسئلة والرد عليها عن المواطن الصالح :

Questions ?

1. What makes a good citizen ?
 ما الذي يجعل الشخص مواطنًا صالحًا ؟
2. What qualities should a good citizen have ?
 ما السمات التي يجب أن يتحلى بها المواطن الصالح ؟

Answers ✓

- A good citizen is someone who respects others, listens to people and works in peace.
 - المواطن الصالح هو شخص يحترم الآخرين، ويستمع إلى الناس ويعمل في سلام.
- A good citizen should be kind, fair, respectful, helpful, and responsible.
 - يجب أن يكون المواطن الصالح، طيبًا، عادلًا، محترمًا، مساعدًا ومستنويًا.

3. What should a good citizen do ?

ماذا يجب أن يفعل المواطن الصالح؟

- A good citizen should follow rules and help others.

. يجب على المواطن الصالح أن يتبع القواعد ويساعد الآخرين.

- A good citizen should save water and electricity.

. يجب على المواطن الصالح أن يوفر الماء والكهرباء.

- A good citizen should keep their community clean.

. يجب على المواطن الصالح أن يحافظ على نظافة المجتمع.

- A good citizen shouldn't be unkind or unfair to others.

. لا يجب على المواطن الصالح أن يعامل الناس بقسوة أو بظلم.

- A good citizen shouldn't waste food or throw rubbish on the ground.

. لا يجب على المواطن الصالح أن يهدر الطعام أو أن يلقي القمامة على الأرض.

4. What shouldn't a good citizen do ?

ما الذي يجب أن لا يفعله المواطن الصالح؟

2. Asking and answering questions about classroom / community rules :

توجيه أسئلة والرد عليها عن قواعد حجرة الدراسة أو المجتمع :

Questions ?

1. What are some important rules in our classroom ?

ما هي القواعد الهامة في حجرة الدراسة الخاصة بنا؟

2. What are some important rules in our community ?

ما هي القواعد الهامة في مجتمعنا؟

3. Which do you think are the most helpful rules ? Why ?

ما القواعد التي تعتقد أنها أكثر فائدة؟ ولماذا؟

Answers ✓

- Being kind to others. معاملة الآخرين بلطف.

- Not running inside the classroom.

عدم الجري داخل حجرة الدراسة.

- Raising your hand before speaking.

رفع اليد قبل التحدث.

- We must follow traffic rules.

يجب علينا إتباع قواعد المرور.

- We must keep public places clean.

يجب علينا الحفاظ على الأماكن العامة نظيفة.

- I think the rule "Be kind to others" is the most helpful.

اعتقد أن قاعدة "كن لطيفا مع الآخرين" هي الأكثر فائدة.

- As it makes everyone feel safe and happy, and it helps us work better as a team.

لأنها تجعل الجميع يشعرون بالأمان والسعادة، وتساعدنا على العمل بطريقة أفضل كفريق.

III Language in use

1. Use must & mustn't to express rules and obligations

استخدم "must & mustn't" للتعبير عن القواعد والإلزام

1 must + inf. يجب أن

▶ We use (must) to talk about things that are necessary to do.

- تستخدم (must) بمعنى [يجب أن] للتعبير عن الضرورة لفعل شيء ما .

ex. - You must arrive on time.

2 mustn't + inf. يجب ألا

We use (mustn't) to talk about things that you are not allowed to do.

- تستخدم (mustn't) بمعنى [يجب ألا] للتعبير عن شيء غير مسموح لك بفعله .

ex. - You mustn't talk in the library.

3 We use the infinitive without "to" after must/mustn't:

• لاحظ: أننا نستخدم مصدر الفعل بدون (to) بعد (must / mustn't).

ex. - You must listen to the teacher. - You mustn't climb the pyramids.

4 Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

A Yes/No question : السؤال بـ «هل» :

Must + subject الفاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل + ...?

ex. Must I park here? - Yes, you must. - No, you mustn't.

B Wh- question : السؤال بكلمة استفهام :

Question word + must / mustn't + subject + inf. ...?
كلمة استفهام + الفاعل + مصدر الفاعل

ex. What must I do to my parents? - You must obey them.

Exercises on Language in use "must / mustn't"

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

1. SB We must different cultures.

a. respecting

b. respected

c. respect

d. respects

2. **SB** They play football in the street.
a. aren't b. must c. going to d. mustn't
3. **SB** We be kind to each other every day.
a. must b. don't c. can't d. are
4. **SB** We must gloves when we clean the park.
a. to wear b. wearing c. wear d. wears
5. **SB** What are two things you must as a global citizen?
a. did b. does c. doing d. do

El-Moasser Exercises

6. You use your phone at the classroom.
a. can b. mustn't c. aren't d. have
7. You must your family at home.
a. helped b. helps c. help d. helping
8. What must if there's a fire?
a. are you b. you did c. you do d. you can
9. She be at work on time.
a. going to b. does c. is d. must
10. the students wear a uniform ? - Yes, they must.
a. Can b. Must c. Did d. Will

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB Exercises

1. **SB** He (**mustn't**) study hard for the exam.
2. **SB** We (**must**) waste water or electricity.
3. **SB** We must (**planting**) trees to help the environment.
4. **SB** Marwan must (**to hurry**) to catch the train.
5. **SB** We (**must**) be unkind to others.

El-Moasser Exercises

6. You must (**chooses**) good friends.
7. You (**mustn't**) get enough sleep.
8. You must (**believed**) in your talent.
9. You (**must**) talk loudly in the library.
10. He must (**wears**) a seatbelt when he's driving.

2. Review of tenses مراجعة على الأزمنة

1. Simple present tense

- زمن المضارع البسيط

Subject + $\begin{cases} \rightarrow \text{التصريف الأول للفعل} \\ \rightarrow \text{التصريف الأول للفعل} + s/es/ies \end{cases}$

ex. - She **always plays** tennis.

2. Simple past tense

- زمن الماضي البسيط

Subject + التصريف الثاني للفعل

ex. - We **went** to our grandparents **yesterday**.

3. Adverbs of frequency

- ظروف التكرار

1. They come before the main verb.

١. تأتي ظروف التكرار قبل الفعل الأساسي .

ex. - I **always** brush my teeth.

2. They come after v. to be.

٢. تأتي ظروف التكرار بعد (v. to be).

ex. - He is **usually** late .

4. Present continuous tense

- زمن المضارع المستمر

subj. + [am / is / are] + [inf. + ing]

ex. - My cousins **are coming** now.

- We **are visiting** our grandparents in luxor next week.

Exercises on Language in use "Review of tenses"

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

1. **SB** She a picture now.

a. is drawing b. draws c. draw d. drawing
2. **SB** He always to school by bus.

a. go b. goes c. to go d. will go
3. **SB** They to Aswan last winter.

a. travel b. travels c. traveling d. traveled
4. **SB** What Hani do to be a global citizen ?

a. does b. is c. do d. were

5. **SB** What Mariam and Ziad planning to do for their project?

- a. are b. will c. can d. must

El-Moasser Exercises

6. We the park last week.

- a. cleans b. will clean c. cleaned d. cleaning

7. She study music at school this year.

- a. doesn't b. isn't c. mustn't d. don't

8. I a break right now.

- a. take b. am taking c. takes d. took

9. you close the window yesterday?

- a. Must b. Will c. Did d. Can

10. You go to the library because it's a holiday.

- a. will b. can c. must d. mustn't

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB Exercises

1. **SB** We believe it (**be**) fair to treat all people with care.

2. **SB** He (**not go**) to school yesterday.

3. **SB** What community project did Hani (**joins**)?

4. **SB** (**Does**) you think small actions can change the world?

5. **SB** The project (**teach**) them about global citizenship.

El-Moasser Exercises

6. Yesterday, they (**volunteers**) in the museum.

7. When (**does**) you get up?

8. I (**study**) science at the moment.

9. We (**not pick**) flowers from the garden.

10. Where did she (**found**) the bag?

General Exercises



On Lessons 1 & 2

التقييمات اليومية
والأسبوعية والشهرية
فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

- To our planet, we must keep our school clean.
a. remember b. recycle c. protect d. love
- We must save water and
a. air b. electricity c. space d. sand
- We mustn't throw on the ground.
a. ideas b. water c. seeds d. rubbish
- We must encourage students to
a. share b. choose c. volunteer d. work

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- He wasn't when he asked Hatem to work while they were playing.
a. foolish b. fair c. safe d. strong
- We people to visit Egypt and learn about its history.
a. encourage b. forget c. solve d. waste

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

plants - trash - posters - proud - citizen

Being a global citizen means caring about others and helping the world. Last month, my school started a "Clean Up the Park" project. Students and teachers picked up (1) and planted flowers. I felt (2) to help my community. We also made (3) to teach people about recycling. I learned that we all share one planet, and small actions can make a big difference. A global (4) shows respect, takes responsibility, and helps others.



SB pages 92 & 93

Lesson

3

► Ocean Circle

تنويه: الدرس الرابع القصة المقررة في نهاية الكتاب !

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---------------------------|----------------|------------------|-----------------------|
| diversity (n) | تنوع | generations (n) | أجيال |
| clean-ups (n) | عمليات نظافة | reusable (adj) | قابل لإعادة الاستخدام |
| danger (n) | خطر | reduce (d) (v) | تقلل |
| global responsibility (n) | مسئولية عالمية | creature (n) | مخلوق |
| participate (d) (v) | يُشارك | convince (d) (v) | يُقنع |



Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

diversity – reduce – participates – impact – danger

1. We should traffic in Cairo streets.
2. Most animals may be in if we don't care for them.
3. Mona always in school competitions.
4. Education has a great on generations.

Lesson 3 ► SB page 92 & 93

| | | | |
|--------------------|--------------|---------------------|----------------|
| fever (n) | حمى | connect (ed) (v) | يربط - يوصل |
| increase (d) (v) | يزيد - يزداد | plastic bottles (n) | زجاجات بلاستيك |
| entertain (ed) (v) | يسلى | rights (n) | حقوق |
| reader (n) | قارئ | sea life (n) | الحياة البحرية |
| describe (d) (v) | يصف | facts (n) | حقائق |
| pollution (n) | تلوث | oceans (n) | محيطات |
| waste | نفايات | laugh (ed) (v) | بضحك |
| contrast (n) | تناقص | items (n) | عناصر |
| diagrams (n) | رسوم توضيحية | water quality (n) | جودة المياه |

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

| Present المضارع | Past الماضي | P.P. التصريف الثالث |
|-----------------|-------------|---------------------|
| throw يرمى | threw | thrown |
| teach يدرس | taught | taught |

Vocabulary Study

► Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

| Word الكلمة | Synonym المرادف | Antonym / Opposite المضاد |
|----------------|-----------------------|---------------------------|
| near قريب | close | far / remote بعيد |
| danger خطر | risk / threat | safety أمان |
| main أساسي | essential / important | minor فرعى / غير أساسي |
| increase يزداد | expand / go up | decrease / reduce يتناقض |

► Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة ونهاية

| Prefix / Suffix | Function الوظيفة | Examples أمثلة |
|-----------------|--------------------------------|------------------------------|
| re- | تعطى معنى إعادة الفعل مرة أخرى | reusable يمكن إعادة استخدامه |
| -ful | تعطى الصفة من الاسم | beautiful جميل |
| -tion | تعطى الاسم من الفعل | pollution تلوث |



General Notes on Reading & Listening

* danger-dangerous - endanger - in danger

* danger (n)

خطر

- Pollution causes great **danger** to the environment.

* dangerous (adj)

خطير

- It's **dangerous** to smoke in a petrol station.

* endanger (v)

يُعرض للخطر

- Don't **endanger** your life.

* in danger

في خطر

- The life of most sea animals is **in danger**.

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| Expressions التعبيرات | | | |
|------------------------|---------------------|----------------|--------------|
| keep working | يستمر في العمل | take an action | يتخذ إجراء |
| have a fever | يعانى من الحمى | all in all | فى المجمال |
| make you laugh | تجعلك تضحك | known as | معروف ك..... |
| beach clean - ups | حملات تنظيف الشواطئ | | |
| Prepositions حروف الجر | | | |
| important for | مهم لـ | filled with | ملئ بـ |
| participate in | يشارك فى | talk about | يتحدث عن |
| To start off, | فى البداية | throw into/in | يُلقي فى |
| depend on | يعتمد على | impressed by | منبهرب |

Master your skills

يهدف إلى تنمية
مهارات
اللغة الإنجليزية

 EL-MOASSER





Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

on Lesson 3 SB page 92

A global responsibility

1. We have a **global responsibility**⁽¹⁾ to protect oceans from danger.
2. We mustn't throw **rubbish**⁽²⁾ into the seas or leave plastic on the beaches to help sea animals.
3. Water pollution has a **terrible impact**⁽³⁾ on sea life and **water quality**⁽⁴⁾.
4. We can use reusable items **instead of**⁽⁵⁾ plastic to keep water and beaches clean.

* Helping the environment

* Global responsibility

5. Oceans **connect**⁽⁶⁾ people from many cultures and countries all over the world.
6. They show the beauty of **diversity**⁽⁷⁾ around the world.
7. We should all work together to protect the oceans for the coming **generations**⁽⁸⁾ and **living creatures**⁽⁹⁾.

| | | | | |
|------------|-----------|-----------|-------------|------------------|
| (1) مستوية | (2) قمامة | (3) تأثير | (4) جودة | (5) بدلاً من ذلك |
| (6) يوصل | (7) تنوع | (8) أجيال | (9) مخلوقات | |

الجميل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل أو كتابة فقرات إثنائية أخرى:

تنويه:

II Skills

on Lesson 3 SB page 92

A Global Responsibility

Our oceans are in **danger**⁽¹⁾, and we must act now to **protect**⁽²⁾ them. It is our **global responsibility**⁽³⁾ to save the sea animals and plants that live in this beautiful environment.

To start off, we mustn't throw rubbish into the sea or leave plastic on the beach because they have a terrible **impact**⁽⁴⁾ on sea life and water quality. We must show respect for the oceans and for the rights of all people to have clean water and beaches. We mustn't use plastic bottles and bags every day. Instead, we can use **reusable**⁽⁵⁾ items to help protect the oceans.

Oceans connect people from many cultures and countries, showing the beauty of **diversity**⁽⁶⁾ around the world. We all share the sea, so it is our duty to keep it safe. We can **participate**⁽⁷⁾ in beach clean-ups, teach others about saving the oceans, and **reduce**⁽⁸⁾ waste at home and school.

All in all, every small action makes a difference. If we all work together, we can protect the oceans for future **generations**⁽⁹⁾ and for every living **creature**⁽¹⁰⁾ that depends on the sea.

Identifying the general idea of the text.

تحديد الفكرة العامة للنص.

Learn

1. What is the main purpose of this text ?

- a. To entertain the reader with facts about the ocean.
- b. To teach people about different types of sea animals.
- c. To convince readers to take actions and protect the oceans.
- d. To describe a day at the beach.

Choose
The correct
answer.

Practice

2. What kind of text is "A Global Responsibility" ?

- a. A funny story that makes you laugh.
- b. A science book with lots of facts and diagrams.
- c. A message that tries to convince you to protect the oceans.
- d. A list of rules for swimming in the sea.

(1) خطر (2) يحمي (3) مسؤولية (4) تأثير (5) قابل لإعادة الاستخدام (6) تنوع (7) يشارك (8) يقلل (9) أجيال (10) مخلوق



Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

- Our oceans are in and we must act now to protect them.
a. safety b. danger c. beauty d. calm
- Throwing rubbish into the sea has a terrible on sea life.
a. benefit b. impact c. joy d. solution
- Instead of plastic bottles, we can use items to help protect the oceans.
a. disposable b. fragile c. reusable d. harmful
- Oceans connect people from many cultures showing the beauty of
a. conflict b. similarity c. diversity d. uniformity
- are living beings like animals, humans ... etc.
a. Creatures b. Citizens c. Clean-ups d. Dangers
- Beach help keep oceans safe and clean.
a. environment b. clean-ups c. diversity d. duties

SB Exercises

- SB** Oceans people from other cultures.
a. connect b. disconnect c. distract d. destroy
- SB** We mustn't throw into the sea.
a. desks b. rubbish c. fish d. water
- SB** We can in beach clean-ups to help save the oceans.
a. avoid b. ignore c. refuse d. participate

El-Moasser Exercises

- "Reduce waste" means to the amount of waste we produce.
a. increase b. decrease c. ignore d. multiply
- We can protect the oceans for future
a. generations b. items c. impacts d. dangers
- are full of salt water.
a. Rivers b. Lakes c. Streams d. Oceans
- Every small action a difference.
a. gives b. takes c. makes d. uses

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

- Leen had a great impact her friends.
a. at b. in c. on d. into

https://t.me/G5_Y5

15. When the Nile became polluted, it was necessary to an action.
 a. play b. drive c. take d. do
16. Pollution life on Earth.
 a. in danger b. danger c. endangers d. dangerous

Sentence - building skills :

Connectors الروابط

1 Learn

because لأن → to show cause

تستخدم لربط جملتين [لتوضيح السبب]

ex. - I didn't give up **because** I believe in myself.

so لذلك / لهذا السبب → to show result

تستخدم لربط جملتين [لتوضيح النتيجة]

ex. - I worked hard, **so** I came first in the exam.

although على الرغم من / بالرغم من أن → to show contrast

تستخدم لربط جملتين [لتوضيح التناقض]

ex. - **Although** I was sick, I went to school.

2 Practice

1. Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

SB Exercises

- SB** I was tired, I went to bed early.
 a. although b. because c. so d. but
- SB** it was raining, we played football.
 a. Although b. So c. Because d. But
- SB** He stayed home he had a fever.
 a. so b. although c. but d. because
- SB** She studied hard, she passed the exam.
 a. because b. although c. so d. but

El-Moasser Exercises

- He didn't bring his umbrella, he got wet on the way to school.
 a. although b. but c. so d. because

6. she was tired, she finished all homework.
a. But b. Because c. So d. Although
7. The classroom was noisy, the teacher continued the lesson.
a. although b. so c. because d. but
8. I stayed at home it was raining heavily.
a. although b. so c. because d. but
9. she didn't sleep well, she looked fresh in the morning.
a. So b. Because c. Although d. But
10. My friend was sick, he didn't go to school.
a. although b. so c. but d. because
11. She likes reading, she doesn't enjoy writing.
a. because b. although c. but d. so
12. They were late the bus didn't come on time.
a. although b. because c. so d. but
13. I was hungry, I made a sandwich.
a. although b. because c. so d. but
14. he studied a lot, he failed the exam.
a. So b. Because c. Although d. But

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB Exercises

1. **SB** He was hungry, (**because**) he made a sandwich.
2. **SB** We didn't go out (**but**) it was very cold.
3. **SB** (**So**) I was tired, I kept working.

El-Moasser Exercises

4. The homework was difficult, (**although**) I finished it.
5. We were late (**so**) the bus didn't come on time.
6. (**Because**) he was tired, he helped his friend.
7. I revised all night, (**but**) I did well on the exam.
8. He didn't bring his book, (**although**) the teacher let him join.
9. (**Although**) I forgot my password, I couldn't log in.
10. She likes swimming, (**so**) she doesn't like diving.
11. He answered all the questions (**because**) he was nervous.
12. My brother was hungry, (**but**) he made a sandwich.
13. (**But**) I practiced a lot, I made some mistakes.
14. The lights were off, (**because**) we used our phones.

General Exercises



On Lesson 3

التقييمات اليومية
والأسبوعية والشهرية
فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

- Everyone has the to live in a safe environment.
a. creature b. right c. impact d. duty
- Use materials to reduce waste.
a. reusable b. heavy c. quality d. expensive

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

responsibility - quality - throw - save - plastic

Our oceans are in danger, and we must act now to protect them. It is our global (1) to save the sea animals and plants that live in this beautiful environment. To start off, we mustn't (2) rubbish into the sea or leave plastic on the beach because it has a terrible impact on sea life and water (3) We must show respect for the oceans and for the rights of all people to have clean water and beaches. We mustn't use (4) bottles and bags every day. Instead, we can use reusable items to help protect the oceans.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I wore a jacket it was cold outside.
a. so b. although c. because d. but
- The project was difficult, we enjoyed working on it.
a. although b. so c. but d. because

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

- He didn't sleep well, [**but**] he was tired in class.
- I wanted to go to the park, [**because**] it started to rain.
- She passed the test [**but**] she didn't study much.
- They stayed at home [**so**] it was very hot.

5 Complete the following dialog :

They are discussing the importance of oceans.

Nader : Do you think oceans are important like rivers?

Shady : Yes, of course.

Nader : Why (1) they important although we can't drink salt water?

Shady : (2) are part of the environment. It has a big role in life.

Nader : Tell me more.

Shady : They (3) us fish, salt and many materials. They also affect our climate.

Nader : (4) you think people pollute oceans because they don't know their importance?

Shady : Yes, I'm sure.

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

مجاب عنده في نهاية الكتاب

" How to save the environment "

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



SB pages 96 : 99

Lessons

5 & 6

- ▶ Let's make a difference
- ▶ Team-project Roundtable

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------|---------------------------|---------------|
| attention (n) | اهتمام / انتباه | symbol (n) | رمز |
| social media post (n) | منشور على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي | catchy (adj) | جذاب |
| global problem (n) | مشكلة عالمية | intro. = introduction (n) | مقدمة |
| instructions (n) | تعليمات | recycling (n) | إعادة التدوير |
| respectful (adj) | متسم بالاحترام | littering (n) | إلقاء القمامة |
| honor (n) | شرف / تكريم | included (adj) | مندمج - مُدرج |
| emojis (n) | رموز تعبيرية | gloves (n) | قفازات |



Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

gloves - global - recycling - project - attention

1. Pollution is a problem.
2. Doctors must wear in hospitals.
3. We can protect the environment by wastes.
4. The New Suez Canal is a great

Lesson 5 ▶ SB pages 96 & 97

| | | | |
|----------------|--------|------------|------|
| share (d) (v) | بشارك | planet (n) | كوكب |
| difference (n) | اختلاف | poster (n) | ملصق |

Lesson 6 ▶ SB pages 98 & 99

المفردات اللغوية المساعدة لأداء ال «Project»

| | | | |
|------------------|-------------|------------|---------------|
| design (ed) (v) | يصمم | slogan (n) | شعار |
| explain (ed) (v) | يفسر / يشرح | title (n) | عنوان [رئيسي] |

Vocabulary Study

► Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

| الكلمة Word | المترادف Synonym | المضاد Antonym / Opposite |
|---------------------|-------------------------|----------------------------------|
| show يكشف / يوضح | reveal | hide يخفي |
| save يحفظ / يوفر | keep | waste يهدر |
| add يضيف | increase | reduce يقلل |



General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 keep → (inf + ing) = go on

يستمر في عمل شيء

► **SB** I want to **keep** trying. I can't give up.

2 plant - planet

* plant (n) (v)

نبات / - يزرع

► You should **plant** more trees to help the environment .

*Planet (n)

كوكب

► The Earth is the **planet** where we live.

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| التعبيرات Expressions | | | |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------|-----------------|-----------------------|
| start with a catchy intro. | ابدأ بمقدمة جاذبة | Do's and Don'ts | الضرورات والمحظورات |
| feel proud | يشعر بالفخر | Stop littering! | توقف عن إلقاء القمامة |
| make posters | يقوم بإعداد ملصقات | catch attention | يجذب الانتباه |
| feel included | يشعر بالاحتواء / الاندماج | make sure | يتأكد |
| take responsibility | يتولى المسؤولية | | |
| حروف الجر Prepositions | | | |
| pick up trash | يجمع القمامة | a list of | قائمة من |
| set of | مجموعة من | | |

Exercise on Vocabulary

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

► Key vocabulary

- It's our to keep our town clean.
a. pollution b. environment c. kindness d. responsibility
- Social help us share ideas quickly.
a. pets b. media c. actions d. posters
- We can use bins for bottles and paper.
a. responsibility b. recycling c. care d. global
- The boy helped an old man. He is
a. unkind b. lazy c. respectful d. mean
- The lion is a for courage.
a. recipe b. symbol c. house d. club

SB Exercises

- SB** Being a global citizen means about others.
a. helping b. caring c. trying d. showing
- SB** We all one planet.
a. say b. share c. catch d. add
- SB** Small can make a big difference in our community.
a. sentences b. actions c. symbols d. pictures

EI-Moasser Exercises

- Let's make a about keeping the school clean.
a. pet b. planet c. poster d. plant
- We clean the park to help the
a. environment b. recycling c. poster d. kindness
- Let's do a school about lovely cats.
a. pet b. planet c. project d. citizen
- We need to air pollution.
a. reduce b. increase c. feed d. help

► **Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions**

13. Please, pick trash after lunch.

- a. of b. up c. down d. on

14. I want to keep to solve the puzzle.

- a. tries b. tried c. trying d. try

15. My little brother included when we play with him.

- a. shares b. picks c. feels d. cares

16. I always proud when I solve a problem.

- a. feel b. fail c. feed d. fill

II Skills

1. Reading and Listening

Reading

للمزيد من إتقان
المهارات اللغوية
كراسة المعاصر
للمهارات اللغوية

• on Lesson 5 SB page 96

Are You a Global Citizen ?

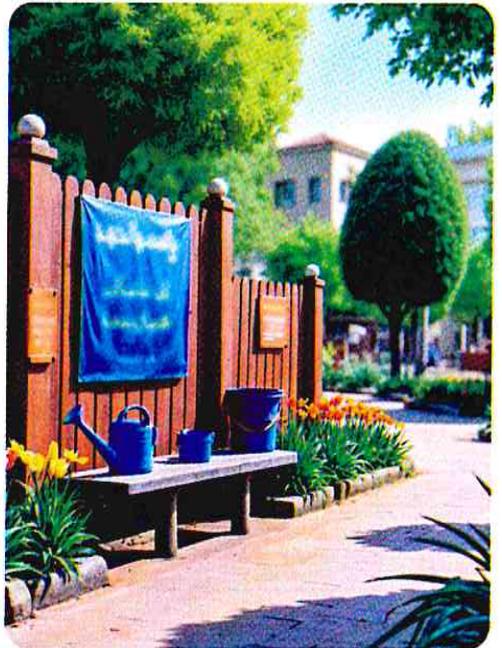


user name

10 minutes ago



Being a global citizen means caring about others and helping the community. Last month, my school started a "Clean Up the Park" project. Students and teachers picked up trash and planted flowers. I felt proud to help my community. We also made posters to teach people about recycling. I learned that we all share one planet, and small actions can make a big difference. A global citizen must show respect take, responsibility, and help others. I want to keep doing more to help the environment and people in need. Let's build a world where everyone feels included.



50

8 comments

10 shares

Like



Comment

Share

2. Writing

A social media post

To write a social media post :

عند كتابة منشور على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي

▶ Start with a catchy intro.

(Say something interesting, funny or exciting to catch attention.)

ابدأ بمقدمة مشوقة تجذب الانتباه. [قم بكتابة شيء شيق، مضحك أو مثير لجذب الانتباه].

▶ Use clear and short sentences.

استخدم جملًا واضحة وقصيرة.

▶ Use emojis and symbols.

(Emojis can add fun and feeling, but don't use too many.)

استخدم رموز تعبيرية [يمكن أن تضيف الرموز التعبيرية شعور بالمتعة ولكن لا تستخدم الكثير منها].

▶ Be positive and kind.

(Be respectful. Think before you post.)

كن إيجابيًا وعطوفًا. [كن محترمًا. فكر جيدًا قبل النشر].

▶ Check your post.

(Make sure your spelling and grammar are correct.)

قم بمراجعة المنشور. [تأكد من أن الهجاء والقواعد اللغوية صحيحة].



Pop Quiz on Writing

• Write a social media post of (80-100) words about being a global citizen.

اكتب منشور من [٨٠ - ١٠٠] كلمة عن المواطن العالمي.



user name

10 minutes ago



50

10 shares



Like



Comment



Share

Punctuation Marks

Practice

• Use the correct punctuation marks in the following sentences :

1. do you have a pet

.....

2. what a wonderful picture

.....

3. i studied english arabic and history

.....

4. let s build a better world for the future

.....

General Exercises



On Lessons 5 & 6

التقييمات اليومية
والأسبوعية والشهرية
فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب].

- We have a global responsibility to care for
a. Egypt b. the Earth c. Africa d. our city
- Pollution and climate change aren't problems
a. local b. international c. global d. important
- Students can take an action by reducing
a. electricity b. money c. waste d. trees
- It's to work together.
a. unfair b. strange c. dangerous d. important

2 Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

- We show for nature by planting trees.
a. risk b. danger c. respect d. invention
- When she joined the team, she felt
a. included b. rejected c. unfair d. unkind

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

water - responsible - rubbish - wisely - actions

Everyone on Earth shares the same sky, water, and land. That's why global responsibility is important. It means thinking about how your (1) affect others. If we waste (2) or pollute the air, people in other parts of the world also suffer. We can be responsible by using resources (3) treating others fairly, and taking care of the environment. The world needs (4) people to make a better future.

4 Write a social media post of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

"The importance of following rules"

.....
.....
.....

Review



on unit 6

https://t.me/G5_Y5

| Vocabulary | Language | Speaking |
|---|---|---|
| Lessons 1 & 2 global citizen nature volunteer improve peace duty protect qualities community citizenship | <p>1 must + inf. يجب أن must, mustn't تستخدم (must) بمعنى (يجب أن) للتعبير عن الضرورة لفعل شيء ما. ex. - You must arrive on time.</p> <p>2 mustn't + inf. يجب ألا تستخدم (mustn't) بمعنى (يجب ألا) للتعبير عن عدم الضرورة (الصنع أو الحظر) لفعل شيء ما. ex. - You mustn't talk in the library.</p> <p>3 We use the infinitive without "to" after must/mustn't: (must / mustn't) بعد (to) ex. - You must listen to the teacher. - You mustn't climb the pyramids.</p> <p>4 Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام</p> <p>(A) Yes/No question : Must + subject + الفاعل + inf. + مصدر الفعل ex. Must I park here? - Yes, you must. - No, you mustn't.</p> <p>(B) Wh-question: Question word + must + subject + inf. + مصدر الفعل كلمة استفهام ex. What must I do to my parents? - You must obey them.</p> | <p>Asking and answering questions about a good citizen.</p> <p>A: What makes a good citizen? B: A good citizen should be helpful, responsible and volunteering.</p> <p>A: What qualities should a good citizen have? B: He should be kind, respectful, helpful and responsible fair.</p> |
| Lesson 3 ocean responsibility participate diagrams impact beauty convince fever | | |
| Lessons 5 & 6 global problem gloves recycling littering honor symbol | | |

1 Reading Comprehension

Understand reference

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مهارة [تحديد ما تشير إليه الكلمة في النص].



اقرأ و قم بالإجابة.

▶ Read the following and answer the questions :

At our school, we believe every student is part of a community and is a citizen of the world. As global citizens, we must follow each rule and law to keep everyone safe and happy. We mustn't be unkind or unfair to others. Instead, we should be kind and help each other every day.

To protect our planet, we must keep our school clean and save water and electricity. We mustn't waste food or throw rubbish on the ground. We also must encourage students to volunteer to help others in need and to protect animals and nature.

- The underlined pronoun "we" refers to
- global citizens
 - happy citizens
 - bad citizens
 - poor citizens



التحدي قد تجد صعوبة في تحديد ما تشير إليه الكلمة في النص.



مفتاح الحل عند قراءة الفقرة حول تحديد الحدث أو الشخص أو المكان الذي تشير إليه الكلمة أو الضمير.

2

Speaking

Making a poster on a global problem

يختبر سؤال المحادثة (dialog) قدرتك للتعبير عن مواقف معينة.



اقرأ و قم بالإجابة.

▶ Complete the following dialog :

Ammar and Fares are making a poster for the science class.

Ammar : How can we make our poster, Fares?

Fares : First, let's choose a (1) problem.

Ammar : I think pollution is a global problem.

(2) should we write on the poster?

Fares : We should give people advice.

Ammar : Can (3) give me an example?

Fares : We can write "Recycle to Save the World".

Ammar : Okay. We can add some colorful (4) , too.



التحدي تريد السؤال عن [اعداد ملصق عن مشكلة عالمية] وتجد صعوبة في تكوين أسئلة والرد عليها.



مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من الأسئلة والردود عن الموضوع.

General Exercises on unit 6

التقييمات اليومية
والأسبوعية والشهرية
في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions :

استمع إلى معلمك واجب عن الاسئلة [نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب]

1. Why should we keep the sea safe ?

.....

2. What activity can we participate in for beaches ?

.....

3. What should we do at home to help ?

.....

4. What will happen if we all work together ?

.....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Parents' is to care for and support their children.

- a. fair b. responsibility c. nature d. land

2. To is to make something better.

- a. volunteer b. encourage c. improve d. treat

3. They new products from plastic bottles.

- a. making b. make c. makes d. to make

4. What is he to help the community?

- a. do b. does c. doing d. did

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

making - building - safe - leader - difference

In our school, we learn to solve problems together and think about how we can improve our world. We must remember that even small actions can make a big

(1) We can plant trees, share with others, and help keep our community

(2) and clean. At our school, you are not just a student; you are a young

(3) who can change the world by (4) good choices and caring

for others.

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

My friend Hani is a great global citizen. He respects people from all cultures and loves learning about the world. Last week, he joined a community project to plant trees in our town. Hani says, "Everyone can contribute to a better planet." He also collects clothes to give to people in need. His actions show how to care for others and the environment. Hani inspires me to be a global citizen, too. I want to respect others and help my community, just like him, to make the world a better place.

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Hani loves learning about the
 a. community b. environment c. world d. cultures
- The opposite of the underlined word "inspires" is
 a. encourages b. respects c. discourages d. gives

b. Answer the following questions :

3. How does Hani help people in need?

.....

4. Give a suitable title to the text.

.....

5. What does the underlined word "His" refer to?

.....

6. How do we know that Hani loves the environment?

.....

5 Find the mistakes in the following and correct them :

- You must park here. You are not allowed. (.....)
- They travel to Aswan last week. (.....)
- You must arrived early; it is necessary. (.....)
- He always goes to school on foot when he was young. (.....)

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

- She [not give] up. She is a strong leader.
- We must [listens] to each positive idea.
- How did you [treats] your students?
- [Because] it was hot, I went shopping.

7 Complete the following dialog :

Seif encourages Ayman to join to the beach clean-up.

Ayman : Are you going to the beach clean-up this weekend?

Seif : (1)

Ayman : Why not ? It's sad how dirty some beaches are.

Seif : I agree. (2)

Ayman : Great ! (3)

Seif : I'll be there at 7 in the morning.

Ayman : (4)

Seif : We will need gloves and big bags only.

► **Story** The Dream Team (chapter three)

8 a. Read and complete the sentences with the correct words from the box.

teamwork - prize - winners

1. Though another team won first, Sara and her friends didn't feel sad.
2. You showed honesty, cooperation, and

b. Answer the following questions:

1. **SB** Who are the Dream Team ?

.....

2. Why are values like honesty and cooperation important ?

.....

9 Write a social media post of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Teamwork"

.....

.....

.....

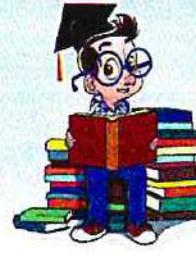
.....

.....

.....

.....

Review 2



SB pages 101 : 103

Vocabulary

Lesson 1 ► SB pages 101 & 102

| | | | |
|--------------------|---------------------|----------------------|---------------|
| third - generation | من الجيل الثالث | injury | إصابة |
| historical | تاريخي | opportunities | فرص |
| coastal village | قرية ساحلية | passion | شغف / حمس |
| aim to | تهدف إلى | consequences | نتائج - عواقب |
| sandy beaches | شواطئ رملية | art | فن |
| luxury resorts | منتجعات سياحية فخمة | decision | قرار |
| international | دولي - عالمي | tourism | سياحة |
| space station | محطة فضائية | culture centers | مراكز ثقافية |
| ignore | يتجاهل | training | تدريب |
| urban | مدني / حضري | economy | اقتصاد |
| advanced | متطورة | residential | سكني |
| attract | يجذب | business centers | مراكز تجارية |
| combine | يدمج - يمزج | unique locations | مواقع متميزة |
| compete | ينافس | tourist destinations | وجهات سياحية |
| consider | يعتبر - يفكر | progress | تقدم |
| marvelous | رائع | | |

Lesson 2 ► SB pages 102 & 103

| | | | |
|---------------|---------------------|----------------|---------------|
| smart choice | اختيار ذكي | personal goals | أهداف شخصية |
| available | متاح | absolutely | مطلقًا |
| options | اختيارات | situation | موقف |
| irresponsible | غير مسئول | grandparents | اجداد |
| step | خطوة | major | رئيسي |
| future career | حياة معينه مستقبلية | contribution | مساهمة |
| failure | فشل | inspire | يلهم / يشجع |
| education | تعليم | talent | موهبة |
| affect | يؤثر | marine animals | حيوانات بحرية |
| fairness | عدل | climate change | تغير المناخ |



Listening

• on Lesson 1 SB page 101

New Alamein is a **marvelous**⁽¹⁾ city on the North Coast of Egypt. It is one of the first **fourth-generation**⁽²⁾ cities in the country, designed with **advanced technology**⁽³⁾ and smart **urban planning**⁽⁴⁾. The city has a strong impact on tourism and the **economy**⁽⁵⁾ because it attracts thousands of visitors every year. New Alamein has beautiful sandy beaches, **luxury resorts**⁽⁶⁾, international restaurants, **cultural centers**⁽⁷⁾ that show Egypt's rich history. It also includes modern **residential areas**⁽⁸⁾ business centers, and universities, which **combine**⁽⁹⁾ tourism, education, and work in one amazing place, with its modern services and unique location. New Alamein can **compete**⁽¹⁰⁾ with the most famous cities and tourist destinations in the world. Many people consider it a symbol of **progress**⁽¹¹⁾ and a bright future for Egypt.

| | | | | | |
|-----------------|------------|----------------|----------------------|---------------------|------------------|
| (6) منتجات فخمة | (5) اقتصاد | (4) تخطيط حضري | (3) تكنولوجيا متطورة | (2) من الجيل الرابع | (1) رائع |
| | (11) تقدم | (10) ينافس | (9) يمزج / يخلط | (8) مناطق سكنية | (7) مراكز ثقافية |

• Lesson 2 SB page 102

Planning your future **career**⁽¹⁾ starts with knowing your **talents**⁽²⁾ and **interests**⁽³⁾. It's okay to try different things and learn from **failure**⁽⁴⁾. Education and training help you build the skills you need.

Besides **personal goals**,⁽⁵⁾ it's also important to be a global citizen. This means thinking about how your actions affect the world. For example, reducing plastic helps protect oceans and **marine animals**⁽⁶⁾. Being a global citizen also means respecting others, and helping with global problems like climate change. Making smart, responsible **choices**⁽⁷⁾ now can help create a better future for everyone.

| | | | |
|---------|--------------|-------------------|-----------------|
| (4) فشل | (3) اهتمامات | (2) مواهب | (1) حياة مهينة |
| | (7) اختيارات | (6) حيوانات بحرية | (5) اهداف شخصية |

General Exercises



On Review 2

Lesson 1

1 Listen and answer the following:

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- New Alamein City is described as a
 - third-generation city
 - fourth-generation city
 - historical town
 - small coastal village
- The city aims to with the most famous tourist destinations.
 - compete
 - lose
 - damage
 - forget
- Which of the following is NOT mentioned as part of the city's facilities?
 - Sandy beaches
 - Luxury resorts
 - A space station
 - International restaurants

B. Listen again and answer the following questions:

- Why does New Alamein have a strong impact on tourism?
- What do the culture centers show in New Alamein?

2 Complete the sentences with words from the list below.

ignore – impact – injury – opportunities – passion – reduce – consequences

- It's important to think about the of your actions before you choose.
- She has a real for art; she paints every day.
- We need to the amount of waste we produce.
- His on the local community was very positive.
- Learning new skills can open up many
- He received an while playing football yesterday.
- Don't the advice of your parents; they know what's best.

3 Read the following passage and answer the questions below.

Sara had to decide between joining a beach cleanup or staying home to relax. It was a hard decision. She knew her friends were going, and they were going to post pictures online. But she also wanted to be responsible and do something positive.

In the end, Sara chose to join. She felt proud and even made new friends. Her small action made a big impact.

A. Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

1. What was Sara's problem?
a. Going shopping or reading b. Cleaning the beach or relaxing at home
c. Posting pictures or studying d. Going to school or helping her friend
2. What influenced Sara's final choice?
a. The weather b. Her new friends
c. Her sense of responsibility d. A school project
3. What was the result of Sara's choice?
a. She felt sad b. She stayed home
c. She made no impact d. She felt proud and made friends

B. Answer the following questions.

4. Why was it difficult for Sara to make a decision?
5. What lesson can we learn from Sara's story?

4 Writing an Email

Write an email of (80-100) words to a friend about your dream job.

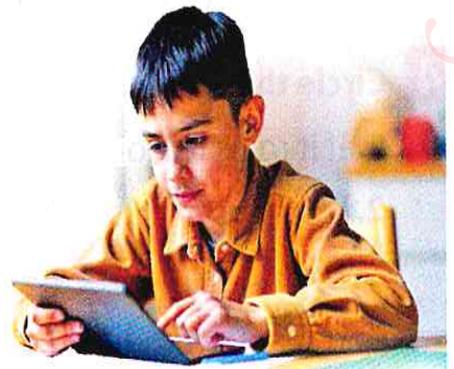
You can include:

What job you want

Why you chose it

What skills or training you'll need

Your future plans



Lesson 2

1 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

impact – smart – make – negative – skill

Making decisions is an important skill we all need. To make a(1) choice, we need to study the available options carefully. Focusing on the positive or (2) side only, will lead to an irresponsible decision. If you can't (3) a decision on your own, ask an adult: your parents, teacher for help. Keep in your mind that every smart choice you make has an (4) on your life.

2 Listen and answer the questions below.

1. What is the first step in planning your future career?
2. What does it mean to be a global citizen?
3. How can reducing plastic help the environment?

3 Complete the dialog between Maya and Samir.

Maya: I heard about the "Let's Make a Difference" project. Are you going to participate?

Samir: Yes, I am! I think it's a great opportunity to volunteer and help the community.

Maya: That's (1) ! I'd love to be a part of it, too.

Samir: Absolutely! And it's important to protect endangered animals.

Maya: I agree. If we don't act now, the consequences will be negative.

Samir: You're right. We (2) start now.

Maya: That's true. Every little action helps to improve the situation.

Samir: Exactly! We must all do our part.

4 Circle the correct answer.

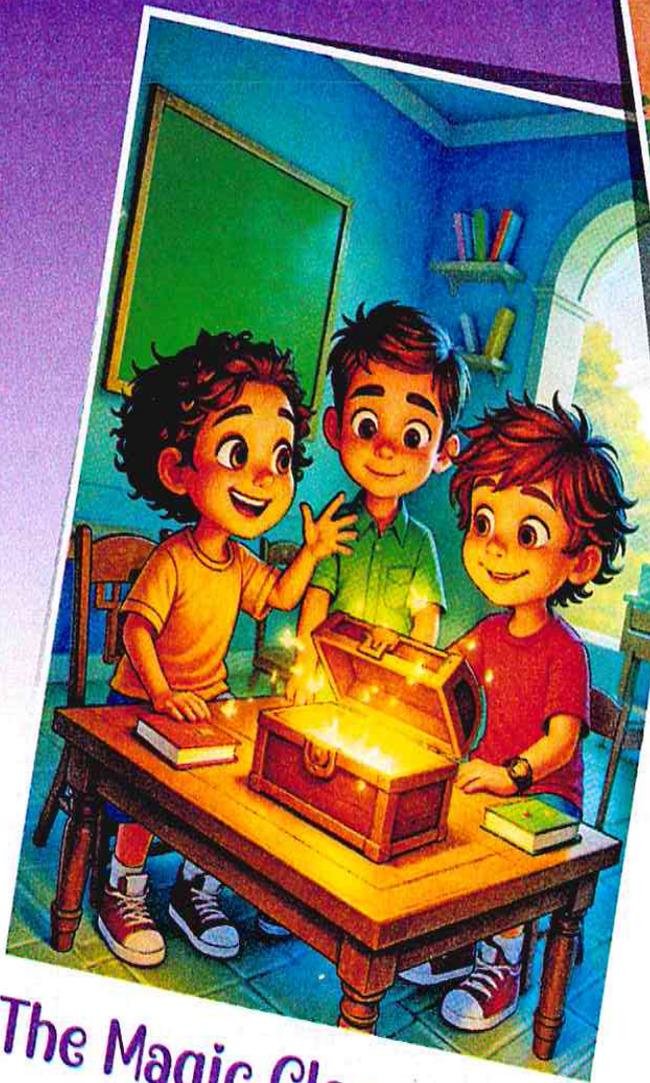
1. If it rains tomorrow, we(**will stay / stay**) indoors.
2. You (**must / mustn't**) forget your passport if you want to travel.
3. They (**are going to visit / visit**) their grandparents next month.
4. You (**must / mustn't**) make noise in the library.
5. What (**do you do / are you doing**) right now?
6. If you (**study / studies**) hard, you will pass the exam.

5 Writing a Short Biography

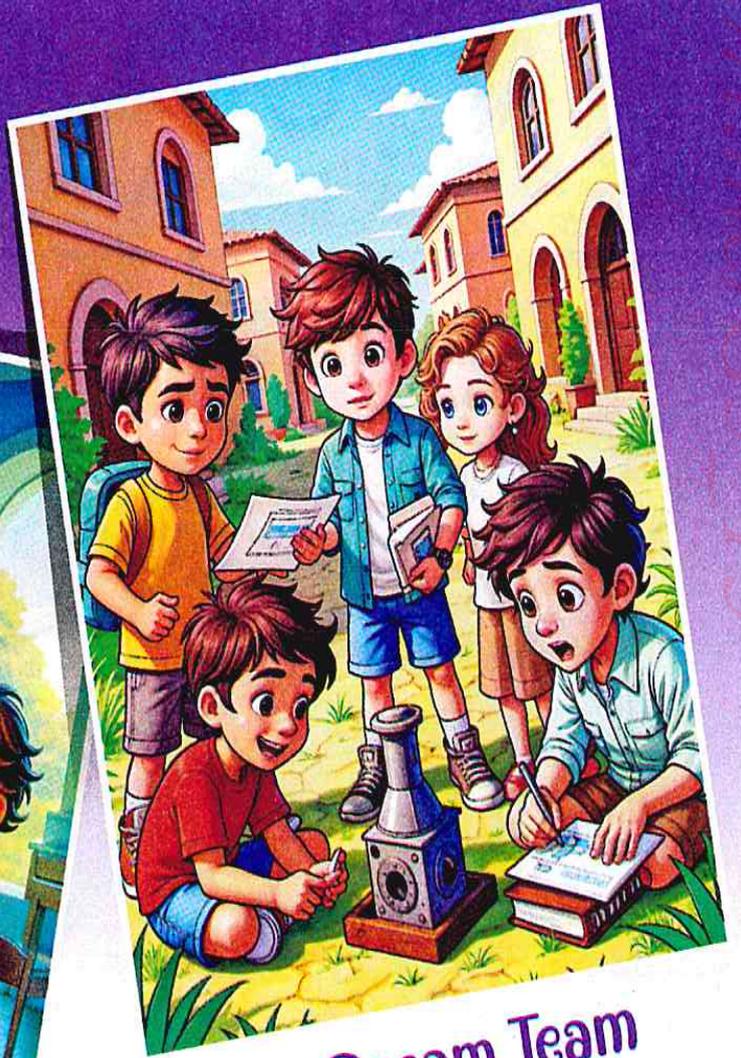
Choose a person who has made a significant positive impact on your life. Write a biography of (80-100) words. You can use the following ideas:

- Their name and what they are known for.
- A brief description of their background and their passion.
- Their major achievements.
- How they encourage others or inspire change.

The Story



The Magic Classroom



The Dream Team



1. The Magic Classroom

1. Story Map

تنويه
ترجمة القصة
في نهاية الكتاب

خريطة القصة

The main characters الشخصيات الرئيسية

Mr. Adam



- He is the children's teacher who introduces them to the Magic Classroom. He teaches them that success comes from values like teamwork and responsibility. In the end, he reveals that the real magic lies in the values the children showed.

Sara



- Sara is eager to learn and always thinks about the group. She promotes teamwork and respect by encouraging everyone to help each other. She believes they can solve every challenge by working together.

Omar



- Omar feels shy and nervous at times but learns to be brave. With Zain's support, he finds the courage to face challenges like the invisible bridge. He realizes that unity and friendship give him strength.

Zain



- Zain is calm, kind, and supportive of his teammates. He motivates Omar and believes in the group's success. He values ambition, curiosity, and respect within the team.

The setting (place and time) المكان والزمان

Places الأماكن

- ▶ A cheerful village school.
- ▶ The Magic Classroom.
- ▶ The final room with the crystal stand.

Time الوقت

- ▶ A general time, described with phrases like "One day" and "next week".

https://t.me/G5_Y5



SB Pages 20 & 21

Chapter

1

► The First Challenge

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|--------------------|---------------|---------------------|--------------|
| glowing (adj) | متلألأ | collaborate (d) (v) | يتعاونون |
| cheerful (adj) | مرح / مبتهج | involve (d) (v) | يتضمن / يشمل |
| eager (adj) | متحمس / متلهف | magic (adj) | سحري |
| responsibility (n) | مسؤولية | mysteries (n) | ألغاز |
| challenge (n) | تحدي | calm (adj) | هادئ |
| positive (adj) | إيجابي | announcement (n) | اعلان |
| curious (adj) | شغوف / مهتم | | |

Extra Vocabulary

| | | | |
|-------------------|--------------|------------------|-------------|
| nervous (adj) | عصبى / متوتر | discover (d) (v) | يكتشف |
| shy (adj) | خجول | enter (ed) (v) | يدخل |
| encourage (d) (v) | يشجع | floating puzzles | ألغاز عائمة |
| village school | مدرسة قروية | appear (ed) (v) | يظهر |
| shining (adj) | لامع | bright (adj) | لامع / ساطع |
| solve (d) (v) | يحل | succeed (ed) (v) | ينجح |
| team (n) | فريق | ready (adj) | جاهز |
| unlock (ed) (v) | يفتح / يفك | excited (adj) | متحمس |
| smile (d) (v) | يتسمم | carefully (adv) | بحذر |

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

| | | |
|--------------------|--|-------------|
| cheerful | happy and positive person | مرح / مبتهج |
| curious | feeling interested in learning and knowing | شغوف / مهتم |
| collaborate | to work with another person or a group of people | يتعاونون |
| challenge | something that is difficult and tests someone's ability to compete | تحدي |



Pop Quiz

On Vocabulary تدريب لإتقان المفردات اللغوية للقصة المقررة

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- The person is always happy and positive person.
a. angry b. cheerful c. nervous d. late
- To means to work with another person or a group of people.
a. think b. fight c. discover d. collaborate
- How did the children manage to get over the ?
a. challenge b. rest c. prize d. break
- If you are before a test, you should try to relax and study.
a. calm b. quiet c. nervous d. organized
- The word "....." has the same meaning as "open".
a. lock b. look c. unlock d. close

II

Main Points on chapter 1

The first challenge

- Children loved discovering new things in a **cheerful**⁽¹⁾ village school.
- Their teacher, Mr. Adam, advised them to work **together**⁽²⁾ to enter the magic classroom.
- The children were **curious**⁽³⁾ and excited.
- They walked through a **glowing door**⁽⁴⁾ and found themselves among floating **puzzles**⁽⁵⁾, shining books and **magical clues**⁽⁶⁾.
- Sara was **eager to**⁽⁷⁾ learn, but Omar felt **shy**⁽⁸⁾ and nervous.
- Their first challenge was a locked box, but they shared ideas and solved the puzzle by helping each other.

(1) مرح / مبتهج

(2) معاً

(3) شغوف / مهتم

(4) باب متوهج

(5) الفاز

(6) حلول سحرية

(7) شغوف بـ

(8) خجول



Text of chapter 1

The First Challenge

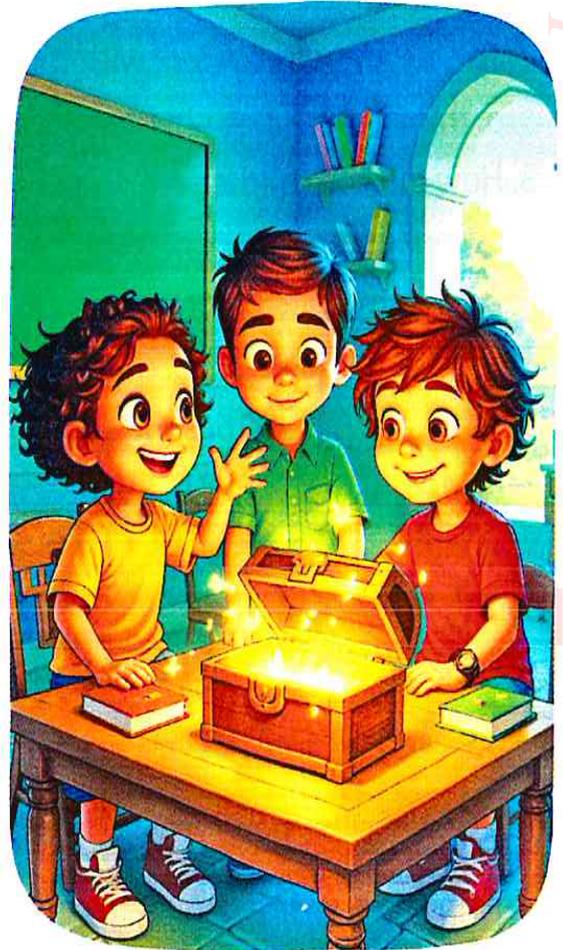
In a cheerful village school, the children loved discovering new things. One day, their teacher, Mr. Adam, made an exciting **announcement**⁽¹⁾. "Next week, we will enter the Magic Classroom," he said. "To succeed, you need to show **responsibility**⁽²⁾ and work together."

The children were curious and excited. When the day came, they walked through a glowing door and found themselves in a room filled with **floating puzzles**⁽³⁾, shining books, and magical **clues**⁽⁴⁾. On the wall, a message read: "Only those who collaborate and stay curious can unlock the **mysteries**⁽⁵⁾."

Sara, who was always eager to learn, said, "Let's think carefully and help each other."

Omar, who sometimes felt shy, looked nervous. Zain, calm and kind, **encouraged**⁽⁶⁾ him, "We'll do it together."

Their first challenge was a locked box. They shared ideas and solved the challenge by working as a team. As the box clicked open, a bright light appeared, and a new challenge was waiting. They smiled, ready for **whatever**⁽⁷⁾ came next.



| | | | |
|------------|-------------|-----------------|----------|
| (1) إعلان | (2) مسئولية | (3) أنغاز عائمة | (4) حلول |
| (5) الفغاز | (6) شجع | (7) مهما | |



Questions and answers

on Chapter One

1 The questions and their answers

1. **SB** What did the children love doing in the village school?

- They loved discovering new things.

١. ماذا كان الاطفال يحبون فعله في المدرسة القروية ؟
- كانوا يحبون اكتشاف اشياء جديدة.

2. **SB** Who was always eager to learn?

- Sara.

٢. من كان شغوف دائما للتعلم ؟
- سارة.

3. What did the children need to succeed?

-They needed to show responsibility and work together.

٣. ماذا احتاج الأطفال للنجاح ؟

- احتاجوا أن يظهروا تحمل المسؤولية والعمل معا.

4. Where was the message?

- On the wall.

٤. اين كانت الرسالة ؟
- على الحائط.

5. Who encouraged Omar?

-Zain.

٥. من قام بتشجيع عمر ؟
- زين.

6. What was the first challenge?

- A locked box.

٦. ماذا كان أول تحدى ؟
- صندوق مغلق.

7. How did the children solve the challenge?

-By working as a team.

٧. كيف قام الأطفال بحل التحدى ؟
- من خلال العمل كفريق.

2 Critical thinking questions and suggested answers

أسئلة تفكير نقدي وإجاباتها المقترحة

1. How do you think the children felt when the box finally opened?

-They felt very happy and proud of themselves.

١. كيف شعر الأطفال عندما فتح الصندوق فى النهاية فى رأيك ؟
- شعروا بالسعادة الغامرة والفخر بأنفسهم.

2. Do you think the children will succeed in the next challenge? Why / Why not?

-Yes, they will. Because they learned to collaborate.

٢. هل تعتقد أن الأطفال سوف ينجحوا فى التحدى القادم ؟
- نعم ، لأنهم قد تعلموا أن يتعاونوا.

3. **SB** Why do you think children were curious and excited about the Magic Classroom?

- I think because it was new, fun and full of surprises.

٣. لماذا تعتقد أن الأطفال كانوا فضوليين ومتحمسين بشأن الفصل السحري ؟

4. **SB** Why do you think sharing ideas is useful?

-Because it helps us learn from each other.

٤. لماذا تعتقد أن مشاركة الأفكار شئ مفيد ؟
- لأنها تساعدنا فى التعلم من بعضنا البعض.

4 Read and complete the sentences with the correct words from the box :

collaborate - puzzles - clues - curious - challenge

1. The children were and excited to enter the Magic Classroom.
2. They walked through a glowing door into a room filled with floating
3. The room also contained shining books and magical
4. The message read only who can unlock the mysteries.

5 Who said this?

1. "Next week, we will enter the Magic Classroom."
.....
2. "We'll do it together."
.....
3. "Let's think carefully and help each other."
.....
4. "To succeed, you need to show responsibility and work together."
.....

https://t.me/G5_Y5



SB Pages 34 & 35

Chapter

2

► The Power Of Unity

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---------------------|---------------|-----------------------|----------------------|
| invisible (adj) | غير مرئي | courage (n) | شجاعة |
| bridge (n) | جسر / كوبري | ambition (n) | طموح |
| beneath (prep) | تحت / أسفل | respect (ed) (v), (n) | يحترم / احترام |
| determination (n) | عزيمة / إصرار | breath (n) | نفس |
| success (n) | نجاح | hesitate (d) (v) | يتردد |
| step (ped) (v), (n) | خطوة / خطوة | unity (n) | وحدة / تماسك / اتحاد |
| whisper (ed) (v) | همس | teamwork (n) | العمل الجماعي |

Extra Vocabulary

| | | | |
|-------------------|----------------------|-----------------|---------------|
| brave (adj) | شجاع | cross (ed) (v) | يعبر |
| cheer (ed) (v) | يهتف - يهلل | deep (adj) | عميق |
| refuse (d) (v) | يرفض | scared (adj) | خائف |
| clap (ped) (v) | يُصفق | remind (ed) (v) | يُذكر |
| sign (n) | لافتة / علامة | golden (adj) | ذهبي |
| alone (adj) | وحيد - بمفرده | laugh (ed) (v) | يضحك |
| believe (d) (v) | يصدق - يعتقد | required (edj) | مطلوب |
| give up | يستسلم | quality (n) | صفه / سمة |
| care (d) (v), (n) | برعى - يعتنى / عناية | instantly (adv) | فورًا / حالًا |
| proud (adj) | فخور | enter (ed) (v) | يدخل |

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

| | | |
|------------------|-------------------------------------|----------|
| invisible | that can't be seen | غير مرئي |
| respect | showing care and kindness to others | يحترم |
| courage | being confident, not afraid | الشجاعة |
| ambition | a strong desire to achieve | طموح |



Pop Quiz

On Vocabulary

تدريب لإتقان المفردات اللغوية للقصة المقررة

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. They crossed the to reach the other side of the river.
a. sign b. stone c. door d. bridge
2. You should your friends' ideas.
a. laugh at b. give up c. respect d. clap
3. Take a deep before jumping in the water.
a. breath b. sign c. voice d. bridge
4. His problem is that he to make the right decision.
a. hesitates b. respects c. reminds d. thinks
5. I can't hear your voice when you
a. cheer b. whisper c. shout d. care

II

Main Points on chapter 2

The power of unity

1. This is the next time in the magic classroom and students are in front of an **invisible**⁽¹⁾ bridge.
2. Only students with respect, ambition and **courage**⁽²⁾ can cross.
3. Students tried to know the meaning of each word to achieve the task.
4. Respect means caring for each other, **ambition**⁽³⁾ means believing in success; courage means trying again and again even when they're scared.
5. **Determination**⁽⁴⁾ opens every door. Never **give up**⁽⁵⁾.

(1) غير مرئي

(2) الشجاعة

(3) الطموح

(4) عزم / اصرار

(5) يستسلم



Text of chapter 2

The power of unity

The next time the students entered, the Magic Classroom was more difficult. In front of the children was an **invisible**⁽¹⁾ bridge. A glowing sign read: "Only those with **respect**⁽²⁾, ambition, and courage can cross."

Sara thought for a moment. "Respect means we listen and care for each other."

Zain added, "**Ambition**⁽³⁾ means we believe in our success."

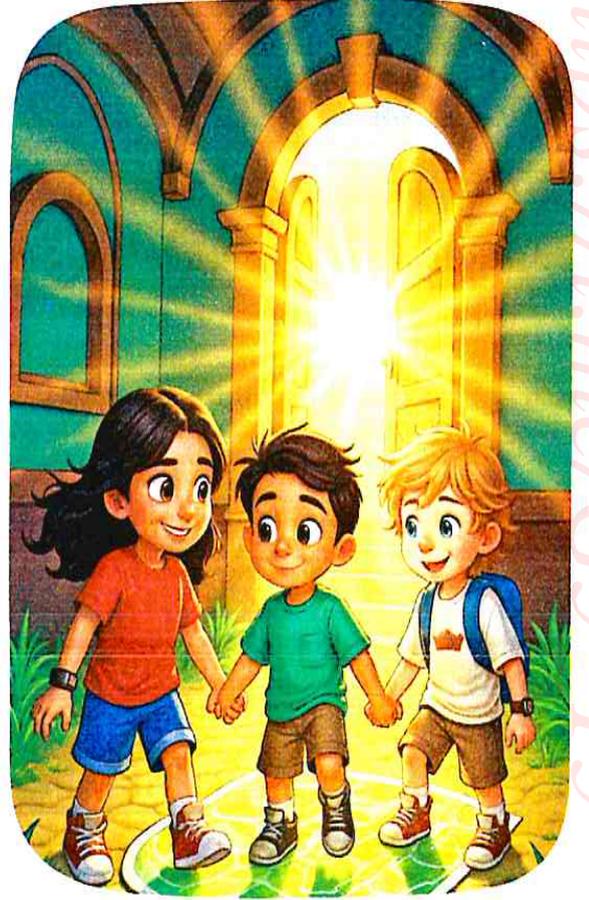
Omar took a deep **breath**⁽⁴⁾, "Courage means we try even when we are scared."

They stepped onto the invisible bridge, holding hands and encouraging one another. Every kind word they spoke and every brave step they took made the bridge appear slowly **beneath**⁽⁵⁾ their feet. When Omar **hesitated**⁽⁶⁾, his friends cheered him on, reminding him he wasn't alone.

At the end of the bridge, a golden door appeared with a message: "**Determination**⁽⁷⁾ opens every door. Never give up."

The team tried many ideas but nothing worked. Hours passed. They refused to quit. Finally, Omar **whispered**⁽⁸⁾, "Let's sing together. Maybe **unity**⁽⁹⁾ is the key."

They sang, and slowly, the golden door opened. They **clapped**⁽¹⁰⁾ and laughed, proud of their teamwork.



| | | | | |
|--------------|------------|------------|------------|----------------|
| (1) غير مرئي | (2) احترام | (3) الطموح | (4) نفس | (5) أسفل / تحت |
| (6) تردد | (7) مثابرة | (8) همس | (9) الوحدة | (10) صفق |



Questions and answers

on Chapter Two

1 The questions and their answers

1. **SB** What did Sara think about respect?

١. ماذا كان رأى سارة عن الاحترام؟

- She thought it means we listen and care for each other.

- اعتقدت أن الاحترام معناه أن نستمع ونراعى بعضنا البعض.

2. What was the second challenge in the Magic Classroom?

٢. ما هو التحدي الثاني في الفصل السحري؟

- It was an invisible bridge.

- كان التحدي جسراً غير مرئي.

3. What three qualities did the sign mention they needed to cross the bridge?

٣. ما هي الصفات الثلاث التي ذكرت اللافتة أنهم بحاجة إليها لعبور الجسر؟

- Respect, ambition, and courage.

- الاحترام والطموح والشجاعة.

4. What made the invisible bridge appear?

٤. ما الذي جعل الجسر غير المرئي يظهر؟

- Every kind word the children spoke and every brave step they took made it appear.

- كل كلمة طيبة قالها الأطفال وكل خطوة شجاعة قاموا بها، جعلته يظهر.

5. **SB** What did the children find at the end of the bridge?

٥. ماذا وجد الأطفال في نهاية الجسر؟

- They found a golden door with a message on it.

- وجدوا باباً ذهبياً عليه رسالة.

6. What was the message on the golden door?

٦. ما هي الرسالة التي كانت على الباب الذهبي؟

- The message was: "Determination opens every door. Never give up."

- كانت الرسالة: "الإصرار يفتح كل باب. لا تستسلم أبداً."

7. How did the children open the golden door?

٧. كيف فتح الأطفال الباب الذهبي؟

- They sang together showing their unity.

- قاموا بالغناء معاً، مما أظهر وحدتهم.

2 Critical thinking questions and suggested answers

أسئلة تفكير نقدي وإجاباتها المقترحة

1. **SB** How did the kind words help the children?

١. كيف ساعدت الكلمات الطيبة الاطفال؟

- They helped them cross the bridge and complete the second challenge.

- ساعدتهم في عبور الكوبرى والانتهاء من التحدي الثاني.

2. **SB** What message do you think chapter two gives?

٢. ما الرسالة التي تعتقد أن الفصل الثاني يقدمها؟

- Never give up. Determination makes us achieve our goals.

- لا تستسلم ، العزيمة تجعلنا نحقق أهدافنا.

3. How did the team show unity?

٣. كيف اظهر الفريق التماسك فيما بينهما؟

- By holding hands and encouraging each other.

- بتشبيك ايديهم وتشجيعهم لبعضهم البعض.

General Exercises



On Chapter 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. There was a/an bridge in front of the children.
a. golden b. invisible c. high d. scary
2. Ziad thinks means we believe in our success.
a. courage b. respect c. ambition d. honesty
3. The children found a at the end of the bridge.
a. hard puzzle b. golden door c. map d. plan
4. The bridge appeared slowly beneath
a. the pool b. the sea c. their feet d. their plane

2 Answer the following questions :

1. **SB** Who hesitated on the bridge?

.....

2. What did the children do to open the golden door?

.....

3. **SB** "Maybe unity is the key." What do you think this sentence means?

.....

4. What did the children do when the golden door opened?

.....

3 Read and write (T) True or (F) False :

1. **SB** The children crossed the bridge holding their hands.

2. **SB** The sign for the bridge listed "Kindness" as a required quality.

3. **SB** The bridge appeared instantly as they stepped on it.

4. **SB** Unity couldn't help them open the golden door.

4 Read and complete the sentences with the correct words from the box :

ideas - alone - hesitated - holding - bridge

1. The children stepped onto the invisible
2. When Omar on the bridge, his friends cheered him on.
3. Omar's friends reminded him that he wasn't
4. The team tried many, but nothing worked.

5 Who said this?

1. "Respect means we listen and care for each other."

.....

2. "Let's sing together. Maybe unity is the key."

.....

3. "Ambition means we believe in our success."

.....

4. "Courage means we try even when we are scared."

.....

**Master
your skills**

يهدف إلى تنمية
مهارات
اللغة الإنجليزية

 EL-MOASSER





SB Pages 48 & 49

Chapter

3

► The greatest Lessons

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---------------------|-----------------------|---------------|-------------------|
| curiosity (n) | فضول / حب استطلاع | values (n) | قيم |
| grin (ned)(v) | يبتسم [ابتسامة عريضة] | kindness (n) | العطف |
| happiness (n) | السعادة | honesty (n) | الأمانة - الإخلاص |
| promise (d)(v), (n) | يوعد / وعد | nod (ded) (v) | يومي رأسه |

Extra Vocabulary

| | | | |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------|--------------|
| final (adj) | نهائي | treasure (n) | كنز |
| reach (ed) (v) | يصل | warm smile | ابتسامة حارة |
| crystal stand (n) | مسند زجاجي / حامل زجاجي [كريستال] | pride (n) | فخر |
| keen (adj) | متحمس | return (ed) (v) | يعود - يرجع |
| locked (adj) | مغلق / مقفول | | |

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

| | | |
|----------------------|--|-----------------------|
| determination | not giving up even when things are hard | نية / عزم |
| grin | to smile | يبتسم [ابتسامة عريضة] |
| curious | to be keen to learn or know more about something | شغوف / مهتم |
| nod | to move the head up and down to show agreement | يهز رأسه / يومي |

Pop Quiz

On Vocabulary تدريب لإتقان المفردات اللغوية للقصة المقررة

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :
 - Honesty is an important in life.

| | | | |
|---------|---------|----------|----------|
| a. fair | b. risk | c. value | d. coach |
|---------|---------|----------|----------|
 - Curious students are always to explore new things.

| | | | |
|----------|----------|---------|---------|
| a. eager | b. bored | c. kind | d. lazy |
|----------|----------|---------|---------|

3. When you to do something, don't forget it.

- a. appear b. promise c. grin d. reach

4. The child when he sees his best friends.

- a. grins b. cries c. hides d. sleeps

5. We thanked our teacher for his to us.

- a. curiosity b. happiness c. location d. kindness

II

Main Points on chapter 3

The Greatest Lessons

1. The children found a glowing book on a crystal **stand**⁽¹⁾ inside the final room.
2. Mr. Adam appeared smiling after they **completed**⁽²⁾ the Magic Classroom.
3. Mr. Adam opened the magical book and glowing words appeared.
4. Sara said they solved every problem by working together respecting each other, and staying **curious**⁽³⁾.
5. Omar smiled saying that he had **courage**⁽⁴⁾ because his friends believed in him.
6. Mr. Adam said that the children also showed **honesty**⁽⁵⁾.
7. The children returned to their classroom happily.
8. The children **promised**⁽⁶⁾ to use these **values**⁽⁷⁾ in their life.
9. The greatest lessons the children had were about **kindness**⁽⁸⁾ respect and never giving up.

(1) مسند - حامل

(2) أكمل - انتهى

(3) فضولي - محب للاستطلاع

(4) شجاعة

(5) الامانة

(6) وعد

(7) قيم

(8) العطف



Text of chapter 3

• The Greatest Lessons

Inside the final room, the children found a glowing book on a crystal stand. Mr. Adam appeared with a warm smile. "You have completed the Magic Classroom," he said. "But remember, the real magic is not in the puzzles, it is in the **values**⁽¹⁾ you showed."

He opened the magical book, and glowing words appeared: "Responsibility. **Curiosity**⁽²⁾. Teamwork. Respect. Determination. Courage."

Sara smiled, "We solved every problem by working together."

Zain added, "We respected each other and stayed curious."

Omar **grinned**⁽³⁾, "I had courage because my friends believed in me."

Mr. Adam **nodded**⁽⁴⁾, "You also showed **honesty**⁽⁵⁾—doing the right thing even when no one was watching."

The children returned to their classroom, their hearts full of **pride**⁽⁶⁾ and **happiness**⁽⁷⁾. From that day on, they promised to use these values in everything they did—at school, at home, and online.

They knew that the greatest lessons they had learned were not about magic, but about **kindness**⁽⁸⁾, respect, and never giving up on themselves or each other.



(1) قيم (2) الفضول (3) يتنسم ابتسامة عريضة (4) يومي برأسه (5) الأمانة (6) الفخر (7) السعادة (8) العطف



1 The questions and their answers

1. What did the children find in the final room?

- They found a glowing book.

١. ماذا وجد الأطفال في الغرفة النهائية؟

- وجدوا كتابًا مضيئًا.

2. What did Mr. Adam say the "real magic" was in?

- He said the real magic was in the values the children showed.

٢. ماذا قال "مستر آدم" عن "السحر الحقيقي"؟

قال إن السحر الحقيقي كان في القيم التي أظهرها الأطفال.

3. What did the children promise to do after their experience?

- They promised to use these values in everything they did.

٣. ماذا وعد الأطفال أن يفعلوا بعد تجربتهم؟

- وعدوا باستخدام هذه القيم في كل شيء يفعلونه.

4. What were the greatest lessons the children learned?

- They learned that kindness, respect, and never giving up were the most important lessons.

٤. ما هي أعظم دروس تعلمها الأطفال؟

- تعلموا أن العطف والاحترام وعدم الاستسلام هي أهم الدروس.

5. Where was the glowing book?

- On a crystal stand.

٥. أين كان الكتاب المضيئ؟

- على حامل كريستال.

6. **SB** Who opened the magical book?

- Mr. Adam.

٦. من فتح الكتاب المضيئ؟

- مستر آدم.

7. How did the children show honesty?

- By doing the right thing even when no one was watching them.

٧. كيف أظهر سلوك الأطفال أمانتهم؟

- بقيامهم بالتصرف الصحيح حتى عندما لم يكن هناك شخص يراقبهم.

2 Critical thinking questions and suggested answers

أسئلة تفكير نقدي وإجاباتها المقترحة

1. Why do you think the real magic is in the values?

- Because values like teamwork and honesty are more important in life.

١. في اعتقادك لماذا السحر الحقيقي يكون في القيم التي تتعلمها؟

- لأن القيم مثل التعاون والأمانة هي الأكثر أهمية في الحياة.

2. If you were one of the children, which value would you use the most? Why?

- I think it is "determination" because it helps me not to give up.

٢. إذا كنت واحدًا من الأطفال في الفريق، أي القيم ستستخدمها أكثر، ولماذا؟

- اعتقد أنه الإصرار لأنه يساعدني على عدم الاستسلام.

3. What would happen if children didn't respect each other?

- They would fight and couldn't finish the task.

٣. ما الذي قد يحدث إذا لم يحترم الأطفال بعضهم البعض؟

- كانوا سيتشاجرون فيما بينهم أو لن يتمكنوا من إتمام المهمة.

General Exercises



On Chapter 3

https://t.me/G5_Y5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- SB** The children found a in the final room.
a. glowing book b. magic world c. locked door d. treasure box
- SB** Sara said that they so they solved every problem.
a. left the room b. worked together
c. stayed inside d. asked the teacher
- SB** The children promised to after leaving the room.
a. play more games b. stop being curious
c. use values they learned in life d. forget the final lesson
- The glowing words appeared in the magical
a. board b. sign c. book d. box

2 Answer the following questions :

1. How did the children feel when they returned to their classroom?

.....

2. **SB** Who did the children see in the final room?

.....

3. **SB** How do you think the children help Omar to change?

.....

4. **SB** Why do you think the teacher was proud of the children?

.....

3 Read and write (T) True or (F) False :

- The children felt sad when they returned to their classroom.
- The only value mentioned in the book was "courage."
- The children learned that the greatest lessons were about magic.
- Mr. Adam was happy that the children completed the Magic Classroom.

4 Read and complete the sentences with the correct words from the box:

friends - values - happiness - solved - magic

1. The children returned to their classroom with their hearts full of
2. The children promised to use the they learned at school, at home, and online.
3. Omar had courage because his believed in him.
4. The children every problem by working together.

5 Who said this?

1. "We respected each other and stayed curious."
.....
2. "I had courage because my friends believed in me."
.....
3. "You have completed the Magic Classroom."
.....
4. "You also showed honesty - doing the right thing even when no one was watching."
.....

https://t.me/G5_Y5

General Exercises



On The Magic Classroom

Model 1

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. To succeed, Mr. Adam said the children needed to show
a. puzzles b. magic c. responsibility d. happiness
2. Zain was a calm and student.
a. shy b. kind c. eager d. nervous

B Answer the following questions :

1. What was the name of the children's teacher?
.....
2. How did the children solve the challenge of the locked box?
.....

Model 2

A Read and write (T) True or (F) False :

1. The first challenge was an invisible bridge.
2. Omar was very excited and confident when he first saw the Magic Classroom.

B Read and complete the sentences with the correct words from the box :

puzzles - books - happiness

1. The children walked through a glowing door and found a room filled with floating
2. The children returned to their classroom, their hearts full of

Model 3

A Who said this ?

1. "Let's think carefully and help each other."
.....
2. "Respect means we listen and care for each other."
.....

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. In the final room, the children found a glowing on a crystal stand.
a. key b. box c. book d. puzzle
2. Mr. Adam said the children showed by doing the right thing when no one was watching.
a. courage b. honesty c. respect d. ambition

https://t.me/G5_Y5

C Answer the following questions :

1. What did the children promise to use in everything they did?
.....

2. What appeared at the end of the invisible bridge?
.....

Model 4

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Zain said that means we believe in our success.

a. respect b. courage c. ambition d. teamwork

2. Omar had courage because his friends in him.

a. laughed b. sang c. helped d. believed

B Who said this ?

1. "Let's sing together. Maybe unity is the key."
.....

2. "You have completed the Magic Classroom."
.....

Model 5

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. What did the children walk on in the second challenge?

a. A rainbow b. A wooden path c. An invisible bridge d. A tunnel

2. What opened after they sang together?

a. A window b. A treasure chest
c. A silver box d. A golden door

B Read and complete the sentences with the correct words from the box :

scared – kind - team

1. They solved the challenge by working as a

2. Omar took a deep breath "courage means we try even when we are"

Model 6

A Read and write (T) True or (F) False :

1. The children loved discovering new things in the village school.

2. The real magic is in the treasure they found.

B Who said this ?

1. "Ambition means we believe in our success."
.....

2. "We respected each other and stayed curious."
.....



2. The Dream Team

1. Story Map

تنويه
ترجمة القصة
في نهاية الكتاب

خريطة القصة

The main characters الشخصيات الرئيسية

Sara



- Sara led the team with fairness and determination, staying confident even without winning.

Omar



- He started wanting control but learned the value of teamwork and shared goals.

Lily



- She felt ignored at first but gained confidence and became a key contributor.

Karim



- He admitted his mistake, showing honesty and building team trust.

The Teacher



- She praised their integrity and teamwork, calling them true winners.

The setting (place and time) المكان و الزمان

Places الأماكن

- ▶ A cheerful village
- ▶ The school playground during the Invention Fair

Time الوقت

- ▶ During the time of the annual Invention Fair.



SB Pages 66 & 67

Chapter

1

▶ Never Give Up

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|----------------------|-----------------|----------------------|------------------|
| invention (n) | اختراع | create (d)(v) | يبتكر / يصنع |
| judgement (n) | حكم - قرار | take the lead | يتولى القيادة |
| eco-friendly (adj) | صديق للبيئة | role (n) | دور - وظيفة |
| ignore (d)(v) | يتجاهل | choice (n) | اختيار |
| materials (n) | مواد خام | organized (adj) | منظم |
| model (n) | نموذج | wisely (adv) | بحكمة |
| annual (adj) | سنوي | water-saving machine | آلة توفير المياه |
| matter (ed) (v), (n) | يهم - أمر / شأن | gently (adv) | بلطف |
| design (ed) (v) | يُصمم | honest (adj) | أمين |
| friendship (n) | صداقة | chance (n) | فرصة |
| meeting (n) | مقابلة - اجتماع | water flow (n) | تدفق المياه |
| test (ed) (v) | يختبر - يفحص | step by step | خطوة بخطوة |
| left out (adj) | مستبعد - مهمل | fail (ed) (v) | يفشل |
| agree (d) (v) | يوافق | suggest (ed) (v) | يقترح |
| fair (n) (adj) | عادل / معرض | member (n) | عضو - فرد |

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

| | | |
|----------------|---|----------------------------|
| create | to make or invent something new | يبتكر |
| ignore | not to listen or give attention to someone or something | يتجاهل |
| honesty | being honest and having strong moral principles | الأمانة والالتزام بالمبادئ |
| give up | to stop | بتوقف / يستسلم |



Pop Quiz

On Vocabulary

تدريب لإتقان المفردات اللغوية للقصة المقررة

• Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d :

1. The telephone is a very important
a. tool b. member c. principle d. invention
2. Don't the problem. Try to fix it.
a. solve b. ignore c. improve d. design
3. is being honest and having a strong moral principles.
a. Friendship b. Honesty c. Judgement d. Leadership
4. The children wanted to a machine to save water.
a. recover b. mind c. create d. ignore

II

Main Points on chapter 1

Never Give Up

1. In the cheerful village, there is an annual **invention**⁽¹⁾ fair.
2. The children were excited to create something useful.
3. Some of them decided to build a water-saving machine⁽²⁾.
4. Omar wanted to finish quickly, but Lily felt left out.
5. Sara suggested that they should be fair.
6. They thought carefully and they were **honest**⁽³⁾.
7. They all agreed to respect each other and gave everyone a **chance**⁽⁴⁾ to speak.

اختراع (1)

آلة توفير المياه (2)

أمين (3)

فرصة (4)



Text of chapter 1

• Never Give up

In the cheerful village, there is an annual invention fair. The children were excited to **create**⁽¹⁾ something useful. Sara, Omar, Zain, and two new friends, Lily and Karim, decided to build a water-saving machine. In their first meeting, Omar wanted to finish quickly and take the **lead**⁽²⁾. Lily felt left out because her ideas were **ignored**⁽³⁾. Sara stopped and said gently, "We need to be **fair**⁽⁴⁾. Everyone's ideas matter. We are a team." Karim added wisely, "We must have **honesty**⁽⁵⁾. Let's make honest choices and think carefully."



They all agreed to respect each other and give everyone a chance to speak. Even when their ideas failed at first, they kept trying. "determination!" Sara reminded them. "We can't **give up**"⁽⁶⁾.

Together, they used their curiosity and good judgment to improve the machine step by step. Each member of the team had a role. Zain designed the model. Omar fixed the pipes. Lily suggested eco-friendly materials. Karim tested the water flow and Sara kept everyone organized.

The more they worked together, the stronger their friendship became.

(1) مبتكر (2) مبادرة (3) متجاهل - مُهمَل (4) عادل (5) أمانة (6) يستسلم



1 The questions and their answers

1. What did the team of children decide to build?

- They decided to build a water-saving machine.

١. ماذا قرر فريق الأطفال أن يبنوا؟

- قرروا بناء آلة لتوفير المياه.

2. Who wanted to take the lead and finish quickly in the first meeting?

- Omar

٢. من الذي أراد أن يتولى القيادة وينهي العمل بسرعة في الاجتماع الأول؟

- عمر

3. Why did Lily feel left out?

- She felt left out because her ideas were ignored.

٣. لماذا شعرت «ليلي» بأنها مستبعدة؟

- شعرت بأنها مستبعدة لأن أفكارها تم تجاهلها.

4. What was the role of Zain in building the machine?

- He designed the model.

٤. ما كان دور زين في عملية بناء الماكينة؟

- لقد صمم النموذج.

5. What did the team do when their ideas failed at first?

- They kept trying instead of giving up.

٥. ماذا فعل الفريق عندما فشلت أفكارهم في البداية؟

- استمروا في المحاولة بدلاً من الاستسلام.

6. **SB** What did the children agree to do at the end?

- They agreed to respect each other and give everyone a chance to speak.

٦. ماذا وافق الأطفال أن يفعلوا في النهاية؟

- وافقوا على احترام بعضهم البعض وأن يعطوا كل فرد منهم الفرصة لكي يعبر عن أفكاره.

7. **SB** How did the children feel about creating something useful?

- They were excited.

٧. كيف شعر الأطفال بشأن فكرة صنع شيء مفيد؟

- لقد كانوا متحمسين.

2 Critical thinking questions and suggested answers

أسئلة تفكير نقدي وإجاباتها المقترحة

1. What do you think makes a good team leader?

• A good team leader listens to everyone and encourages them.

١. ما الذي يجعل قائد الفريق جيداً؟

- قائد الفريق الجيد يستمع للجميع ويشجعهم.

2. What lesson did the team learn in this first meeting?

• I think they learned respecting others and determinations; "Never Give Up".

٢. ما هو الدرس الذي تعلمه الفريق في هذا الاجتماع الأول؟

- اعتقد لقد تعلموا احترام الآخرين والمثابرة "وعدم الاستسلام".

3. Why is it better for a team to respect each other?

• Respect helps everyone feel comfortable sharing their ideas.

٣. لماذا من الأفضل للفريق أن يحترم بعضهم البعض؟

- يساعد الاحترام الجميع على الشعور بالراحة في مشاركة أفكارهم.

General Exercises



On Chapter 1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Lily felt left out because her ideas were
a. ignored b. saved c. designed d. used
- They used their and good judgment to improve the machine.
a. kindness b. curiosity c. money d. problems
- What event was happening in the cheerful village?
a. A sports day b. An invention fair c. A festival d. A concert
- tested the water flow.
a. Karim b. Zain c. Omar d. Lily

2 Answer the following questions :

1. What did Omar do for the machine?

.....

2. Why were the children excited?

.....

3. **SB** Why do you think we should have honesty ?

.....

4. Who suggested eco-friendly materials?

.....

3 Read and write (T) True or (F) False :

1. **SB** There was a science exam in the cheerful village.

2. **SB** The children decided to build a water-saving machine.

3. **SB** Omar wanted to take the lead and finish quickly.

4. **SB** Karim reminded the group about giving up after the first idea failed.

4 Read and complete the sentences with words in the box:

ignored - machine - honesty - pipes - fixed

1. Karim said that they must have
2. They used their curiosity and good judgement to improve the
3. Omar the pipes of the machine.
4. Lily felt left out because her ideas were

5 Who said this?

1. "Determination! We can't give up."

.....

2. "We need to be fair. Everyone's ideas matter."

.....

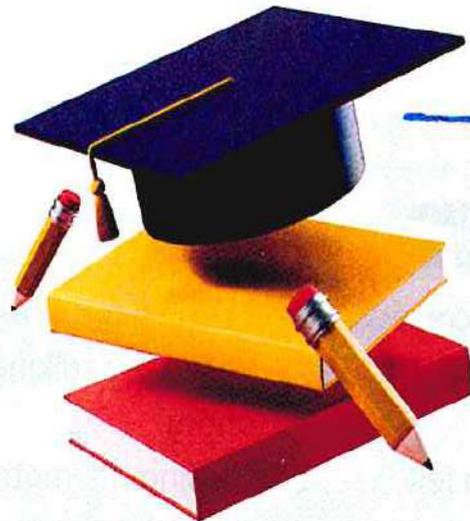
3. "We must have honesty. Let's make honest choices and think carefully."

.....

Master your skills

يهدف إلى تنمية
مهارات
اللغة الإنجليزية

 EL-MOASSER





SB Pages 80 & 81

Chapter

2

Does Lily feel shy now?

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|-------------------|-----------|-----------------|-------------|
| aspiration (n) | طموح | unique (adj) | فريد - مميز |
| discouraged (adj) | محبط | friendship(n) | صداقة |
| shy (adj) | خجول | perfectly (adv) | بشكل مثالي |
| purpose (n) | هدف - غرض | blame (d)(v) | يلوم |
| support (ed)(v) | يدعم | rainwater (n) | مياه المطر |

Extra Vocabulary

| | | | |
|-----------------|---------------|-------------------|----------------|
| gather (ed)(v) | يجمع - يجتمع | take shape | يتكون |
| pathway (n) | ممر - طريق | members(n) | اعضاء - افراد |
| competition (n) | مسابقة | face (d)(v) | يواجه |
| organize(d) (v) | ينظم | test (ed) (v) (n) | يختبر / اختبار |
| finds her voice | تعبر عن رأيها | hope (n) | أمل |
| divide (d)(v) | يقسم | proud (adj) | فخور |
| make a mistake | يرتكب خطأ | tasks (n) | مهام |
| full of heart | ملي بالحب | ready (adj) | جاهز |



Pop Quiz

On Vocabulary

تدريب لإتقان المفردات اللغوية للقصة المقررة

• Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d :

1. She is very She doesn't like talking to strangers.

a. shy b. angry c. nervous d. brave

2. The team felt after losing the match.

a. proud b. excited c. discouraged d. happy

3. My is to be a scientist.

a. plane b. test c. voice d. aspiration

4. "....." means showing respect and support.

- a. Shopping b. Gaming c. Friendship d. Dividing

5. What should I do, When I a problem ?

- a. write b. read c. walk d. face

6. I didn't see something like that before , it is really

- a. normal b. unique c. ordinary d. common

7. I asked Ayman about his in life.

- a. purpose b. games c. magic d. team

II Main Points on chapter 2

Does Lily feel shy now ?

1. Sara's team **faced**⁽¹⁾ many problems to start their water saving **machine**⁽²⁾.
2. She **gathered**⁽³⁾ her team to tell them not to lose **hope**⁽⁴⁾ to win and help people.
3. Omar said that they had an **aspiration**⁽⁵⁾ to help their village.
4. Lily who felt **shy**⁽⁶⁾ before changed and said that they could make it better by testing many times.
5. The team respected every idea and organized the work.
6. Finally, the machine was ready to work and the team was proud of their **friendship**⁽⁷⁾.

(1) واجه

(2) آلة / ماكينة

(3) تجمعوا

(4) أمل

(5) طموح

(6) خجول

(7) صداقة



Text of chapter 2

Does Lily feel shy now ?

Days passed, and the Water-Saving Machine started to take shape. But the team faced another problem. The machine worked, but not **perfectly**⁽¹⁾. Some members felt discouraged.

Sara **gathered**⁽²⁾ them and said, "Our **purpose**⁽³⁾ isn't just to win the competition, it's to help people. Let's not lose hope."

Omar nodded, "We have an aspiration—to save water for our village. We can do this!"

Lily, who felt **shy**⁽⁴⁾ before, found her voice, "We can make it better if we test it again and again."

The team worked late, **supporting**⁽⁵⁾ each other. They respected every idea, and organized the work when dividing tasks, and sharing steps along the way. When Karim made a mistake, no one blamed him. Instead, they helped him fix it.

Finally, the machine was ready. It used rainwater to water plants and clean small pathways. It wasn't perfect, but it was **unique**⁽⁶⁾ and full of heart.

The team were proud of what they built—not just the machine, but the friendship they shared.



| | | | |
|----------|-------------------------|----------|---------------------|
| (4) خجول | (3) غرض / هدف | (2) جمع | (1) بشكل كامل / تام |
| | (6) فرید من نوعه / مہیز | (5) یؤید | |



1 The questions and their answers

1. What was the problem the team faced with their machine?

١. ما هي المشكلة التي واجهها الفريق مع الآلة؟

- The machine did not work perfectly.

- الآلة لم تعمل بشكل مثالي.

2. How did some team members feel when the machine didn't work perfectly?

٢. كيف شعر بعض أعضاء الفريق عندما واجهوا مشكله أخرى؟

- They felt discouraged.

- شعروا بالأحباط.

3. **SB** What was the main purpose of the team?

٣. ماذا كان الهدف الرئيسي للفريق؟

- It was to help people.

- كان مساعدة الناس هو الهدف الرئيسي للفريق.

4. What did the team do when Karim made a mistake? ماذا فعل الفريق عندما ارتكب «كريم» خطأ؟

- They helped him fix it instead of blaming him.

- ساعدوه في إصلاحه بدلاً من لومه.

5. What was the team proud of?

٥. بَمَ كان الفريق فخوراً؟

- They were proud of the friendship they shared.

- كانوا فخورين أيضاً بالصدقة التي تشاركوها.

6. What did Lily suggest to improve the machine?

٦. ماذا اقترحت ليلي التطوير الآلة؟

- She suggested testing it again and again.

- اقترحت أن يجربوا الآلة لعدة مرات.

7. How was the machine useful?

٧. كيف كانت الآلة مفيدة؟

- It used rainwater to water the plants and clean small pathways.

- لقد استخدمت ماء المطر لري النباتات و تنظيف الطرق والممرات الصغيرة.

2 Critical thinking questions and suggested answers أسئلة تفكير نقدي وإجاباتها المقترحة

1. **SB** Why do you think we shouldn't blame people who make mistakes?

١. لماذا تعتقد انه لا يجب علينا أن نلوم الشخص الذي يخطئ؟

- Because everyone makes mistakes, so we should help them not to do mistakes

again.

- لان كل شخص يخطئ، لذلك يجب علينا أن نساعدهم ألا يفعلوا ذلك مرة أخرى.

2. What made their machine special?

٢. ماذا جعل الآلة التي صنعوها مميزة؟

- It was made with the love and cooperation of the team members.

- أنها صنعت بمحبة أعضاء الفريق وتعاونهم.

General Exercises



On Chapter 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- SB** The machine used to water plants and clean small pathways.
a. wastewater b. rainwater c. salty water d. water vapor
- SB** Some members of the team felt when they faced another problem.
a. excited b. happy c. proud d. discouraged
- SB** When Karim made a mistake, no one him.
a. helped b. noticed c. blamed d. praised
- The machine wasn't perfect, but it was
a. modern b. heavy c. unique d. expensive

2 Answer the following questions :

- SB** What was the purpose of the team?
.....

- How did the machine save water?
.....

- Who gathered the team and reminded them of their purpose?
.....

- Why do you think they succeeded to solve any problem?
.....

- Do you think the machine is useful?
.....

3 Read and write (T) True or (F) False :

- The machine didn't work after hard work.
- The team divided tasks among them.
- They were proud of the machine.
- Supporting each other helped them succeed.

https://t.me/G5_Y5

4 Read and complete the sentences with words in the box:

organized - hope- water - perfectly - planted

1. The machine worked, but not at first.
2. Sara advised them not to lose
3. Their aspiration was to save for their village.
4. The team respected every idea and the work.

5 Who said this?

1. "Our purpose isn't just to win the competition, it's to help people. Let's not lose hope."
.....
2. "We have an aspiration to save water for our village. We can do this!"
.....
3. "We can make it better if we test it again and again."
.....

A week is enough

مراجعة المنهج
و التمكن منه في
اسبوع واحد فقط

EL-MOASSER





SB Pages 94 & 95

Chapter

3

► A Team of Tomorrow

I

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|------------------|--------------|-----------------|--------------|
| trophy (n) | كأس - جائزة | judge (n) | حكم - قاضى |
| meaningful (adj) | مفيد - هام | cooperation (n) | تعاون |
| excitement (n) | حماس - إثارة | unity (n) | وحدة - اتحاد |

Extra Vocabulary

| | | | |
|------------------|------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| present (ed) (v) | يقدم | impressed (adj) | منبهر |
| proudly (adv) | بفخر | winners (n) | فائزون |
| clap (ped) (v) | يصفق | confidently (adv) | بثقة |
| promise (d) (v) | يعد - يوعد | teamwork (n) | عمل جماعى |
| playground (n) | فناء | prize (n) | جائزة |
| tent (n) | خيمة | real (adj) | حقيقى |
| clearly (adv) | بوضوح | honesty (n) | الأمانة - الإخلاص |



Pop Quiz

On Vocabulary

تدريب لإتقان المفردات اللغوية للقصة المقررة

• Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d :

- The winner took many pictures holding the golden
a. trophy b. tent c. team d. test
- The brave child spoke with the judge.
a. quickly b. confidently c. silently d. hard
- We for the winners loudly.
a. clapped b. cried c. ate d. wrote
- helps any team to achieve success.
a. Music b. Sleep c. Cooperation d. Noise
- He sleeps in a when he goes camping.
a. tower b. tool c. tab d. tent

II Main Points on chapter 3

A team of tomorrow

1. On the day of the Invention Fair, teams presented their projects in front of a lot of people and **judges**⁽¹⁾.
2. Sara and her team explained their project **confidently**⁽²⁾ and clearly.
3. The judges asked the team for the reason why they chose this project.
4. The judges were **impressed**⁽³⁾ by the **teamwork**⁽⁴⁾, and the respect the group showed.
5. Their teacher was very **proud**⁽⁵⁾ of them and called them the **real**⁽⁶⁾ winners.
6. The children promised to carry the values into the future.
7. The children team became know as "The Dream Team".

(1) حكام

(2) بثقة

(3) منبهر

(4) عمل جماعي

(5) فخور

(6) حقيقي

Text of chapter 3

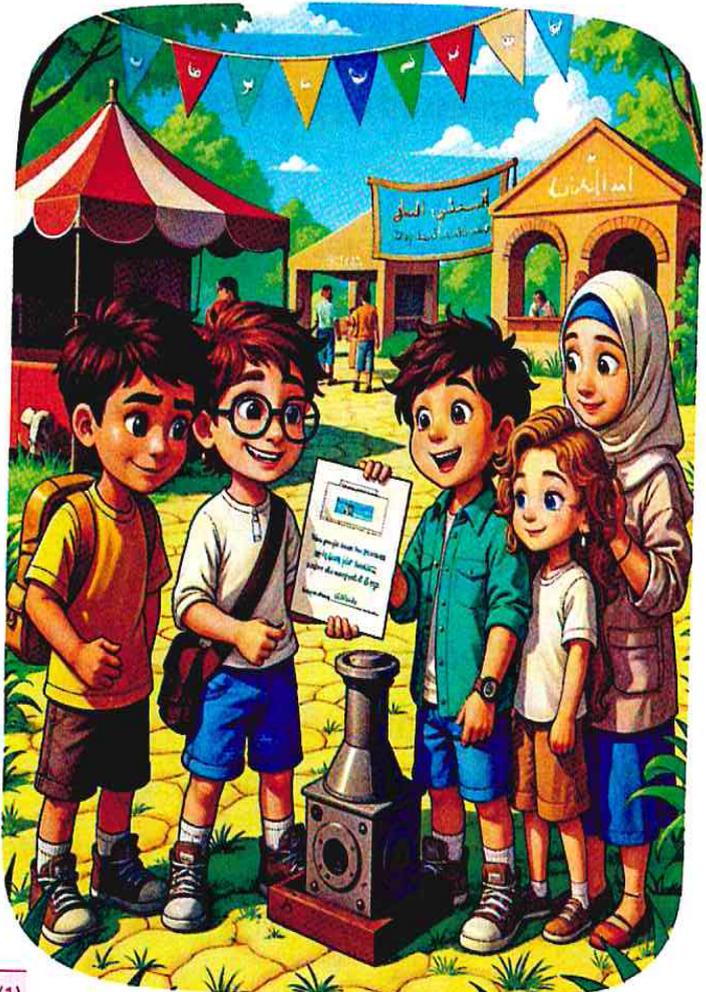
• A team of tomorrow

On the day of the Invention Fair, the school **playground**⁽¹⁾ was filled with **colorful tents**⁽²⁾ and curious visitors. Teams presented their projects with excitement. Sara and her team explained their Water-Saving Machine clearly and confidently.

The **judges**⁽³⁾ smiled and asked, "Why did you choose this project?"

Sara answered, "We wanted to create something with a **purpose**⁽⁴⁾ to help our village".

The judges nodded, **impressed**⁽⁵⁾ not only by the machine but also by the **teamwork**⁽⁶⁾ and respect the group showed.



(1) ملعب / فناء (2) خيام ملونة (3) الحكام (4) غرض (5) منبهر (6) عمل جماعي

Though another team won first prize, Sara and her friends didn't feel sad. Their teacher clapped **proudly**⁽⁷⁾ and said, "You are the real winners. You showed honesty, cooperation, and teamwork. These values are more important than any **trophy**⁽⁸⁾".

The children smiled and held hands. They knew they had created something **meaningful**⁽⁹⁾ - not just for the **competition**⁽¹⁰⁾, but for their community and for themselves. They promised to carry these **values**⁽¹¹⁾ into the future and help others with kindness, respect, and **courage**⁽¹²⁾. From that day, they became known as "The Dream Team" in their village - a team with heart, purpose, and **unity**⁽¹³⁾.

(7) بفخر (8) كأس (9) ذات معنى (10) مسابقة (11) قيم (12) شجاعة (13) اتحاد



Questions and answers

on Chapter Three

1 The questions and their answers

1. Who was impressed by the team's teamwork and respect?

١. من الذى أعجب بعمل الفريق الجماعى واحترامهم؟

- The judges were impressed by their teamwork and respect.

- أعجب الحكام بعملهم الجماعى واحترامهم.

2. What was the final result of the competition?

٢. ما هى النتيجة النهائية للمسابقة؟

- Another team won first prize.

- فاز فريق آخر بالجائزة الأولى.

3. How did Sara and her friends feel when they didn't win?

٣. كيف شعرت "سارة" وأصدقائها عندما لم يفوزوا؟

- They didn't feel sad.

- لم يشعروا بالحزن.

4. What did the team become known as in their village?

٤. بماذا أصبح الفريق معروفاً فى قريتهم؟

- They became known as "The Dream Team."

- أصبحوا معروفين باسم "فريق الأحلام".

5. What was the school playground filled with?

٥. ماذا كان فناء المدرسة ممتلئاً بـ؟

- Colorful tents and curious visitors.

- خيم ملونة وزائرين متحمسين.

6. What did their teacher do when they didn't win the trophy ?

- She clapped proudly to them.

٦. ماذا فعل المدرس عندما لم يفوز الاطفال بالكأس ؟
- صفقت لهم بكل فخر.

7. What did the children promise to do?

- To carry the values they learned into the future.

٧. ماذا وعد الاطفال أن يفعلوا ؟
- أن يحملوا القيم التي تعلموها في حياتهم المستقبلية.

2 Critical thinking questions and suggested answers أسئلة تفكير نقدي وإجاباتها المقترحة

1. Why didn't the team feel sad when they didn't win first prize?

١. لماذا لم يشعر الفريق بالحزن عندما لم يفوزوا بالجائزة الأولى؟
- Because they had achieved their real goal of helping others.

- لأنهم حققوا هدفهم الحقيقي في مساعدة الآخرين.

2. Why are values like honesty and cooperation important?

- Because they help people work together successfully.

٢. لماذا تعتبر قيم مثل الامانة والتعاون مهمة؟

- إنها تساعد الناس على العمل معا بنجاح.

3. What was the team's purpose for their project?

- It was to create something useful to help their village.

٣. ما هو هدف الفريق من مشروعهم ؟

- كان هدفهم هو ابتكار شيء مفيد لمساعدة قريتهم.

Master your skills

يهدف إلى تنمية
مهارات
اللغة الإنجليزية

EL-MOASSER



General Exercises



On Chapter 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- The school playground was filled with colorful
a. tents b. flowers c. boxes d. tools
- Sara and her team explained their clearly and confidently.
a. drawings b. homework c. activities d. project
- After the competition, the team became known as "The Team".
a. Winning b. Smart c. Dream d. Invention
- The word "trophy" means " ".
a. a title b. a prize awarded c. a competition d. a machine

2 Answer the following questions :

1. How did Sara and her team expressed their project ?

.....

2. Who were impressed by Sara and her team's project ?

.....

3. Who are the "Dream Team" ?

.....

4. Do you think values are more important than a trophy? Why?

.....

3 Read and write (T) True or (F) False :

1. Sara and her team were nervous when explaining their project.

2. The judges were only impressed by the machine.

3. The Dream Team won the first prize trophy.

4. The children became famous in their village as "The Dream Team."

4 Read and complete the sentences with words in the box:

excitement - winners - prize - teamwork - sad

1. Though another team won first, Sara and her friends didn't feel sad.
2. Their teacher clapped proudly and said, "You are the real ".....".
3. "You showed honesty, cooperation, and ".....".
4. Teams presented their projects with

5 Who said this?

1. "Why did you choose this project?"

.....

2. "We wanted to create something with a purpose to help our village."

.....

3. "You are the real winners".

.....

6 Put the events in the correct order.

1. The children promised to carry the values into the future. ()
2. The teacher called them the "real winners". ()
3. Another team won first prize. ()
4. The team became known as "The Dream Team". ()

General Exercises



On story "The Dream Team"

Model 1

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Karim wisely added that the team must have
a. prizes b. honesty c. speed d. plans
2. Sara said the team's was to help people and save water.
a. competition b. problem c. purpose d. project

B Answer the following questions :

1. Who felt left out at the first meeting?
.....
2. What did Sara remind the team about when they wanted to give up?
.....

Model 2

A Read and write (T) True or (F) False :

1. At the first meeting, Omar wanted to finish quickly and take the lead.
2. Sara's team won first prize at the Invention Fair.

B Complete the sentence using the words in the box :

teamwork - roads - rainwater

1. The machine used to water plants and clean small pathways.
2. The judges were impressed by the machine and by the and respect the group showed.

Model 3

A Who said this ?

1. "We have an aspiration - to save water for our village. We can do this!"
.....
2. "We need to be fair. Everyone's ideas matter. We are a team."
.....

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. At the end of the story, the group became known as "The Dream"
a. Group b. Team c. Winners d. Friends

https://t.me/G5_Y5

2. The team promised to help others with kindness, respect, and
 a. courage b. hope c. water d. heart

Model 4

A Answer the following questions :

1. What did the judges ask the team about their project?

2. What was the name of the fair where the teams presented their projects?

B Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. In the first meeting, Lily felt that her ideas were
 a. helpful b. ignored c. bad d. clever
2. The team's aspiration was to save for their village.
 a. time b. friendship c. water d. plants

Model 5

A Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. What did the team want to build?
 a. A robot b. A toy car
 c. A water-saving machine d. A computer
2. Who said, "We must have honesty"?
 a. Sara b. Karim c. Omar d. Lily

B Answer the following questions :

1. Why did Lily feel left out in the beginning?

2. What was the purpose of their project?

Model 6

A Read and write (T) True or (F) False :

1. The Dream Team won first place in the fair.
2. Some members of the team felt discouraged when they faced another problem.

B Who said this ?

1. "Let's not lose hope."

2. "Our purpose isn't just to win the competition, it's to help people."

EL-Moasser

Homework Notebook



Unit 1 ▶ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I use my to search for news.

- a. desk b. tablet c. garden d. ruler

(lesson 1)

2. We need to using digital devices with outdoor activities.

- a. feed b. swim c. balance d. damage

(lesson 2)

3. The smartboard is an important

- a. device b. hobby c. color d. recipe

(lesson 3)

4. The children felt when they saw the lion.

- a. scared b. noisy c. hungry d. thirsty

(lesson 4)

5. I like books. It is my favorite hobby.

- a. damaging b. sailing c. reading d. losing

(lesson 5)

Unit 2 ▶ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. is related to hearing things.

- a. Visual b. Auditory c. Modern d. Lazy

(lesson 1)

2. To is to make something better.

- a. damage b. destroy c. improve d. miss

(lesson 2)

3. Teamwork teaches students to be

- a. creative b. foolish c. angry d. lazy

(lesson 3)

4. The bridge was We couldn't see it.

- a. visible b. invisible c. seen d. new

(lesson 4)

5. We should our time to succeed.

- a. waste b. develop c. organize d. dry

(lesson 5)

Unit 3 ▶ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Samira Moussa was a true who inspires people today.

- a. hero b. thief c. loser d. sailor

(lesson 1)

2. protect their country when there is an attack. (Lesson 2)
 a. Soldiers b. Diseases c. Subjects d. Babies
3. He studied geography at Cairo (Lesson 3)
 a. Festival b. Garden c. University d. Capital
4. means not giving up. (Lesson 4)
 a. Sadness b. Determination c. Sleep d. Failure
5. He developed new for kidney transplants. (Lesson 5)
 a. methods b. laws c. recipes d. menus

Unit 4 ▶ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The internet has positive and sides. (Lesson 1)
 a. good b. negative c. happy d. new
2. What should he to stay healthy? (Lesson 2)
 a. do b. does c. did d. doing
3. is the synonym of decision. (Lesson 3)
 a. Choice b. Cause c. Question d. Hobby
4. To create means to something new. (Lesson 4)
 a. damage b. steal c. lose d. invent
5. The word has the same meaning of effect. (Lesson 5)
 a. attack b. miss c. impact d. content

Unit 5 ▶ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I hope to find a good job after I (Lesson 1)
 a. graduate b. die c. sleep d. feed
2. Look at the clouds! It is going (Lesson 2)
 a. rain b. rains c. to rain d. rained
3. Working hard will help you your goals. (Lesson 3)
 a. achieve b. miss c. lose d. fail
4. He feels when he faces difficult problems. (Lesson 4)
 a. excited b. happy c. discouraged d. modern
5. She has the and talents for the job. (Lesson 5)
 a. skills b. skulls c. scales d. sails

2. Weekly Assessments

٢. التقييمات الأسبوعية

https://t.me/G5_Y5

Weeks 1&2 ▶ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Week 1**
1. I used my to print my homework.
a. printer b. pencil c. glasses d. headphones
2. Noha speak English?
a. Do b. Is c. Are d. Does

- Week 2**
1. ideas is useful.
a. Sharing b. Sailing c. Losing d. Missing
2. Teachers usually use a to help students.
a. ship b. smartboard c. rock d. basin

Weeks 3&4 ▶ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Week 3**
1. We use and charts to organize information.
a. mops b. bins c. hens d. maps
2. I understand well when I'm distracted.
a. can b. should c. can't d. isn't

- Week 4**
1. Studying hard is the to success.
a. key b. eye c. window d. lock
2. We like to draw diagrams to us.
a. remember b. feel c. miss d. remind

Weeks 5&6 ▶ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Week 5**
1. Her made her a symbol of hope for girls.
a. sadness b. achievements c. problems d. money
2. Where you go last summer?
a. do b. are c. did d. does

- Week 6**
1. She the State Appreciation Award in 1986.
a. sent b. won c. made d. lost
 2. He was of us when we won the competition.
a. sad b. angry c. proud d. hungry

Weeks 7&8 ▶ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Week 7**
1. Dr Zewail is my model.
a. ruler b. road c. rule d. role
 2. She an email now.
a. wrote b. writes c. is writing d. write
- Week 8**
1. means bad or harmful.
a. Positive b. Useful c. Negative d. Amazing
 2. If you don't study hard, you pass the test.
a. will b. won't c. would d. wouldn't

Weeks 9&10 ▶ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Week 9**
1. Smoking has a very bad on our health.
a. decision b. impact c. option d. advice
 2. Have you ever a choice that was difficult?
a. made b. gave c. did d. arrived
- Week 10**
1. We need to our next steps carefully.
a. dream b. plan c. accept d. advise
 2. Hana to Paris next month.
a. travelled b. is going to travel c. travelling d. travels

Weeks 11&12 ▶ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Week 11**
1. Omar wishes to find a that matches his talent.
a. profession b. prize c. road d. game
 2. Working hard helps me my goals.
a. forget b. read c. learn d. achieve

Week 12 1. A is a doctor who treats animals.

- a. vet b. nurse c. teacher d. programmer

2. It's cloudy! It

- a. rains b. will rain c. is going to rain d. is raining

Weeks 13&14 ▶ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Week 13 1. To is to help people do good things.

- a. protect b. encourage c. damage d. hurt

2. When you don't treat people equally, you're

- a. lazy b. brave c. unhappy d. unfair

Week 14 1. You park here. It's not allowed.

- a. should b. may c. must d. mustn't

2. To is to show care or honor for someone.

- a. respect b. treat c. clean d. damage

Weeks 15&16 ▶ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Week 15 1. The new city aims to with the most famous tourist destinations.

- a. compete b. lose c. damage d. forget

2. Don't the advice of your parents.

- a. reduce b. ignore c. describe d. choose

Week 16 1. means not giving up, even when things are hard.

- a. Determination b. Advice c. Honesty d. Responsibility

2. Listen! The little boy

- a. cry b. cries c. will cry d. is crying

3. Monthly Assessments

٣. التقييمات الشهرية

October Month تقييمات شهر اكتوبر

Model A

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- To is to make something better.
a. review b. improve c. hurt d. damage
- Laila an app to learn words at the moment.
a. uses b. is using c. used d. is used
- Things that are ,we can't see them.
a. visible b. invisible c. important d. unhappy
- The person who does great things for others is called a
a. king b. hero c. lazy d. visitor
- I my mom in the kitchen yesterday.
a. helped b. help c. helping d. am helping

Model B

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Dr. Gamal Hemdan the State Appreciation Award in 1986.
a. sent b. won c. made d. lost
- Ahmed late for school yesterday ?
a. Were b. Did c. Was d. Is
- This is a/an to succeed in reaching your goal.
a. achievement b. discovery c. invention d. courage
- We can't well when we are distracted.
a. understand b. understands c. understanding d. understood
- things means things that are related to hearing things.
a. Visual b. Auditory c. Kinesthetic d. Helpful

November Month تقييمات شهر نوفمبر

Model A

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Patients feel better after taking the regularly.
a. knowledge b. accidents c. treatment d. researches
2. It's important to show for different cultures.
a. respect b. attack c. goal d. achievement
3. Students need to their time before exams.
a. revise b. organize c. challenge d. refer
4. A fish can't, but it can swim.
a. flies b. fly c. flying d. flew
5. The choice that you can make is called a/an
a. achievement b. decision c. responsibility d. goal

Model B

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. To be is to act with care and think of others.
a. negative b. positive c. hopeful d. harmful
2. You should to your teachers carefully.
a. listen b. listens c. listening d. listened
3. "Consequence" has the same meaning as ".....".
a. cause b. result c. source d. rule
4. If he do his homework, his teacher will be angry.
a. isn't b. doesn't c. can d. hasn't
5. To means to create something new.
a. invent b. invite c. choose d. refuse

Unit 1

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

My name is Tarek and I want to share my digital day with you. I always start my day by checking my phone.

At breakfast, I often use my tablet to search for news. At school, we sometimes use the smartboard in our science class. Our teacher shows us amazing videos about planets and animals.

General Exercises on lesson 3

Students use the digital devices every day to achieve their tasks. They write assignments with the keyboard. They use headphones to watch videos. To make a video call, they use the webcam. If they have to record a presentation, they use the microphone. They also need a printer to print their homework.

General Exercises on Unit 1

Yesterday, Rafik had a problem with his homework. He didn't understand the science lesson at class so he couldn't do his science homework. He had to search for a video online to help him. Fortunately, he found a video with clear photos and sound explaining the lesson. Rafik could understand the lesson and do his homework easily and fast. Rafik thinks technology is useful in learning.

Unit 2

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

Every person learns differently. Some people learn best by seeing information. These are visual learners. They like to read books, look at pictures, and use colorful notes. Visual learners often make maps and charts to organize information.

General Exercises on lesson 3

Learning in groups has more benefits than learning alone. When students work in large or small groups, they share opinions discuss problems and find solutions to them. Teamwork helps students develop their skills and be confident. It also helps them know how to communicate with others and understand them.

General Exercises on Unit 2

People learn in many ways - some by listening, some by doing, and others by seeing. Auditory learners enjoy discussions, kinesthetic learners prefer hands-on activities, and visual learners use charts and images. Understanding these styles helps teachers plan better lessons and students choose the right study tools.

Unit 3

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

Dr. Samira Moussa was a true hero who continues to inspire people today. She was born in Egypt in 1917 and showed a great love for science from a young age. She was determined to study physics and became one of the first Egyptian women to get a PhD. in Atomic Radiation.

General Exercises on lesson 3

Dr. Gamal Hemdan was a famous Egyptian geographer and writer. He was born in 1928 in Qalyubia, Egypt. He studied geography at Cairo University and later got his PhD from a university in England. Dr. Hemdan was not only a scientist, but also a deep thinker.

General Exercises on Unit 3

A role model is someone we look up to and admire. They can be parents, teachers, or famous people. Role models inspire us to be better and help us make good choices. Role models teach us important values like honesty and respect. By observing their actions, we learn how to behave and treat others.

Unit 4

General Exercises on Unit 4

Youssef was excited about his birthday and planned a small party after school. He invited eight close friends who had been responsible in class and finished their homework. A day before the party, two classmates asked to join.

Unit 5

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

I'm Malek. I'm 15 years old. I believe everyone has a special future. My dream is to become a graphic designer. I enjoy drawing and using technology. Last summer, I joined a free art program in my city. It was hard work, but I learned a lot. My teacher said I have a real talent, and that gave me more confidence. I set a new goal to design my own website.

General Exercises on Unit 5

Dr. Farouq El-Baz is a famous Egyptian scientist who worked for NASA. He was born in 1938 in Zagazig, Egypt. He studied in Ain Shams University. Dr. El Baz got his PhD in geology in 1964. He wrote many books. and won many awards. He's a great role model for many young people.

Unit 6

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

To protect our planet, we must keep our school clean and save water and electricity. We mustn't waste food or throw rubbish on the ground. We also must encourage students to volunteer to help others in need and to protect animals and nature.

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

We all have a global responsibility to care for the Earth. Pollution, and climate change, are not just local problems. Students can take an action by reducing waste, or planting trees. It's important to work together and understand how our choices affect people everywhere.

General Exercises on Unit 6

Oceans connect people from many cultures and countries, showing the beauty of diversity around the world. We all share the sea, so it is our duty to keep it safe. We can participate in beach clean-ups to keep them clean. We should teach others about saving the oceans, and reduce waste at home and school to help.

All in all, every small action makes a difference. If we all work together, we can protect the oceans for future generations and for every living creature that depends on the sea.

Unit 1

lessons 1 & 2

"Your digital day"

I prefer digital life so much. I start my day by checking my phone. I usually have three or four messages from my friends. I also use my tablet to search for news. I can do my homework or assignments on my laptop. Before bed time, I read a book on my tablet.

I think technology is amazing to use. My parents always advise me not to spend much time on my phone not to hurt my eyes. My teachers at school use smartboards.

lessons 5 & 6

"Your favorite devices"

To : adam20@gmail.com

From : ahmedsamy@gmail.com

About : Your favorite devices.

Dear Adam,

I'm so happy to write this email. How are you ?

I want to tell you about my favorite devices. The mobile is my favorite device. I can use it to communicate with my friends. Also, I search for information and look up new words. During my free time, I can play some games or send messages to my friends. Can you tell me about your favorite device. See you soon.

yours,

Ahmed

General Exercises on Unit 1

"Your digital devices"

To : ehubpop@yahoo.com

From : samysaleh@yahoo.com

Subject : digital devices

Dear Ehab,

I'm so happy to write this email to you. How are you? I want to tell you about digital devices I use during my day. I always use my computer to do my homework using the keyboard. I also listen to music using my headphones or speakers. I enjoy my lessons when my teachers use the smartboards in class. Tell me about your digital devices. See you soon.

yours,

Samy

Unit 2

lessons 1 & 2

"learning styles"

There are different learning styles. There are three famous styles. They are visual, auditory and kinesthetic. Visual learners like learning by seeing things such as reading and looking at pictures. Auditory learners prefer learning by hearing information. Kinesthetic learners learn best by moving and touching. You should understand your learning style to study better. You can choose the right method that makes learning easier and more enjoyable.

lesson 3

"group learning"

To : manar27@yahoo.com

From : sabrina@yahoo.com

subject : "group learning"

Dear Manar,

I'm so happy to write this email. How are you ? Learning in group has a lot of benefits for learners. We can share opinions, discuss problems and find solutions. Teamwork helps students develop their skills and be confident. Teamwork teaches students cooperation and leadership. Also learning in groups helps students make new friends. See you soon

yours,
Sabrina

lessons 5 & 6

"learning plan"

It's important to have a clear plan for learning.

It helps you to save time and benefit from time. You should choose the right place and right time for learning. You can start by writing a to-do- list to know what to focus on. You can use colorful folders to keep your subjects organized. You can try to study at the same place. It helps you to focus a lot.

General Exercises on Unit 2

To : tahnizo@yahoo.com

From : neveen@book.com

subject : Your study plan

Dear Tahani,

I'm pleased to write this email to you. How are you ? I always try to follow a good study plan. I study every day

after school. First, I do my homework. Then, I read my lessons and review what I studied more time on difficult subjects like maths and science. I also take short breaks to rest. On weekends, I revise everything I learned all the week. Write to me soon.

yours,
Neveen

Unit 3

Lessons 1 & 2

"An Egyptian hero"

There are many Egyptian heroes. Dr Samira Moussa is a true heroine. She inspired a lot of people. She was born in 1917 with a great love for science. She studied physics and became one of the first Egyptian women to get a PhD in Atomic Radiation. Dr. Samira wanted to help her community and use science for peace and improve people's lives. She taught in Cairo university and travelled to the USA to complete her research. Sadly, she died in a car accident in 1952.

Lesson 3

"Your role model"

My favorite role model is Dr. Gamal Hemdan. He was a famous Egyptian geographer and writer. He was born in 1928 in Qaluybia in Egypt. He studied geography at Cairo University. He got his PhD from a university in England. He wasn't only a scientist but also a deep thinker. Dr Gamal wrote many books. His famous book is "The personality of Egypt." Dr Gamal won many awards. He was known for his strong ideas.

Lessons 5 & 6

"Dr. Mohamed Ghoneim"

Dr Mohamed Ghoneim is a very famous Egyptian doctor. He is determined and kind doctor. He worked hard to help people with kidney diseases. He had a lot of achievement as he developed new methods for kidney transplants.

He was brave as he worked in difficult situations. Dr Ghoneim showed us that one person can make a big difference when they care about and love their work. He teaches us that true heroes are those who help people and their communities.

General Exercises on Unit 3

To : abdelrahmanAI@gmail.com

From : akef@gmail.com

subject : A famous scientist

Dear Abdelrahman,

I'm pleased to send this email to you. How are you ? I'm going to talk about a famous Egyptian scientist. He is Dr. Ahmed Zewail. He was born in 1946 and died in 2016. He studied science and became very successful.

He won the Noble Prize in chemistry in 1999.

He discovered important things about atoms. He is a great role model for young people.

Unit 4

Lessons 1 & 2

"An important decision you made"

It was my birthday last week and I planned to have a small party. I invited eight close friends who were responsible in class and finished their homework.

A day before the party, two more classmates asked to join. They weren't close to me and one of them was careless. I thought well before taking a decision and thought well about both positive and negative sides. At the end I decided that the party would be only for friends who behaved well to encourage others.

Lesson 3

"A problem you faced"

Last year I faced a problem before taking part in an important race. I used my skills in problem solving. I thought and considered the consequences of running. I made a wise decision not to run, because the injury could get worse. Instead, I chose to rest and recover fully for the next race. Because I recovered, I won the gold medal in the next race. The impact of this wise choice was positive. I believe that good decisions can lead to success.

Lessons 5 & 6

"A smart choice you made"

Last year, I made a smart choice to study a little every day. Before that, I used to study only before exams. I was always tired and worried. But when I started studying daily, I understood my lessons better. I also had more time to ask my teacher questions. In the exams, I got high marks and felt proud. It was a smart choice that helped me a lot.

General Exercises on Unit 4

"A bad choice you made"

Last month, I made a bad choice. I stayed up very late playing video games and didn't study for my English exam. The next day, I was very tired and I didn't do well in the test. I felt sad and my teacher wasn't happy.

I learned that playing too much and not studying is a bad idea. Now, I try to sleep early and study first. This helps me do better at school.

Unit 5

lessons 1 & 2

"Your future goal"

I want to have a special future. I dream to become a graphic designer. I enjoy drawing using technology. I joined a free art program in my city. I set a new goal to design my own business. Every step brings me closer to my future. To achieve your goal in the future, you should work hard and improve your skills.

lessons 5 & 6

"Your dream job"

My dream job is to be an engineer. I want to build bridges and tall buildings. I love math and science and I enjoy solving problems. Engineers help make the world better. I'll study hard to become a good engineer in the future. My father encourages me to study engineering. To achieve my dream I should study hard.

General Exercises on Unit 5

"A famous person who inspires you"

Mohammed Salah is a famous person that inspires me. I admire him so much. He is a talented player. He is kind and helpful to others. He does his best to achieve his best to to achieve his goals.

He doesn't waste time and practices well. He scored many goals and won many prizes. I hope to be like him one day.

Unit 6

lessons 1 & 2

"Being a global citizen"

Every one is part of a community and citizen of the world. A global citizen must follow the rules that keep us safe. He keeps his environment clean and saves electricity to protect his planet.

Being a global citizen means showing respect to everyone and work together in peace. It's also important to be fair and respect different cultures. A global citizen should have the ability to solve problems and improve his community.

lesson 3

"How to save the environment"

We have a global responsibility to protect our environment. We mustn't throw rubbish into the seas or leave plastic on the beaches to help sea animals. Water pollution has a terrible impact on sea life and water quality. We should encourage people to plant more trees. Also, we should encourage students to keep their schools and streets clean.

lessons 5 & 6

"The importance of following rules"

Rules are important in our life. They help us stay safe and organized. At school, we follow rules to learn well and respect our teacher and friends. On the road, traffic rules protect us from accidents. At home, rules help us live happily with our family. When we follow rules, people trust us and we become good citizens. So, we must always follow rules to make our world a better place.

General Exercises on Unit 6

"Teamwork"

Teamwork is when people work together to reach a goal. It's important because it helps us do things faster and better.

In a team, every one has a role and each person helps the others. We learn to listen, share ideas, and solve problems together. Teamwork is used in schools, sports, and jobs. When we work as a team, we feel happy and proud. Teamwork makes us stronger.

1. The Magic Classroom

الفصل ١

التحدى الأول

في مدرسة قرية مبهجة، كان الأطفال يحبون اكتشاف أشياء جديدة، ذات يوم، أعلن معلمهم السيد آدم خبرًا مثيرًا. قال: "الأسبوع القادم، سندخل الفصل السحري. للنجاح، عليكم إظهار المسؤولية والعمل معًا. كان الأطفال فضوليين ومتحمسين، عند حلول اليوم، عبروا بابًا متوهجًا ليجدوا أنفسهم في غرفة مليئة بالغاز عائمة، وكتب متلألئة، وأدلة سحرية. على الحائط، كتبت رسالة: "فقط من يتعاون ويبقى فضوليًا يمكنه كشف الأسرار".

قالت سارة، التي كانت دائمًا متشوقة للتعلّم: "دعونا نفكر بعناية ونساعد بعضنا". نظر عمر، الذي شعر أحيانًا بالخجل. شجعه زين الهادي اللطيف: "سنفعله معًا". كان تحديهم الأول صندوقًا مقفلًا. تشاركوا الأفكار وحلّوه بالعمل الجماعي. عند فتح الصندوق، ظهر ضوء ساطع، وكان تحدي جديد بانتظارهم. ابتسموا، مستعدين لأي شيء قادم.

الفصل ٢

قوة الوحدة

عند دخول الطلاب المرة التالية، كان الفصل السحري أكثر صعوبة أمام الأطفال امتد جسر غير مرئي، كتب عليه لافتة متوهجة: "فقط من يمتلك الاحترام والطموح والشجاعة يمكنه العبور". فكرت سارة لحظة: "الاحترام يعنى أن نسمع ونهتم ببعضنا". أضاف زين: "الطموح يعنى الإيمان بنجاحنا". أخذ عمر نفسًا عميقًا: "الشجاعة تعنى أن نحاول حتى عندما نكون خائفين". صعدوا على الجسر غير المرئي، ممسكين بأيدي بعضهم ومشجعين بعضًا.

جعلت كل كلمة لطيفة يقولونها وكل خطوة شجاعة يتخذونها الجسر يظهر تدرجًا تحت أقدامهم. عندما تردد عمر، هتف أصدقاؤه مشجعينه، ذكروه أنه ليس وحيدًا. في نهاية الجسر، ظهر باب ذهبي مكتوب عليه: "التصميم يفتح كل الأبواب. لا تستسلم أبدًا". جرب الفريق أفكارًا عديدة لكن دون جدوى. مرت ساعات، رفضوا الاستسلام. أخيرًا، همس عمر: "لننضم معًا. ربما الوحدة هي المفتاح". غنوا، وبيطع فتح الباب الذهبي. صفقوا وضحكوا، فخورين بعملهم الجماعي.

الفصل ٣

الدروس الخالدة

داخل الغرفة الأخيرة، وجد الأطفال كتابًا متوهجًا على منصة بلورية ظهر السيد آدم بانتسامة دافئة: "لقد أكملت الفصل السحري، لكن تذكروا: السحر الحقيقي ليس في الأحجيات، بل في القيم التي أظهرتموها. فتح الكتاب السحري، وظهرت كلمات مضيئة: "المسؤولية. الفضول. العمل الجماعي. الاحترام. التصميم. الشجاعة". قالت سارة مبتسمة: "حللنا كل مشكلة بالعمل معًا". أضاف زين: "احترمنا بعضنا وبقينا فضوليين". ابتسم عمر: "امتلكت شجاعة لأن أصدقائي آمنوا بي". أومأ السيد آدم رأسه: "أظهرتم أيضًا الصدق - فعل الصواب حتى عندما لا يراقبكم أحد.

عاد الأطفال إلى فصلهم، وقلوبهم مليئة بالفخر والسعادة. ومن ذلك اليوم، وعدوا باستخدام هذه القيم في كل ما يفعلونه - في المدرسة، والمنزل، وعبر الإنترنت علموا أن أعظم الدروس التي تعلموها لم تكن عن السحر، بل عن اللطف والاحترام وعدم الاستسلام على أنفسهم أو بعضهم البعض.

2. The Dream Team

الفصل ١

لا تستسلم أبداً

في قرية مبهجة، يُقام معرض سنوي للاختراعات. كان الأطفال متحمسين لابتكار شيء مفيد. قرر كل من سارة وعمر وزين، وصديقان جديان هما ليلي وكريم، بناء آلة لتوفير المياه. في اجتماعهم الأول، أراد عمر إنهاء العمل بسرعة وتولى زمام المبادرة. شعرت ليلي بالتهميش لأن أفكارها تم تجاهلها. توقفت سارة وقالت بلطف: "علينا أن نكون منصفين. أفكار الجميع مهمة. نحن فريق واحد. أضاف كريم بحكمة: "يجب أن نتحلى بالصدق. دعونا نتخذ قرارات صادقة ونفكر بعناية. اتفقوا جميعاً على احترام بعضهم البعض وإعطاء كل شخص فرصة للتحدث. حتى عندما فشلت أفكارهم في البداية، استمروا في المحاولة. ذكرتهم سارة قائلة: "هذا هو التصميم! لا يمكننا أن نستسلم".

الفصل ٢

هل تشعر ليلي بالخجل؟

مرت الأيام، وبدأت آلة توفير المياه تأخذ شكلاً ملموساً. لكن الفريق واجه مشكلة أخرى. الآلة عملت لكن ليس بشكل مثالي. شعر بعض الأعضاء بالإحباط. جمعتهم سارة قائلة: "هدفنا ليس الفوز بالمسابقة فقط، بل مساعدة الناس. دعونا لا نفقد الأمل". أوماً عمر موافقاً: "لدينا طموحٌ وهو توفير المياه لقربتنا. يمكننا تحقيق هذا! أما ليلي التي شعرت بالخجل سابقاً، فقد عبرت عن نفسها وقالت: "يمكننا تحسينها إذا اختبرناها مراراً". عمل الفريق حتى وقت متأخر، داعمين بعضهم البعض. احترموا كل فكرة، ونظموا العمل عند تقسيم المهام، وشاركوا الضحكات خلال الطريق. عندما أخطأ كريم، لم يلومه أحد، بل ساعده في إصلاح الخطأ.

أخيراً، اكتملت الآلة. كانت تستخدم مياه الأمطار لري النباتات وتنظيف الممرات الصغيرة. لم تكن مثالية، لكنها كانت فريدة ومليئة بالإخلاص. كان الفريق فخوراً بما بنوه - ليس الآلة فقط، بل الصداقة التي جمعتهم.

الفصل ٣

الفريق الحالم

في يوم معرض الاختراعات، امتلأت ساحة المدرسة بخيام ملونة وزوار فضوليين. قدمت الفرق مشاريعها بحماس. شرحت سارة وفريقها آلة توفير المياه بوضوح وثقة. ابتسم الحكام وسألوا: "لماذا اخترتم هذا المشروع؟" أجابت سارة: "أردنا ابتكار شيء ذي هدفٍ لمساعدة قربتنا. أوماً الحكام معجبين، ليس بالآلة فقط، بل بالعمل الجماعي والاحترام الذي أظهره الفريق. رغم فوز فريق آخر بالجائزة الأولى، لم تحزن سارة وأصدقائها. صفق معلمهم بخيرٍ قائلاً: "أنتم الفائزون الحقيقيون، أظهرتم نزاهة وتعاوناً وعملاً جماعياً. هذه القيم أهم من أي كأس". تبسم الأطفال واشتبكت أيديهم. علموا أنهم صنعوا شيئاً ذا معنى - ليس للمسابقة فقط، بل لمجتمعهم ولأنفسهم. وعدوا بحمل هذه القيم إلى المستقبل ومساعدة الآخرين بلطف واحترام وشجاعة. ومن ذلك اليوم، عُرفوا في قربتهم باسم "فريق الأحلام" - فريقٌ بقلبٍ وهدفٍ ووحدة.

للمراجعة والاختبارات
كإعادة المعاصر

 EL-MOASSER
GUIDE

English

By a group of supervisors

الصف الأول الإعدادي الفصل الدراسي الأول

https://t.me/G5_Y5
A Week Is Enough



1st
PREP.
2026
FIRST TERM

Listening

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الملحق

Model 1

◉ Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Ahmed likes digital
a. books b. pens c. tools d. cameras
- Ahmed uses them every day to his tasks.
a. repeat b. achieve c. change d. drive
- He uses the keyboard to his assignments
a. write b. save c. delete d. deliver

Model 2

◉ Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Omar is years old.
a. 12 b. 13 c. 14 d. 11
- He always thinks about his future
a. car b. wife c. house d. career
- Omar wants to be a/an
a. engineer b. doctor c. nurse d. vet

2. Language Functions

1. Expressing personal experiences about digital devices :

Questions ?

- What technology do you use every day?
- How do you use technology at school?
- Can you spend a whole day without using digital tools?

Answers ✓

- I use my mobile phone every day.
- Our teachers use smartboards and we do our homework on our laptops.
- No, I can't, but I know it's a bad habit.

2. Expressing personal learning styles :**Questions ?**

1. What are the different styles of learning?
2. Which learning style suits you best?

Answers ✓

- Visual learning, auditory learning and kinesthetic learning.
- I think visual learning is the best for me.

3. Talking about role models and leadership qualities.**Questions ?**

1. Who is your favorite role model?
2. What makes a person a hero in your community?
3. What are the main qualities of good leaders?

Answers ✓

- My favorite role model is Dr Ahmed Zewail.
- Their achievements.
- They should be kind, patient and responsible.

4. Talking about personal daily choices and giving advice:**Questions ?**

1. How can you deal with a problem you face?
2. What should I do to make a smart choice?

Answers ✓

- I think carefully about positive and negative sides of each choice.
- You should ask your teachers or parents.

5. Talking about your future goals and dreams :**Questions ?**

1. What's your dream goal?
2. Why do you like that?
3. How can you achieve that?

Answers ✓

- I hope to be a scientist one day.
- To help people by inventing new things.
- By studying hard and improving my skills.

6. Describing a good citizen behaviours.

Questions ?

1. What makes a good citizen?
2. How can you be a responsible citizen?
3. Can you give me an example of a good citizen?

Answers ✓

- Responsibility, honesty, kindness and love of justice.
- By doing my duty and taking care of others.
- The person who volunteers to help the poor and the needy.

3. Exercise on Language Functions

Complete the following dialogs.

Model 1

Ahmed and Ali are discussing how to be global citizens.

Ahmed : I think being a global citizen means caring about others.

Ali : I think so. We should also protect our (1)

Ahmed : (2) else can we do?

Ali : We can learn about different (3) and respect them.

Ahmed : (4) can I help my community?

Ali : By volunteering.

Ahmed : That's a good idea.

Model 2

Ghada and Salma are talking about sea life.

Ghada : Do you know that many turtles die from eating plastic?

Salma : That's terrible. We must stop (1) the ocean.

Ghada : How can we do that?

Salma : By using (2) plastic.

Ghada : (3) can we use less plastic?

Salma : By recycling them .

Ghada : That's (4)

Salma : We can make some posters about that.

Model 3

Yassir and Sammy are planning a project to help others.

Yassir : I have a great idea for helping poor people.

Samy : (1) is your idea?

Yassir : I think we can collect books for poor students.

Samy : That's great to (2) others.

Yassir : I have (3) books at home I don't use.

Samy : (4) can we give the books to them?

Yassir : We can put them in a box in front of the school library.

Model 4

Two students are discussing their future goals and careers.

A : What's your dream job in the future?

B : I want to be a (1)

A : Why?

B : To (2) sick people and care about the poor.

A : (3) should you do to achieve your goal?

B : I should work hard and (4) my skills.

A : I hope you a bright future.



احرص على اقتناء

كتب

EL-MOASSER

في اللغة الانجليزية

للمرحلة الاعدادية

1. General Revision on Vocabulary

مراجعة عامة على أهم المفردات اللغوية لكل وحدة وتدريبات عليها.

Unit 1

Important Vocabulary

| | | | |
|--------------|-----------------------|----------------|-------------------------|
| smartboard | سبورة ذكية | social media | وسائل التواصل الإجتماعي |
| night mode | الوضع الليلي | assignments | واجبات |
| website | موقع الكتروني | microphone | ميكروفون |
| digital | رقمي | cheerful | مرح / مبتهج |
| collaborate | يتعاون | responsibility | مسئولية |
| trust | يثق / ثقة | organize | ينظم |
| commands | أوامر | slogan | شعار |
| technology | تكنولوجيا | respectful | محترم |
| friendly | ودود | performance | أداء / عرض |
| device | جهاز | fluently | بطلاقة |
| screen time | وقت استخدام الشاشة | ebook | كتاب إلكتروني |
| notice board | لوحة إعلانات | online | متصل بالانترنت |
| cheerful | مبتهج | tool | جهاز - أداة |
| curious | فضولي / محب للاستطلاع | speakers | سماعات |
| collaborate | يتعاون | challenge | تحدي |

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. When you are a person, you use computer technology instead of paper or physical tools.

- a. colorful b. digital c. lazy d. manual

2. I prefer using mode to protect my eyes in low light.

- a. morning b. night c. evening d. mid-night

3. The is a portable computer that you can use anywhere.

- a. smartboard b. mobile
c. laptop d. microphone

4. Online platforms where people connect and share their contents are called
- a. stations b. social media c. free time d. devices
5. We can use the to make video calls.
- a. keyboard b. webcam c. smartboard d. printer
6. When you find a happy and positive person, you call them a person.
- a. sad b. lazy c. cheerful d. curious
7. Something that is difficult and tests someone's ability to complete is called
- a. change b. challenge
c. collaboration d. responsibility

Unit 2

Important Vocabulary

| | | | |
|----------------------|--------------------------------|----------------|---------------|
| journey | رحلة طويلة | distraction | تشيتت |
| methods | طرق | improve | يُحسن |
| focus | يركز | benefits | فوائد |
| visual learners | متعلمين بالمؤثرات البصرية | solutions | حلول |
| auditory learners | متعلمين بالمؤثرات السمعية | leadership | قيادة |
| kinesthetic learners | متعلمين عن طريق الأنشطة الحسية | respect | يُحترم |
| confident | واثق | ambition | طموح |
| determination | عزيمة / إصرار | cooperation | تعاون |
| hands-on activities | أنشطة تطبيقية | improve | يُحسن |
| division | تقسيم | communication | تواصل |
| ability | قدرة | isolation | عزله |
| technique | طريقة - أسلوب | mistakes | أخطاء |
| regularly | بانتظام | experiments | تجارب |
| mind maps | خرائط ذهنية | charts | مخططات بيانية |
| organize | يرتب | learning tools | أدوات تعليمية |
| explanations | تفسيرات | invisible | غير مرئي |
| | | courage | شجاعة |



Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- means to arrange or put things in a particular order or a neat way.
a. Repeat b. Organize c. Explain d. Improve
- When we talk about things that are related to sight and seeing, they are called
- means related to hands-on activities and physical involvements.
a. Auditory b. Visual c. Kinesthetic d. Organized
- You can make something better by it.
a. improving b. cutting c. helping d. feeding
- Ahmed is very confident and he has the to talk in front of any one.
a. message b. courage c. ambition d. fear
- things can't be seen.
a. Visible b. Invisible c. Helpful d. Digital
- When you others, then you show care and kindness to them.
a. respect b. delete c. refuse d. ignore

Unit 3

Important Vocabulary

| | | | |
|------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|------------------------|
| hero | بطل | admire | يُعجب بـ |
| community | مجتمع | achievement | إنجاز |
| atomic radiation | اشعاع ذري | absent | غائب |
| motivation | حافز / دافع | vacation | إجازة |
| celebrity | شخص مشهور | politics | علم السياسة |
| powerful | قوي | tips | نصائح |
| kidney diseases | أمراض الكلى | biography | سيرة ذاتية |
| impact | تأثير | admire | يُعجب بـ |
| performance | عرض / أداء | kidney transplant | زراعة الكلى |
| qualities | سمات / مميزات | grin | يبتسم |
| achievement | إنجاز / نجاح | nod | يومئ برأسه / يوافق |
| role model | قدوة / مثل يحتذى به | State Appreciation Award | جائزة الدولة التقديرية |
| respect | يحترم - احترام | dedication | إخلاص / تفاني |
| geographer | مختص في علم الجغرافيا | overcome | يتغلب علي |
| combine | دمج | | |

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Omar doesn't give up easily. He is always
a. happy b. lazy c. cheerful d. determined
- A is the person who does great things for others.
a. giant b. hero c. planner d. patient
- My father is the person who helps me all the time. He is my model.
a. rule b. roll c. role d. real
- To means to feel admiration for someone.
a. respect b. qualify c. encourage d. ignore
- I can't reach the new restaurant. Can you send me its?
a. meal b. recipe c. location d. cooker
- Dr Gamal Hemdan the State Appreciation Award in 1980.
a. sent b. won c. made d. lost
- When you are keen to learn or know more about something, this means that you are
a. brave b. curious c. famous d. happy

Unit 4

Important Vocabulary

| | | | |
|--------------|-----------------------|--------------------|----------------|
| decision | قرار | options | خيارات |
| options | خيارات | reject | يرفض |
| responsible | مسئول | consequence | نتيجة |
| risk | مخاطرة | benefit | بستفيد |
| injury | إصابة | interview | مقابلة شخصية |
| athlete | لاعب قوى / لاعب رياضي | judgement | حكم / قضاء |
| cheerful | مرح / مبتهج | worried | قلق |
| nervous | عصبى / متوتر | effectively | بفاعلية |
| smart choice | خيار ذكي | final decision | القرار النهائي |
| waste | يُسرف / يُضيع | influence = impact | تأثير |
| careless | مهمل | honesty | أمانة |
| confident | واثق | | |

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- To be means to act with care and think of others.
a. responsible b. careless c. shy d. lazy

2. The result or the effect of an action is called a/an
 a. cause b. consequence c. event d. test
3. The synonym of the word "decision" is ".....".
 a. choice b. question c. risk d. cause
4. Mr Ayman is a wise man. He isn't
 a. sensible b. foolish c. active d. clever
5. "Careless" is opposite of ".....".
 a. cheerful b. important c. responsible d. false
6. When you have, means that you are honest and have strong moral principles .
 a. responsibility b. honesty c. bravery d. attention
7. I don't like him, so I his orders and went away
 a. wrote b. ignored c. gave d. encouraged

Unit 5

Important Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---------------|-----------------|---------------|----------------------|
| advertisement | إعلان | ambition | طموح |
| bright future | مستقبل مشرق | support | يدعم / يساند |
| opportunities | فرص | graduate | يتخرج / خريج |
| gift | هدية / منحة | reality | حقيقه / واقع |
| contact | يتصل | ability | قدرة |
| natural | طبيعي | friendship | صداقة |
| talent | موهبة | future career | مهنة مستقبلية |
| match | يلتئم / يناسب | aspiration | طموح |
| passion | عاطفة - حب | purpose | غرض - هدف |
| skill | مهارة | opportunity | فرصة |
| profession | مهنة | interview | مقابلة |
| career | وظيفة | path | طريق - مسار |
| competition | مسابقة - منافسة | education | تعليم |
| fairness | عدل/مساواة | unique | فريد من نوعه / فُميز |
| shy | خجول | | |

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- My is to become a doctor and help sick people.
a. recipe b. dream c. food d. story
- Omar wishes to find a profession that his talent.
a. colors b. covers c. matches d. reduces
- Working hard helps Ahmed his goals.
a. forget b. achieve c. learn d. read
- I felt when I came first.
a. shy b. sad c. hungry d. proud
- When your child makes mistakes, you shouldn't him, but help him.
a. blame b. praise c. cut d. feed
- Mohamed Salah has a great in playing football.
a. talent b. face c. music d. recipe
- You should your skills to get a good profession in the future.
a. kill b. develop c. reduce d. hurt

Unit 6

Important Vocabulary

| | | | |
|----------------|------------------------|-------------|---------------|
| global citizen | مواطن عالمي | honest | أمين |
| rules | قواعد | instead | بدلاً من |
| encourage | يشجع | environment | البيئة |
| duty | واجب | rubbish | القمامة |
| volunteer | متطوع / يتطوع | danger | خطر |
| participate | يشارك | beauty | جمال |
| trophy | كأس | unity | وحدة |
| global problem | مشكلة عالمية | littering | القاء القمامة |
| planet | كوكب | gloves | قفازات |
| unfair | ظالم - غير عادل | diversity | تنوع - تعدد |
| protect | يحمي | clean-ups | تنظيف |
| volunteer | متطوع | generations | أجيال |
| responsibility | مسؤولية | creature | مخلوق |
| reusable | يمكن استخدامه مرة أخرى | care | رعاية - عناية |

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- You can your children by helping them to do good things.
a. encourage b. disappoint c. kill d. hurt
- To your environment means to look after and save it .
a. damage b. pollute c. protect d. prevent
- You can be a by giving your time to help others without being paid.
a. volunteer b. citizen c. gardener d. student
- People have a real when they do their duty and take care of something.
a. ability b. courage
c. responsibility d. irresponsibility
- All people have the to enjoy the beauty of nature.
a. duty b. right c. respect d. impact
- The are a set of instructions that people must follow.
a. gloves b. rules c. citizens d. parks
- Pollution has very dangerous on the environment.
a. impact b. gloves c. respect d. rules

2. General Revision on Language in use

مراجعة على أهم القواعد اللغوية لكل وحدة وتدريبات عليها.

Unit 1

1. Adverbs of Frequency ظروف التكرار



تستخدم ظروف التكرار مع زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن عدد مرات تكرار حدوث فعل ما :

ex. -She **always** studies hard for her final exams.

2. The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

يتكون زمن المضارع البسيط من :

A) Affirmative statement:

(أ) الجملة الخبرية :

I / We / You / They / فاعل جمع + inf. المصدر
 He / She / It / فاعل مفرد + inf. المصدر + [s/es/ies]

ex. - He drives an old car.

B) Negative statement:

(ب) الجملة المنفية :

فاعل + [doesn't / don't] + inf.

ex. - We don't go to school on Fridays.

C) Interrogative:

(ج) الجملة الاستفهامية :

[Do / Does] + فاعل + مصدر الفعل inf. ?

ex. - Does Mariam listen to music on the bus?

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Mona always the dishes in the morning.
 a. wash b. washing c. washes d. is washing
- They go to school on holidays.
 a. doesn't b. don't c. aren't d. haven't
- Salim lunch at 2 o'clock.
 a. has usually b. usually has
 c. have usually d. usually have
- He drives the car on busy roads.
 a. doesn't b. don't c. never d. isn't

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

- My grandma (visit often) us on Fridays.
- What (do) Ayman carry in his bag?
- Salma (doesn't) happy today.
- Hassan and Ghada (don't) lazy. They are active.

1. Expressing ability التعبير عن القدرة

Subj. + can + [inf.]

يستطيع / يقدر على

ex. - I can carry this heavy box.

Subj. + can't + [inf.]

لا يستطيع / لا يقدر على

ex. - Mona can't drive a car.

2. The Present Continuous Tense زمن المضارع المستمرFormation التكوين

1

Affirmative Statements

الجملة الخبرية
المثبتة

| | | | | | |
|----------------------------|----|-----|---|------------|-------|
| I | am | | | | |
| He / She / It / فاعل مفرد | + | is | + | inf. | + ing |
| We / You / They / فاعل جمع | | are | | مصدر الفعل | |

- ex. - Manal and Mona are studying calligraphy.
 - Sami is learning sign language at school.
 - I'm sitting in my English class now.

2

Negative Statements

الجملة الخبرية
المنفية

| | | | | | |
|----------------------------|----|-----|---|--------------|-------|
| I | am | | | | |
| He / She / It / فاعل مفرد | + | is | + | (not) + inf. | + ing |
| We / You / They / فاعل جمع | | are | | مصدر الفعل | |

- ex. - She is not learning English at the moment.
 - They are not playing tennis now.

Usage الاستخدام

• يعبر هذا الزمن عن حدث يقع أثناء التحدث (لحظة الكلام).

ex. - They are designing a new library now.

• يستخدم هذا الزمن أيضًا لوصف أحداث مخطط لها في المستقبل.

ex. - We are going to Aswan tomorrow.

- They are having a party tonight.

Key Words كلمات دالة : غالبًا تأتي مع الزمن :

| | | | | | |
|---------|-------|------------|---------------|----------------------|-----------------|
| now | الآن | Take care! | احذرا | at the moment | في تلك اللحظة |
| Look! | انظرا | still | مازال | at present | في الوقت الحاضر |
| Listen! | انصت! | tonight | في هذه الليلة | Look out! Watch out! | احترس |

ex. - Listen! She's singing.

- He is working now.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Ahmed and Marwa each other at home now.
a. help b. helps c. are helping d. helped
- What they growing in their field at present?
a. are b. do c. have d. could
- Listen! The baby
a. cry b. cries c. is crying d. cried
- What can they before the exam ?
a. do b. does c. doing d. did

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

- They (**don't**) playing football now.
- What are you (**did**) now?
- Salma can't (**cooking**) lunch.
- They (**design**) a new hospital at present.

Unit 3

The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

Formation التكوين

1 Affirmative statements الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

A Regular verbs : الأفعال المنتظمة :

Subject الفاعل + الفعل الثاني للفعل

• لاحظ : قواعد إضافة (d/ ed/ ied) للفعل المنتظم في زمن الماضي البسيط.

| الفعل المنتهي بـ | يضاف له | مثال Example |
|---|-------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| e [بعض الأفعال] | + d | invite → invited |
| y [حرف ساكن] | + ied | carry → carried |
| y [حرف متحرك] | + ed | stay → stayed |
| [حرف ساكن يسبقه حرف متحرك] بعض الأفعال لا يضاعف الحرف الأخير | + ed يضاعف الحرف الأخير | stop → stopped visit → visited |

B Irregular verbs : الأفعال غير المنتظمة :

هناك أفعال غير منتظمة لا تتبع هذه القاعدة تحفظ مثل :

| الفعل | الماضي | الفعل | الماضي |
|-------|--------|-------|--------|
| cut | cut | put | put |
| eat | ate | drink | drank |

• لاحظ الآتي : يتم استخدام (verb to be) في زمن الماضي كالتالي.

| | | |
|---------------------------------|---|----------------|
| I / He / She / It / [فاعل مفرد] | → | was / wasn't |
| We / They / You / [فاعل جمع] | → | were / weren't |

ex. - Dr Magdy Yacoub **was** born in 1935.

- The Egyptian handball team **was** the first team from Africa to win the World Cup.

Key Words كلمات دالة

| | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| • in the past في الماضي | • سنة ماضية to سنة ماضية + from | year السنة الماضية |
| • ago + مدة محددة منذ | • When I was (young) / (little) | month الشهر الماضي |
| • yesterday أمس | • عندما كنت (صغيرًا في السن) | week الأسبوع الماضي |
| • in + سنة ماضية (2000) | | Tuesday الثلاثاء الماضي |

ex. - Dr Magdy **stopped** most of his work as a surgeon **a long time ago**.

Usage الاستخدام

(1) It is used to talk about actions that started and finished in the past.

◀ يستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط للحديث عن أحداث بدأت وانتهت في الماضي.

ex. - She **went** to school two hours **ago**.

(2) It is used to talk about past habits.

◀ يستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط أيضًا للحديث عن عادات في الماضي.

ex. - **When I was young**, I **played** football every day.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Ziad and Ramy happy at the party yesterday.
 a. didn't b. weren't c. don't d. aren't
- How did they to the beach?
 a. went b. go c. goes d. going
- Mona born in 2006. She was born in 2007.
 a. wasn't b. didn't c. isn't d. hasn't
- She to school an hour ago.
 a. goes b. went c. is going d. go

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

- When I was young, I (**watch**) TV every night.
- Hassan (**doesn't**) happy on his last holiday.
- Where did she (**lost**) her bag?
- (**Does**) they come early yesterday ?

Unit 4

Giving advice using "should & shouldn't"

إعطاء النصيحة باستخدام (should & shouldn't) بمعنى ينبغي أن / لا ينبغي أن تستخدم الصيغ التالية لإعطاء النصيحة.

should

Subject الفاعل + should + inf. المصدر.....

• ينبغي أن «تستخدم للنصح بفعل شيء جيد أو مفيد»

ex. - You **should eat** a lot of fruit and vegetables.

shouldn't

Subject الفاعل + shouldn't + inf. المصدر.....

• لا ينبغي أن «تستخدم للنصح بعدم فعل شيء غير جيد أو غير مفيد»

ex. - You **shouldn't eat** too many crisps and cakes.

First Conditional

الحالة الشرطية الأولى

If + simple present tense , will + inf.

ex. - If you **study** hard, you'll **come** first.

أداة الاستفهام + will + inf. + if + present simple ?

ex. - What **will happen** if you **study** hard ?



Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. You should your grandparents every week.

- a. visited b. visiting c. visit d. visits

2. What should I when I forget my book?

- a. did b. do c. does d. doing

3. You shouldn't too many sweets.

- a. eating b. eat c. eats d. ate

4. If Ali early, he will catch the train.

- a. come b. came c. comes d. coming

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. What should I (**eating**) to be healthy?

2. If I sleep early, I (**would**) get up early.

3. (**Would**) he come first if he studies hard ?

4. You shouldn't (**eating**) too much sugar.

Necessity or Obligation التعبير عن الضرورة أو الإلزام

1 **must + inf.** يجب أن

► We use (must) to talk about things that are necessary to do.

- تستخدم (must) بمعنى [يجب أن] للتعبير عن الضرورة لفعل شيء ما..

ex. - You **must arrive** on time.

2 **mustn't + inf.** يجب ألا

► We use (mustn't) to talk about things that are necessary not to do.

- تستخدم (mustn't) بمعنى [يجب ألا] للتعبير عن عدم الضرورة [المنع أو الحظر] لفعل شيء ما.

ex. - You **mustn't talk** in the library.

3 **We use the infinitive without "to" after must/mustn't:**

• **لاحظ :** أننا نستخدم مصدر الفعل بدون (to) بعد (must / mustn't)

ex. - You **must listen** to the teacher.

- You **mustn't climb** the pyramids.

4 **Interrogative** صيغة الاستفهام

A Yes/No question : السؤال بـ «هل» :

Must + subject الفاعل + **inf.** مصدر الفعل + **... ?**

ex. - **Must I park here ?** - Yes, you **must**. - No, you **mustn't**.

B Wh- question : السؤال باستخدام كلمة استفهام

Question word + **must** + **subject** + **inf.** + **... ?**
كلمة استفهام + **mustn't** + الفاعل + مصدر الفعل

ex. - **What must I do to my parents?** - You **must obey** them.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I revise for tomorrow's exam ?

- a. Must b. Have c. Are d. Has

2. You drink from the canal. It's dangerous.

- a. aren't b. mustn't c. isn't d. haven't

3. You park here. It's against the law.

- a. must b. mustn't c. have to d. haven't

4. You mustn't in hospitals.

- a. smoke b. smoking c. smokes d. smoked

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. I (**not walk**) on the grass.

2. What must you (**did**) if there is a fire ?

3. Drivers must (**wears**) their seatbelts.

4. Hassan must (**to hurry**) to catch the train.

Master your skills

يهدف إلى تنمية
مهارات
اللغة الإنجليزية



 EL-MOASSER

1 Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Unit 1

Student's Book

- I often use my to search for news. (SB P. 8)
a. fridge b. oven c. tablet d. bed
- I use the night so the screen doesn't hurt my eyes. (SB P. 8)
a. made b. mode c. technology d. website
- The is an interactive board used in classrooms for teaching lessons. (SB P. 9)
a. laptop b. tablet c. smartboard d. sprinter
- are online platforms where people connect and share content. (SB P. 10)
a. Screen b. Social media c. Smartphone d. Microphone
- means to work with others and help them. (SB P. 15)
a. Collaborate b. Challenge c. Change d. Decide

Unit 2

Student's Book

- Things that are related to sight and seeing are called (SB P. 23)
a. manual b. visual c. auditory d. kinesthetic
- means to arrange things in a particular order or a neat way. (SB P. 23)
a. Organize b. Learn c. Discuss d. Help
- To make something better means to it. (SB P. 24)
a. destroy b. prove c. improve d. reduce
- Special methods or ways of doing something are called (SB P. 24)
a. breaks b. students c. techniques d. problems
- Things that can't be seen are called (SB P. 29)
a. visible b. invisible c. normal d. visual

Unit 3

Student's Book

- people are not frightened. (SB P. 37)
a. Frightened b. Brave c. Passionate d. Kind
- To give someone motivation means that you them. (SB P. 37)
a. inspire b. invent c. discourage d. hurt
- Ahmed doesn't give up easily. He is (SB P. 37)
a. passionate b. determined c. frightened d. famous
- I feel admiration for Dr Magdy Yacoub. I him so much. (SB P. 38)
a. respect b. reflect c. affect d. protect
- To is to smile happily. (SB P. 43)
a. game b. germ c. grain d. grin

Unit 4

Student's Book

- The responsible person acts with and thinks of others. (SB P. 61)
a. dream b. care c. carelessness d. ability
- To things is to think carefully before deciding. (SB P. 61)
a. decide b. evaluate c. face d. give up
- Things you want to achieve are called your (SB P. 62)
a. duties b. goals c. games d. problems
- "....." is the synonym of "consequence". (SB P. 65)
a. Cause b. Result c. Rule d. Source
- "....." is the antonym of "wise". (SB P. 65)
a. Foolish b. Sensible c. Lazy d. Clever

Unit 5

Student's Book

- Working hard helps Omar his goals. (SB P. 79)
a. forget b. read c. learn d. achieve
- is a natural ability you have. (SB P. 79)
a. Art b. Talent c. Prize d. Game
- The team didn't blame Karim when he a mistake. (SB P. 81)
a. give b. took c. made d. did

4. I have a big to be a doctor. (SB P. 85)
 a. ambition b. career c. skill d. talent
5. I'm going to take a course to my English next summer. (SB P. 85)
 a. reduce b. improve c. prepare d. discourage

Unit 6 ▶

Student's Book

1. To means to look after or save something. (SB P. 79)
 a. protect b. encourage c. feel d. volunteer
2. You don't treat people in an equal way. You're (SB P. 79)
 a. fair b. unfair c. lazy d. sad
3. To is to give your time to help others without being paid. (SB P. 80)
 a. respect b. volunteer c. involve d. collect
4. We must keep the oceans clean and (SB P. 83)
 a. save b. dirty c. safe d. polluted
5. Try to the amount of plastic you use. (SB P. 83)
 a. respect b. reduce c. enjoy d. prefer

2 Language in use

- ◎ Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

Unit 1 ▶

Student's Book

1. Ali (don't) uses his car on Sunday. (SB P. 11)
2. How (long) do you use your computer in your school? - Twice (SB P. 11)
3. What device do you (using) most? (SB P. 11)
4. Ali (doesn't) late for school.

Unit 2 ▶

Student's Book

1. I (revise) my vocabulary notes right now. (SB P. 25)
2. We (can't) focus better when we have a goal. (SB P. 25)
3. Layla (use) an app to learn words at the moment. (SB P. 25)
4. I'm (learn) new vocabs at the moment. (SB P. 25)

Unit 3 ▶

Student's Book

1. What (do) you do last Friday? (SB P. 39)
2. I (spend) two hours studying English yesterday. (SB P. 34)
3. We (be) happy when my brother bought a new car last week. (SB P. 39)
4. My friend (is) absent yesterday. (SB P. 45)

Unit 4 ▶

Student's Book

1. If I have a school trip, I (would) get up early. (SB P. 63)
2. You will (won) the competition if you train well. (SB P. 83)
3. If he (isn't) do his homework, his teacher will be angry. (SB P. 63)
4. You shouldn't (wasting) your time. (SB P. 63)

Unit 5 ▶

Student's Book

1. He (going) to watch a movie. (SB P. 77)
2. I'm (going visit) my friend. (SB P. 77)
3. Are you going to (plays) football? (SB P. 77)
4. They (not) going to do their homework. (SB P. 77)

Unit 6 ▶

Student's Book

1. At home, I must (helping) my family. (SB P. 81)
2. Marwan (mustn't) hurry to catch the train. (SB P. 81)
3. We (must) throw rubbish on the ground. (SB P. 81)
4. We must (respecting) different cultures. (SB P. 81)

A week is enough

مراجعة المنهج
و التمكن منه في
اسبوع واحد فقط

EL-MOASSER



Sample Test 1

1. Listen and answer the questions :

استمع إلى معلمك واجب عن الأسئلة. [نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب].

1. Where did Omar go with his brother?
2. What did Omar like most?
3. What did he do for his school project?
4. Where did they eat lunch?

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. We should the environment.
a. protect b. leave c. use d. build
2. I always use the so that the screen wouldn't hurt my eyes.
a. tablet b. laptop c. night mode d. ebook
3. What things does Ayman usually in his bag? - He has some books and some pens.
a. do b. has c. does d. have
4. She her homework yesterday.
a. does b. doing c. did d. do

3. Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

brave – leader – collaborate – successful – team

People need to cooperate and work together to achieve their goals. Working in a (1) helps you learn from others. A good (2) listens and shares ideas. We all (3) when we work together. A (4) person always tries to do what is right. I advise each of us to be an effective team member.

4. Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Omar's school organized a special event called "Science Day" to help students learn more about science in a fun way. Each class was asked to

create a science project and present it to others. Omar's group decided to build a small windmill. They used simple materials like paper, sticks, and a small motor to make it work. The windmill could spin when the motor was turned on. During the event, Omar explained how the windmill worked to other students, parents, and teachers. Everyone listened carefully. The science teacher was very **impressed** and praised Omar's group for their creative work.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. What event did the school organize?

- a. Art Day b. Sports Day c. Science Day d. Book Day

2. What does the underlined word "**impressed**" most likely mean ?

- a. confused b. unhappy c. pleased d. bored

b. Answer the following questions :

3. Why did the school organize a "Science Day" ?

.....

4. What materials did Omar's group use to build the windmill?

.....

5. What did Omar explain during the event ?

.....

6. Why do you think the teacher praised Omar's group?

.....

5. Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets :

1. He doesn't do voluntary work.

(never)

2. It is better to work to a plan.

(should)

6. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. I (sometimes) wake up at 6:30. I do that every day.

2. We (visit) the museum next weekend.

3. You (mustn't) wear your seatbelt. It is safer to you.

4. If they (studied) hard, they will pass.

7. Complete the following dialog :

Omar and Ali are talking about daily technology use.

Omar : Do you usually use your phone in the morning?

Ali : (1)

Omar : (2)

Ali : I use it to check my Facebook.

Omar : Can you use your phone in class?

Ali : (3)

Omar : (4)

Ali : Yes, technology is very useful for us.

► The Story**8. A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. Zain was a calm and student.

- a. shy b. kind c. eager d. nervous

2. Sara said the team's was to help people and save water.

- a. competition b. problem
c. purpose d. project

b. Answer the following questions :

1. How did the children solve the challenge of the locked box?

.....

2. Who felt left out at the first meeting?

.....

9. Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on the following topic :

"A school trip you enjoyed"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Sample Test 2

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة. [نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب].

- Nadia visited with her class?
a. a zoo b. a park c. an animal shelter d. a pet shop
- The students the dogs.
a. painted b. fed c. played d. watched
- Nadia her favorite puppy.
a. took a photo with b. gave food to
c. adopted d. cleaned
- The teacher said they did a good
a. job b. run c. talking d. food

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- In a team, all members should in order to succeed.
a. challenge b. announce c. collaborate d. message
- Their teacher made a/an about a competition.
a. mystery b. responsibility c. announcement d. challenge
- My brother to school by bus every day.
a. go b. to go c. goes d. going
- If we now, we will be late.
a. didn't leave b. leave
c. don't leave d. left

3. Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

competition – determined – practice – team – coach

Sports is really important in our life. Amal was part of the school football (1) They had a big (2) on Friday. Every day, she stayed after school to (3) with her friends. Their (4) helped them play better and feel more excited. I hope all of us can practice a team sport.

4. Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Hana and her classmates worked on a special school project about good health. Each student created a poster on a different topic and presented it to the class. Hana's poster focused on drinking water. She explained that water keeps the body healthy, helps the brain work better, and gives us energy. During her talk, she shared helpful tips, showed colourful pictures, and even asked her classmates some questions to keep them interested. She spoke clearly and with confidence. The class really enjoyed the presentation and said it was fun. They learned many new things from each other's work, and the teacher was proud of their efforts.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- What was Hana's poster about?

| | |
|-------------------|---------------------|
| a. Brushing teeth | b. Sleeping well |
| c. Drinking water | d. Exercising daily |
- What does the underlined word "colourful" most likely mean?

| | |
|--------------------------|------------------------------|
| a. black and white | b. bright and full of colors |
| c. small and hard to see | d. boring and plain |

b. Answer the following questions :

- What did each student present in class?
.....

- Why did Hana say drinking water is important?
.....

- What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to?
.....

- How did Hana make her presentation interesting?
.....

5. Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets :

- They intend to build a new school. (going)
- You are not allowed to waste time. (mustn't)

6. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

- The students (prepare) their projects now.
- He (never eat) fast food.
- We (go) to buy some plants for the garden tomorrow.
- I (wasn't) ask my teacher for help yesterday.

7. Complete the following dialog :

Salma and Nour are talking about study tips.

Salma : I find it hard to remember everything before exams.

Nour : Me too! I (1) organize my ideas.

Salma : (2) do you usually study in the morning or in the evening?

Nour : In the evening. What (3) you?

Salma : In the evening as well, but I am sometimes sleepy.

Nour : Just find the time that works (4) for you!

► The Story

8. A. Read and write (T) True or (F) False :

1. At the first meeting, Omar wanted to finish quickly and take the lead. ()
2. The first challenge was an invisible bridge. ()

B. Complete the sentences using the words in the box :

pride – sadness – rainwater

1. The machine used to water plants and clean small pathways.
2. The children returned to their class, their hearts full of

9. Write an email of EIGHTY (80) words about "your favorite place in your community." You are Ali and your email address is ali@gmail.com.

To your friend Sami, his email address is sami@moe.com.

From

To

Subject

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Sample Test 3

1. Listen and answer the questions :

استمع إلى معلمك واجب عن الأسئلة. [نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب].

1. What did the students prepare for?
2. What did Leila do?
3. When was the performance?
4. What did every one do in the end?

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I want to this book to the library.
 a. lend b. borrow c. return d. carry
2. A doctor works in a
 a. factory b. hospital c. museum d. farm
3. You be quiet in the library.
 a. must b. can c. may d. could
4. The students their homework every day.
 a. does b. doing c. do d. did

3. Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

recycle – posters – paper – important – school

In our school, we learn to take care of the planet. It's important to be a global citizen. The teacher asked us to make (1) about the environment. I made one about how to (2) plastic and (3) This is very (4) for our future. Recycling is one of the most important factors (عوامل) that solve some of the earth's problems.

4. Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Salma wanted to improve her study habits, so she made a weekly plan. She also made colourful mind maps, made flashcards, and wrote short notes to organize her lessons. She even added drawings to make studying more fun. Her older brother, who is very organized, gave her tips on how to avoid distractions and stay focused. Salma also created a quiet study corner in her room with good lighting. She said **this** new routine helped her feel more **confident** and independent. Her teacher noticed how much she improved and encouraged her to share her plan with her classmates. Salma was proud of her work so she decided to continue this method every week.

Sample Test 4

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة. [نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب].

1. What club did Tarek join?

- a. Reading club
- b. Drawing club
- c. Science club
- d. Drama club

2. On what day is the club held?

- a. On Tuesday
- b. On Wednesday
- c. On Thursday
- d. On Saturday

3. What did he make last week?

- a. A robot
- b. A quiz game
- c. A poster
- d. A photo album

4. Who liked his project?

- a. His classmates
- b. His family
- c. His teacher
- d. His friend

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. When I discuss topics with my friends, I learn better. I am a/an learner.

- a. visual
- b. kinesthetic
- c. auditory
- d. mysterious

2. My father made a good to visit Alexandria instead of Hurghada .

- a. honor
- b. request
- c. decision
- d. consequence

3. Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

trees – watered – garden – safe – beautiful

We made a school clean-up event. First, we cleaned the area. Then we planted some (1) We planted flowers and (2) them. The place looked (3), and everyone helped to keep it clean and (4) to all of us.

4. Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Tarek and his classmates worked on a project about responsibility. Each group created a poster that showed how to be a good citizen at school and in the community. Tarek's group focused on classroom rules and ways students can respect them. They added pictures, tips, and examples to explain their ideas clearly. During the presentation, Tarek talked about why following rules is important. He said it helps everyone feel safe, fair, and happy. The teacher said their work was creative and meaningful. Tarek was proud to share something that could make a positive difference in the school.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- What was the main topic of Tarek's group project?
 - Science experiments
 - Healthy food
 - Community events
 - Responsibility
- What is the opposite of the word "positive" in the text?
 - Negative
 - Helpful
 - Active
 - Honest

b. Answer the following questions :

3. What did each group create for the project?

.....

4. How did Tarek's group explain classroom responsibility?

.....

5. What did the teacher think of their work?

.....

6. What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to ?

.....

5. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- If she well, she will feel better.
 - sleep
 - slept
 - sleeps
 - sleeping
- I going to visit my cousin tomorrow.
 - am
 - was
 - will
 - is

6. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

- They (**play**) football now.
- She often (**eat**) vegetables.
- We (**aren't**) absent from school yesterday.
- You (**should**) waste water.

7. Complete the following dialog :

The class is preparing for a school day.

Teacher: The play is tomorrow. Are you ready?

Ali : (1)

Teacher: (2)

Ali : Yes, I know my lines very much.

Teacher: (3)

Ali : I'll bring the costumes with me tomorrow.

Teacher: Great! We will meet tomorrow. Good luck !

Ali : (4)

► The Story

8. A. Answer the following questions :

1. What did the judges ask the team about their project ?

.....

2. What appeared at the end of the invisible bridge ?

.....

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. In the first meeting, Lily felt that her ideas were

- a. helpful b. ignored c. bad d. clever

2. Zain said that means we believe in our success.

- a. respect b. courage c. ambition d. teamwork

9. Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on the following topic :

"Your favorite role model"

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Sample Test 5

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة. [نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب].

- Sarah joined event.
 - a birthday party
 - a beach clean-up
 - a festival
 - a market
- Sarah and her family collected
 - stones
 - shells
 - plastic and cans
 - shoes
- Who joined Sarah at the event?
 - Her teacher
 - Her cousins
 - Her family
 - Her neighbor
- Sarah felt to help the environment.
 - tired
 - sad
 - proud
 - bored

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Learning in groups has more than learning alone.
 - leadership
 - devices
 - benefits
 - apps
- Teamwork teaches students cooperation and
 - devices
 - playing
 - leadership
 - carelessness

3. Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

creative – proud – ideas – paints – project

Our class made a poster about recycling. Everyone gave (1) and drew pictures. I used blue and green (2) to make a tree. My teacher said it was very (3) I felt (4) of our group project.

4. Read the following text, then answer the questions :

During a group project, Mona noticed that one of her classmates copied information from a website without saying where he got it. She wasn't sure what to do. After thinking about it, she decided to speak honestly with her classmate and explained why that choice wasn't fair. Her classmate apologized and agreed to fix the mistake by adding the source. Later, their teacher was proud of them because they worked together to solve the problem. Mona felt proud too for doing the right thing and helping her group take responsibility for their work.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Mona talked with her classmate because
 - a. He didn't do any work
 - b. He was late for class
 - c. He copied without saying the source
 - d. He forgot the poster
2. The opposite of the underlined word "fair" is ".....".
 - a. honest
 - b. unfair
 - c. clear
 - d. kind

b. Answer the following questions :

3. What did Mona notice during the group project?
.....
4. What does the underlined pronoun "them" refer to?
.....
5. How did the classmate respond to Mona's advice?
.....
6. Do you think Mona made the right choice? Why or why not?
.....

5. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. he attend the meeting yesterday?
 - a. Did
 - b. Was
 - c. Must
 - d. Is
2. He to music right now.
 - a. listen
 - b. is listening
 - c. listens
 - d. listened

6. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. I always (**am taking**) the bus to school.
2. They (**prepare**) for the festival now.
3. If he gets good marks, (**should**) you be happy with him?
4. He (**reads**) an amazing story yesterday.

7. Complete the following dialog :

The teacher and Laila are talking about going to the library.

Teacher : Where are you going?

Laila : To the (1) to return a book.

Teacher : (2) you enjoy it?

Laila : Yes, it was about the sun and other stars.

Teacher : That sounds interesting.

Laila : I need your help, sir. (3) can I come to your office?

Teacher : You can come during the (4) I will be waiting for you.

► The Story

8. A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Who said, "We must have honesty"?

- a. Sara b. Karim c. Omar d. Lily

2. What opened after they sang together ?

- a. A window b. a treasure chest
c. A silver box d. A golden door

B. Answer the following questions :

1. What was the purpose of their project ?

.....

2. What did the children promise to use in everything they did ?

.....

9. Write an email of EIGHTY (80) words about "A great day you had at school." You are Ali and your email address is ali@gmail.com. To your friend Sami, his email address is sami@moe.com.

From

To

Subject

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

who was also a doctor, to study better ways to fight the disease. Jane believed science could help people live longer, healthier lives. She tested new medicines and helped create methods that are still used today. Jane also wanted to give women and African Americans more chances in science. She became a **leader** in her field and showed that **hard** work and care for others can bring real change.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Dr. Jane Cooke Wright was known for
 - building hospitals
 - discovering planets
 - fighting cancer
 - teaching children
- The synonym of the underlined word "**hard**" is ".....".
 - tiny
 - big
 - difficult
 - easy

b. Answer the following questions :

- Who did Jane work with in her early research?
.....

- What was her goal in developing new medicines?
.....

- To whom does the underlined word "**leader**" refer ?
.....

- Do you think Jane's work helped change people's lives? Why or why not?
.....

5. Find the mistakes in the following and correct them :

- If you arrive early, you will catch the bus. (.....)
- I going to do voluntary work. (.....)

6. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

- We (**go**) to the museum at the moment.
- I (**walk usually**) to school.
- You (**must**) speak impolitely.
- If he (**isn't drink**) water, he will feel sick.

7. Complete the following dialog :

Ali and Omar are preparing for a project.

Ali : I need help with our science project.

Omar : (1) can I do for you?

Ali : I want to make a model volcano.

Omar : (2) you have a box of paints and glue?

Ali : Yes, I have the box and the glue.

Omar : That's great. Can you bring me some clay and some paint from the box?

Omar : Yes, (3) you are.

Ali : Which color do you think is better, black or brown?

Omar : I (4) brown.

8. Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on the following topic :

"How you study for exams"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

https://t.me/G5_Y5

Sample Test 7

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة. [نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب].

- What's Kareem interested in ?
a. Space b. Food c. Animals d. Colors
- What is Kareem's favorite planet ?
a. Jupiter b. Mars c. Earth d. Neptune
- Where does Kareem hope to go? - To
a. library b. bookstore c. a space museum d. school
- What did Kareem want to learn more about ?
a. TVs b. Rockets c. Ships d. Cars

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- She forgot her homework, and the was a bad grade.
a. benefit b. consequence c. goal d. cause
- It's not to wear a helmet when riding a bike.
a. careful b. dangerous c. safe d. noisy
- You leave food uncovered.
a. must b. should c. shouldn't d. can
- you happy at the party last night?
a. Did b. Were c. Should d. Are

3. Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

quite – borrow – read – return – quiet

Every Thursday, I go to the library with my sister. We (1) books about space and nature. The place is (2) and clean. We sit and (3) for an hour. Then we (4) the books the next week.

4. Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Youssef was walking home from school when he found a lost wallet on the sidewalk. He picked it up and saw that it had money and an ID card inside. At first, he didn't know what to do. But then he remembered a lesson about honesty and doing the right thing. Youssef walked to the nearby police station and gave them the wallet. Later, the wallet's owner came to his school to thank him. Youssef felt proud of his decision, knowing he had made a smart and respectful choice.

2. To think means to think in a new and unusual way.
 a. quietly b. digitally c. creatively d. loudly
3. You drink enough water every day.
 a. should b. mustn't c. couldn't d. may
4. He's running very fast; hethe race.
 a. is going to win b. won't win
 c. is winning d. wins

3. Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

pictures – skills – hobby – camera – forest

Photography is my favorite hobby. I use my (1) to take photos of nature. Last weekend, I went to the (2) and took some amazing (3) I'm happy to learn new (4) with each photo I take.

4. Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Amir uses his tablet every day to learn and have fun. In the morning, he checks his school schedule and reviews his homework. During the day, he watches short videos that help him understand science **topics**. After finishing his tasks, he plays games or chats with friends online. His parents remind him to take breaks and not use the screen for too long. Amir believes that digital tools can be very helpful, but only if used in a smart way. He tries to balance between learning and fun while being careful about his screen time. This helps him enjoy using technology without forgetting about other important things.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Amir uses his tablet in the morning to
 a. play games b. check his schedule
 c. watch movies d. chat with friends
2. The word "**topics**" in the text means ".....".
 a. games b. ideas c. subjects d. books

b. Answer the following questions :

3. What does Amir watch to help him with science?

4. What do Amir's parents do to manage his screen time?

5. What does the underlined pronoun "**he**" refer to ?

6. Do you think Amir is using technology in a healthy way? Why or why not?

5. Find the mistakes in the following and correct them :

1. Did you happy at the party yesterday? (.....)
2. You must swim in sea. It is dangerous today. (.....)

6. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. She (paint) a picture at the moment.
2. (Is) Hala get up early on Fridays?
3. You are not (do) enough to win the medal.
4. They're carrying suitcases; they (will) travel somewhere.

7. Complete the following dialog :

Ahmed and Hala are talking about photography.

Ahmed : What's your favorite hobby?

Hala : I like (1)

Ahmed : That's fun! Do you do it often?

Hala : Yes, I (2) I always practice it on Fridays.

Ahmed : (3) goes with you?

Hala : My sister.

Ahmed : I want to try it. (4) I go with you next time?

Hala : Sure! You are welcome.

8. Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on the following topic :

"Your dream job"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Sample Test 9

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة. [نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب].

1. Noura planned a school
a. garden b. playground c. lab d. library
2. They planted and watered the plants.
a. trees b. cotton c. flowers d. wheat
3. Noura's teacher told them that they help
a. the poor b. the environment
c. the sea d. the forest
4. The students agreed to take care for the garden each
a. day b. week c. month d. year

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. We need to study hard to a good job in the future.
a. be b. match c. have d. build
2. Dr Ghoniem is a/an doctor who worked hard and achieved his goals.
a. community b. determined
c. healthier d. traditional

3. Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

planet – sun – science – Earth – light

In science classes, we learned about space. The (1) moves around the (2) The sun gives (3) and heat to all planets. My favorite (4) is Jupiter. I am interested in our solar system.

4. Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Nour failed her first math test of the year. **She** felt sad and wanted to give up. Her mother told her, "Mistakes help us learn. What matters is what you do next." That gave Nour strength. She asked her teacher for help and began to practice every day. At first, the work was hard, but she

didn't stop. Slowly, she improved and started to understand more. When the next test came, she scored much higher. Her teacher praised her, and Nour felt proud. Most of all, she was happy she didn't give up. She learned that hard work brings success and that strong people don't give up – they try again.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Nour was unhappy because
 - she lost her notebook
 - she failed a test
 - she was absent
 - she didn't do homework
- The meaning of the underlined word "improved" is "....." .
 - stopped
 - became better
 - asked for help
 - waited longer

b. Answer the following questions :

- What did Nour want to do at first after she failed?
.....
- Who encouraged Nour to try again?
.....
- What does the underlined pronoun "She" refer to?
.....
- Do you agree that failure can be a good teacher? Why or why not?
.....

5. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- You leave the lights on after you leave.
 - must
 - mustn't
 - should
 - must to
- We have a plan. We a new flat.
 - must buy
 - should buy
 - will buy
 - are going to buy

6. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

- They (**going to go**) on a trip next Friday.
- We (**mustn't**) recycle plastic.
- Listen! Someone (**call**).
- My friend usually (**is cycling**) to school.

Sample Test 10

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة. (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. Ayman and his friend went to the science
 a. club b. lab c. festival d. library
2. They saw a that could speak.
 a. parrot b. dog c. cat d. robot
3. Ayman took notes for his school
 a. project b. homework c. bag d. friends
4. Ayman wanted to build his own
 a. car b. building c. robot d. bus

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. People often feel when someone helps and supports them.
 a. safe b. regular c. challenged d. annoyed
2. Winning the gold medal was a big for our team.
 a. example b. achievement c. community d. determination

3. Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

notes – old – museum – photos – holiday

During the holiday, we visited a (1) I saw (2) coins and tools. My brother took (3) I wrote (4) in my notebook. I enjoy visiting places like that.

4. Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Hassan becomes a Global Citizen. Hassan learned about global citizenship in his English class. **He** was surprised to find out that small actions could make a big difference. He and his classmates decided to help by collecting books for schools in need. Hassan also joined a clean-up event at the park and started using less plastic at home. He felt proud to be part of something that helped others and protected the environment. His teacher said that being a global citizen means thinking about people and places around you. Hassan realized that even young students can act with **responsibility** and kindness. He now encourages his friends to take care of the world.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. What did Hassan's class do to help others?
 - a. Raised money for a trip
 - b. Sent emails to a school
 - c. Collected books for schools in need
 - d. Opened a store
2. What does the underlined word "**responsibility**" mean in the text?
 - a. Danger
 - b. Care and action
 - c. Travel
 - d. Problem

b. Answer the following questions :

3. What did Hassan learn about in his English class?

.....

4. Why did Hassan feel proud of his actions?

.....

5. What does the underlined pronoun "**He**" refer to?

.....

6. In your opinion, how can students like Hassan make the world a better place?

.....

5. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. You park your car here. You are not allowed.
 - a. must
 - b. mustn't
 - c. shouldn't
 - d. should
2. Look! The children in the park.
 - a. play
 - b. are play
 - c. are playing
 - d. played

6. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. I am (**prepare**) for the spelling test now.
2. He always (**take**) care of his books.
3. They (**will**) to clean the park this weekend.
4. If you (**not listen**), you will miss the instructions.

Day 1

Listening Skill

Model 1

Ahmed likes digital tools. He uses them every day to achieve his tasks. He always does his homework on the computer. He uses the keyboard to write his assignments. It's used for writing and typing. He also uses the mouse to move around the screen. He can also print his homework using the printer.

Model 2

Omar is 11 years old. He always thinks about his future career. He wishes to find a profession that matches his talent. He loves helping people, so he wants to be a doctor. He needs training in hospitals to get the skills needed for success. He works hard to achieve his goals.

Days 5,6&7

10 Sample Tests

Sample Test 1

Omar and his brother went to the city museum. They looked at old coins, tools, and clothes from the past. Omar liked the large ship

model. He took pictures for his school project. At the end of the trip, they ate lunch in the park.

Sample Test 2

Nadia loves animals. Last weekend, she visited an animal shelter with her class. They helped clean cages and fed the dogs. Nadia took a photo with her favorite puppy. The teacher said they did a great job helping the animals.

Sample Test 3

Leila and her classmates prepared for a school play. They wrote the script, made costumes, and practiced every day. On the performance night, many parents came. Leila acted as the main character. Everyone clapped loudly at the end.

Sample Test 4

Tarek is interested in computers. He joined the school science club. Every Thursday, he learns how to build simple games. Last week, he made a quiz game about space. He showed it to his family, and they loved it.

Sample Test 5

Sarah and her family joined a beach clean-up event on Saturday. They collected plastic bottles, cans, and old fishing nets. Sarah wore gloves and worked with a team of volunteers. After they finished, the beach looked much cleaner. She said she felt proud to help the environment.

Sample Test 6

Huda and her classmates visited a local art center. They saw paintings, sculptures, and handmade crafts. Huda asked the artist many questions. She learned how to mix colors and use brushes. After the trip, she painted a picture of a garden and showed it to her teacher.

Sample Test 7

Kareem is interested in space. He watches videos about planets and reads books about astronauts. His favorite planet is Jupiter because it's the biggest. Kareem hopes to visit a space museum during the school holiday. He wants to learn more about rockets and space travel.

Sample Test 8

Hassan joined a school photography club. He borrowed a camera from his uncle and started taking pictures of nature. His favorite photo was of a butterfly on a flower. The teacher chose his photo to display at the school entrance. Hassan was very happy and told his parents the news.

Sample Test 9

Noura and her classmates planned a school garden. They cleaned the area, planted flowers, and watered the plants. Noura enjoyed planting the seeds the most. Her teacher told the class that they were helping the environment. The students agreed to take turns caring for the garden each week.

Sample Test 10

Ayman and his friend went to the science festival at the city center. They saw a robot that could speak and move. Ayman asked questions and took notes for his school project. At the end, they received certificates for attending. Ayman said he wanted to build his own robot one day.

كـرارةسة المعاصر
للمهارات اللغوية



GUIDE

English

By a group of supervisors

الصف الأول الإعدادي الفصل الدراسي الأول

Master Your Skills

https://t.me/G5_Y5



1st

PREP.
2026
FIRST TERM

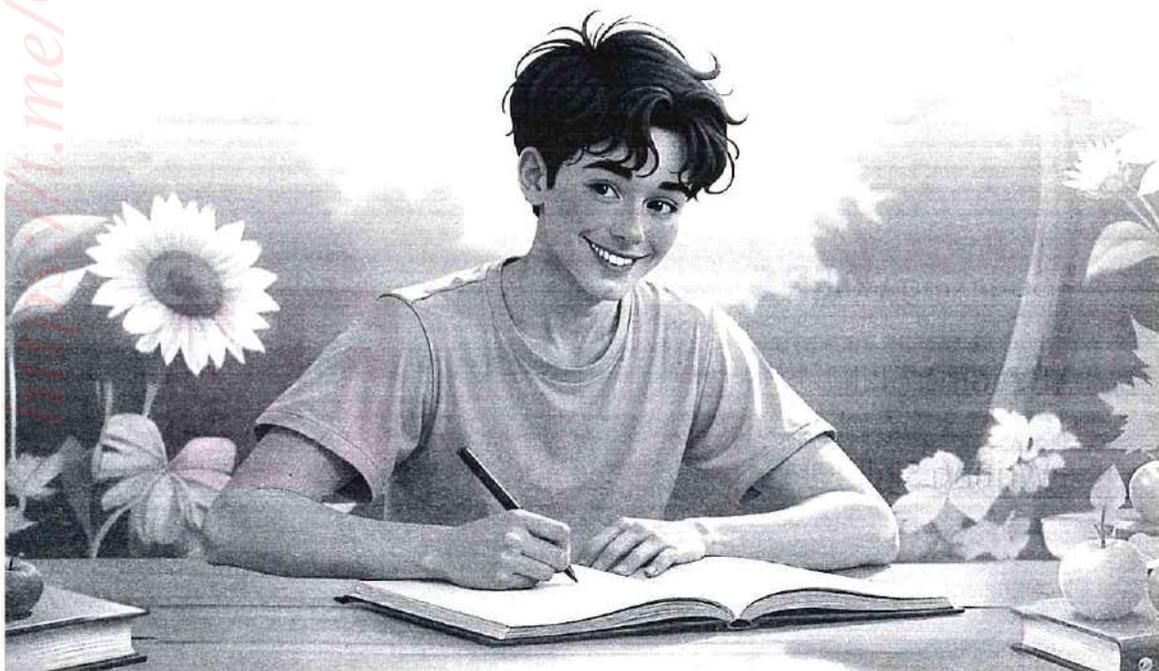
CONTENTS

Part One : Skills

| | |
|----------------------|----|
| Speaking Skill | 4 |
| Reading Skill | 13 |
| Writing Skill | 22 |

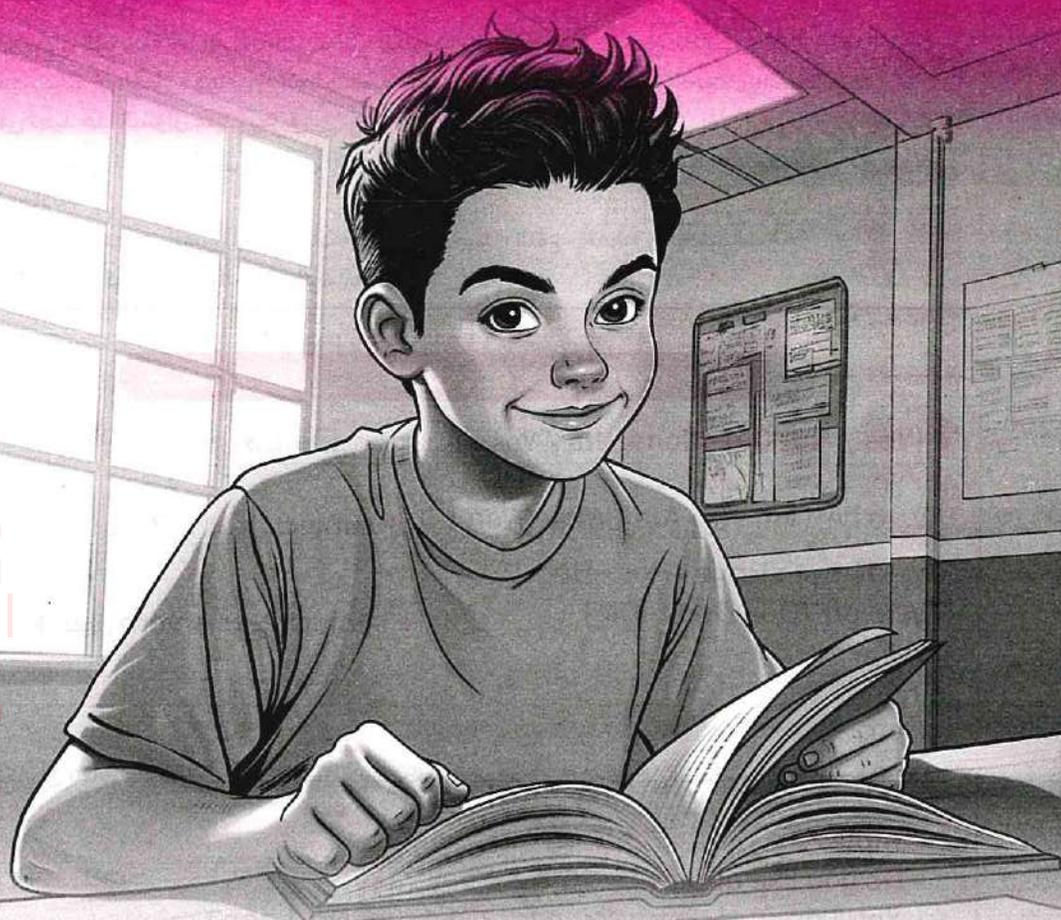
Part Two : Dictation

| | |
|----------------------------|----|
| Dictation on Lessons | 38 |
| Dictation on Unit | 40 |



PART ONE

Skills



- Speaking Skill
- Reading Skill
- Writing Skill



1

Speaking Skill

مهارة التحدث

How to deal with dialog :

كيفية التعامل مع سؤال المحادثة :

يُعتبر سؤال المحادثة من الأسئلة التي تحتاج الكثير من المهارات اللغوية لدى الطالب، فلا بد أن يجيد القراءة والفهم والتعبير الكتابي، كما أن إجابة المحادثة تتطلب قدرة الطالب على تخيل الموقف والتفاعل معه.

ولكي تجيد هذا السؤال عليك بما يلي :

١. اقرأ المحادثة كلها جيدًا قبل البدء في الإجابة فالقراءة الكاملة تساعدك على تخيل الموقف الذي تدور حوله المحادثة.

٢. ركز على الشخصين الذين تدور المحادثة بينهما من حيث : النوع - المهنة - الجنسية ... إلخ.

٣. التعرف على كيفية تكوين الجمل والأسئلة.

1

How to make a question

طريقة تكوين السؤال

1 [Yes / No] Questions الأسئلة التي يجاب عليها بـ Yes أو No

"V. to be" (Am - Is - Are - Was - Were) + subject الفاعل ?

"V. to have" (Have - Has - Had)

"V. to do" (Do - Does - Did)

Will

Can

.... etc. إلخ

+ subject الفاعل + verb الفعل + ?

ويمكن أن يجاب عن هذا النوع من الأسئلة باستخدام الصيغة المختصرة وهي الضمير والفعل المساعد فقط.

Examples :

- Do you like apples ?

Yes, I do.

No, I don't.

- Have you ever visited the Pyramids ?

Yes, I have.

No, I haven't.

- Can you speak English ?

Yes, I can.

No, I can't.

◀ **ملحوظة:** يمكن استخدام "V. to be" كفعل رئيسي في السؤال دون أن يتبعه فعل آخر.

ex.: - Are you happy about the result of the match ?

Yes, I am.

No, I'm not.

2 Wh- Questions الأسئلة التي تبدأ بكلمة استفهام

Question word + "v. to be"
كلمة الاستفهام + "v. to have"
"v. to do"
will
can
..... etc. إلخ + subject + verb + ?
الفاعل + الفعل

Question words كلمات الاستفهام

| | | | |
|----------------|-----------------------------------|----------------|---------------------|
| Whose ...? | ملك من...؟ | How many ...? | كم للعدد...؟ |
| When ...? | متى...؟ | How high ...? | كم للارتفاع...؟ |
| What ...? | ما - ماذا...؟ | How deep ...? | كم للعمق...؟ |
| Who ...? | من [للفاعل أو المفعول العاقل]...؟ | How wide ...? | كم للعرض...؟ |
| Whom ...? | من [للمفعول العاقل]...؟ | How far ...? | كم للبعد...؟ |
| Why ...? | لماذا...؟ | How tall ...? | كم للطول...؟ |
| Where ...? | أين...؟ | How heavy ...? | كم للوزن...؟ |
| Which ...? | أيهما...؟ [للتخيير] | How long ...? | كم للمدة/للتطول...؟ |
| How ...? | كيف...؟ | How old ...? | كم للعمر...؟ |
| How much ...? | كم للثمن / للكمية...؟ | How fast ...? | كم للسرعة...؟ |
| How often ...? | كم مرة...؟ | With whom ...? | مع من...؟ |

لاحظ الآتي:

• استخدام (did / does / do) في السؤال :

- (s) إذا كانت الإجابة في المضارع البسيط بدون (s) → do
(s) إذا كانت الإجابة في المضارع البسيط وينتهي بـ (s) أو (es) أو (ies) → does
إذا كانت الإجابة في الماضي البسيط مع كل الضمائر. → did

I , we $\xrightarrow{\text{تحول}}$ you
my, our $\xrightarrow{\text{تحول}}$ your
me, us $\xrightarrow{\text{تحول}}$ you

Stimulus السؤال / الموقف ?**Response** الرد ✓

| | |
|---|--|
| 1. Do you like music ? | - Yes, I do. - No, I don't. |
| 2. What is your friend's name ? | - His / Her name is |
| 3. How old is he / she ? | - He / She is years old. |
| 4. Where does he / she live ? | - He / She lives in |
| 5. What is his / her favorite food ? | - His / Her favorite food is |
| 6. What are his / her favorite hobbies ? | - His / Her favorite hobbies are |
| 7. What is your favorite subject ? | - My favorite subject is - I like |
| 8. What subjects have we got today ? | - We have got and |
| 9. Are you good at languages ? | - Yes, I am. / No, I am not. |
| 10. Who is our English teacher this year ? | - It's Mr Sameh. |
| 11. When have we got English ? = When do we have English ? | - It is after the break. |
| 12. What time is the break ? | - It is at half past ten. |

2 كيفية تكوين جملة بسيطة : **How to make a simple sentence :**

مفعول **object** + فعل **verb** + فاعل **Subject**

1 **Subject** الفاعل

◀ الفاعل هو الذي يقوم بالفعل، يمكن أن يكون فاعل الجملة (اسم / ضمير فاعل).

- **Ali** is a scientist. (اسم)
- **He** is a scientist. (ضمير)

Subject pronouns ضمائر الفاعل ▶ I - He - She - It - We - You - They

2 Verb الفعل

يأتي الفعل غالبًا بعد الفاعل ويحدد زمن الجملة.

- He **plays** football. [فعل في زمن المضارع البسيط]
- He **played** football yesterday. [فعل في زمن الماضي البسيط]

◀ لاحظ أن ظروف التكرار تأتي قبل كل الأفعال ما عدا مع فعل يكون [verb to be] تأتي بعده.

- He **usually** ate chocolate. [ظروف التكرار قبل الفعل]
- He **is always** busy. [ظروف التكرار بعد الفعل "be"]

3 Object المفعول

◀ هو الذي وقع عليه الفعل، قد يكون اسم [شخص / شيء / مكان] أو ضمير مفعول.

- I helped **Adam**. [المفعول اسم شخص]
- I helped **him**. [المفعول ضمير مفعول]

Object pronouns ضمائر المفعول ▶ me – him – her – it – you – us – them

بعد تعلم كيفية تكوين [الأسئلة - الجمل] اتبع الخطوات التالية للتدرب على كيفية التعامل مع سؤال المحادثة.

1 الخطوة الأولى يقوم الطالب باختيار الإجابة الصحيحة مما بين الأقواس في المحادثات التالية.

1. Choose the correct options in the dialogs :

1. **A** : What (did / do) you do in the last summer vacation ?

B : I (help / helped) my grandma in her garden.

2. **A** : Is this a photo of (your / its) wedding, Samir ?

B : Yes, it (is / was).

3. **A** : How do you (spend / sell) your free time ?

B : (With / On) my friends. I also play tennis.

4. **A** : Why don't we (sell / sells) some of our old toys ?

B : I'm not (sure / true) about that.

5. **A** : Can you (speak / tell) me how to make a video call ?

B : Sure, it's really easy. (Switch on / Put down) your laptop!

6. **A** : How (often / much) do you borrow your parents' laptop ?

B : I borrow (it / them) once a week.

7. A : Have you (**chopped / damaged**) those vegetables yet ?

B : No, I (**have / haven't**).

8. A : Which (**device / menu**) do you think is the most important ?

B : I (**try / think**) the phone is the most important.

الخطوة الثانية ٢ يقوم الطالب بتكملة الفراغ بالكلمة المناسبة في المحادثات القصيرة التالية

2. Complete the following dialogs :

9. A : Can I borrow phone, please ?

B : I'm sorry, you can't. I'm using it at the moment.

10. A : Is this your car ?

B : Yes, it is. color is red.

11. A : Do Omar and Ahmed's grandparents live in an apartment ?

B : No. grandparents live in a house.

12. A : do you want to eat for lunch ?

B : I want to eat kebab.

13. A : Is the new student's name Salma ?

B : No, it isn't. name's Nabila.

14. A : Can you help me with my phone please, Sherif ?

B : Sure, What's wrong with it ?

15. A : I would like to know about the food the family eat.

B :, too.

16. A : How do you do sports ?

B : I always do sports.

الخطوة الثالثة ٣ يقوم الطالب بالتدرب على حل محادثة كاملة

1 Dialogs related to setbook topics

محادثات مرتبطة بموضوعات كتاب الطالب

Unit 1

⊙ Complete the following dialog :

Omar and Ali are talking about daily routine .

Omar : Hi, Ali! Do you have a daily routine?

Ali : Hi, Omar! Yes, of (1)

Omar : (2) does your day start?

Ali : It starts at 6:00 a.m.

Omar : How do you go to school?

Ali : I go to school on (3)

Omar : What (4) you do after school?

Ali : I do my homework and watch TV.

Unit 2

Complete the following dialog :

Basant is reading a post online about learning styles .

Nora : What are you doing?

Basant: I am reading a (1) online.

Nora : (2) is the post about?

Basant: It is about learning styles.

Nora : What are the main learning (3) ?

Basant: They are auditory and visual.

Nora : What is your favorite style?

Basant: I prefer (4) because I like listening.

Unit 3

Complete the following dialog :

Sara and Sama are talking about role models.

Sara : Hi, Sama! Who is your favorite hero?

Sama : Dr. Ghoniem is my favorite (1)

Sara : (2) do you admire him?

Sama : I admire him because he helps patients.

Sara : Do his patients like him?

Sama : Yes, because he is (3) to them.

Sara : Does he teach us anything?

Sama : Yes. Hard work makes a big (4)

Unit 4

⊙ Complete the following dialog :

Ahmed and Ehab are talking about smart choices .

Ahmed : Are you good at making smart choices?

Ehab : Yes, I am good at (1) choices.

Ahmed : Can you (2) me an example?

Ehab : Yes, last month I decided to (3) smoking.

Ahmed : Great! Smoking is dangerous.

Ehab : I agree. It causes bad (4)

Ahmed : I hope you stop it forever.

Unit 5

⊙ Complete the following dialog :

Mazin wants to be a doctor in the future.

Samy : Do you have a goal for the future?

Mazin: Yes, I want to be a (1)

Samy : (2) do you want to be a doctor?

Mazin: I want to help patients.

Samy : Does this job need special (3) ?

Mazin: Yes, it needs many skills.

Samy : Who is your role model?

Mazin: My role (4) is Dr. Magdy Yacoub.

Unit 6

⊙ Complete the following dialog :

Dina and Maha are talking about a global problem.

Dina : What are you doing?

Maha: I am doing a science (1)

Dina : What is the project about?

Maha : It is about the problem of (2)

Dina : Is rubbish (3) for the environment?

Maha : Yes, it is very dangerous.

Dina : (4) can we solve this problem?

Maha : We can do this by recycling rubbish.

2 Dialogs related to different topics

محادثات مرتبطة بموضوعات مختلفة

1. Complete the following dialogs :

Sara is asking Amira about her holiday last year.

Sara : Where did you go on holiday last year ?

Amira : (1)

Sara : Alexandria ! Where did you stay there ?

Amira : (2)

Sara : (3) ?

Amira : I traveled by train.

Sara : Did you swim in the sea ?

Amira : (4)

2. Riham and Dalia are talking about their schools.

Riham : Good morning. How are you ?

Dalia : (1)

Riham : (2) ?

Dalia : Yes, I like my school.

Riham : How many subjects have you got every day ?

Dalia : (3)

Riham : (4) ?

Dalia : My favorite subject is English.

3. Aser is in a restaurant.

Waiter : Hello, what would you like to eat today ?

Aser : Hello. (1)

Waiter : A small or large pizza ?

Aser : (2) I am not very hungry.

Waiter : (3) ?

Aser : I'd like to drink water, please.

Waiter : Anything else ?

Aser : (4)

4. Soha is asking Rania about her school day.

Soha : How do you go to school ?

Rania : (1)

Soha : Why do you walk to school ?

Rania : (2)

Soha : What's your favorite subject ?

Rania : (3)

Soha : (4) ?

Rania : Because I like maps and it tells me a lot about different countries.



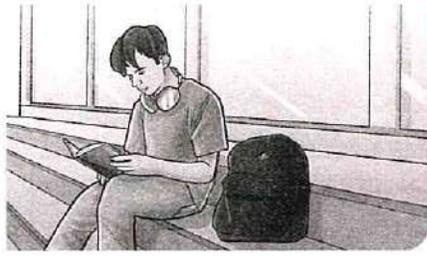
احرص على اقتناء

كتب

EL-MOASSER

في اللغة الانجليزية

للمرحلة الاعدادية



2

Reading Skill مهارة القراءة

How to deal with Reading Comprehension Passages :

إرشادات عامة للتعامل مع قِطَع الفهم :

1. من المفيد أن تبدأ بقراءة الأسئلة الواردة على قطعة الفهم أولاً لتتكون بداخلك استفسارات تعطيك دافع لقراءة القطعة بتركيز.
2. قم بقراءة قطعة الفهم بتأني لتفهم المعنى العام لكن لا تتسرع في تحديد إجابات.
3. لا بد من التوقف عند نهاية كل جملة [.] أو سؤال [?] أو تعجب [!] وذلك لتنظيم وربط ما قرأته من أفكار ولتتكون لديك تصور صحيح للمعنى العام يساعدك في تحديد الإجابة الصحيحة.
4. لا تتوقف عند كل كلمة صعبة وحاول تخمين معناها من السياق العام.
5. قد تحتاج لقراءة قطعة الفهم مرة أخرى لتحسين فهمك لمحتواها والإلمام بكل التفاصيل.
6. لا بد من قراءة السؤال وفهمه جيداً قبل الإجابة.
7. راجع إجابات جميع أسئلة القطعة مرة أخرى.

How to answer questions in a comprehension : : كيفية الإجابة على قطعة الفهم :

◀ قطعة الفهم عبارة عن نص، يجب الطالب على أسئلة تقيس المهارات التالية :

1 Giving the main idea or understanding reference :

إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية أو فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير

وهناك نماذج كثيرة لأسئلة مرتبطة بذلك :

الموضوع Topic

- The main idea of the passage is
- = The text is mainly about
- الفكرة الرئيسية لقطعة الفهم / للنص هي
- = What is the main idea of the passage? ما هي الفكرة الرئيسية لقطعة الفهم؟
- = What is the best title for the passage? ما هو أفضل عنوان لقطعة الفهم؟
- = What does the passage talk about? عن ماذا تتحدث قطعة الفهم؟
- = Give a suitable title for the passage. أعط عنوان مناسب لقطعة الفهم.

Reference

- The underlined word / pronoun refers to
- الكلمة / الضمير الذي تحته خط يشير إلى

2 Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context

تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية في النص

◀ عند قراءة الفقرة يتم التركيز على الجملة التي بها الكلمة والجملة التي قبلها لكي تحدد المعنى المطلوب بدقة.

وهناك نماذج كثيرة لأسئلة مرتبطة بذلك :

Synonym المرادف / المعنى

- The synonym of the underlined word "....." is ".....".
- مرادف الكلمة التي تحتها خط "....." تعنى ".....".
- The underlined word "....." has the same meaning as
- الكلمة التي تحتها خط "....." لها نفس معنى مثل ".....".
- Find a word in the passage which means ".....".
- أوجد في النص كلمة تعنى ".....".
- What does the underlined word "....." mean ?
- ماذا تعنى كلمة "....." التي تحتها خط ؟

Antonym التضاد / العكس

- The antonym / opposite of the underlined word "....." is ".....".
- المضاد للكلمة التي تحتها خط "....." هو ".....".

3 Understanding details and extracting information

فهم التفاصيل واستخراج المعلومات

◀ عند قراءة الفقرة ركز على التفاصيل الموجودة في الفقرة.

وهناك نماذج كثيرة لأسئلة مرتبطة بذلك :

Yes / No questions

- أسئلة تبدأ بفعل مساعد

Wh- questions

- أسئلة تبدأ بكلمات استفهام

- أدوات وتعابير استفهامية هامة :

| | | | |
|----------|------------------------|----------------|------------|
| How | كيف | To what extent | إلى أى مدى |
| How far | كم بعد / لأى مدى | What | ما / ماذا |
| How high | كم ارتفاع | What size | ما حجم |
| How long | كم طول المدة / المسافة | What time | ما وقت |
| How many | كم عدد | When | متى |

| | | | |
|--------------------|------------------|-----------|-------------------------|
| How many times | كم مرة | Where | أين |
| How much | كم كمية / كم ثمن | Which | أي |
| How often | كم مرة | Who | من [فاعل أو مفعول عاقل] |
| How old | كم عمر | Whom | مَنْ [مفعول عاقل] |
| How tall | كم طول | Whose | لمن / ملك من |
| On / In / At which | في أي | Why | لماذا |
| In what way | بأي طريقة | With whom | مع من |

4 Critical Thinking Skill

مهارة التفكير النقدي

◀ عند قراءة الفقرة تستطيع أن تبدى رأيك حسب الفكرة المذكورة.

عن أسئلة التفكير النقدي المرتبطة بقطع الفهم

- تعتمد أسئلة التفكير النقدي على الفكرة الرئيسية للنص أو رأى / وجهة نظر القارئ.
- لا تطلب هذه الأسئلة معلومات مباشرة موجودة في النص.
- لا بد أن تكون إجابة سؤال التفكير النقدي كما يلي :

١. تدل على فهم الموضوع والسؤال.

٢. منطقية أو عقلانية.

٣. صحيحة من الناحية اللغوية.

- What do you think of / about ? ماذا تعتقد في ؟
- Why do you think ? Why / Why not ? لماذا تعتقد ؟ لما / لما لا ؟
- What was the writer's opinion about ? ما رأى الكاتب عن ؟
- What's your opinion about ? ما رأيك في ؟

بعد تعلم كيفية التعامل مع مهارة القراءة اتباع الخطوات الآتية :

1 الخطوة الأولى

1 Read and learn

⊙ Read the following, then answer the questions :

Last week, Fatma who was seven years old, went to her father's room to take some books. Fatma's father was happy because he thought that his daughter was **interested in** reading. Fatma took the books and carried them to the garden where there were some fruit trees and beautiful flowers. She put them under an apple tree. Fatma's parents followed her to see what she would do with the books. **They** saw her putting the books on the ground and standing on them. She began picking some apples off the branches above her head. They said to her, "Next time, you'll have to use the ladder to get the apples".

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية في النص

1. The underlined phrase "**interested in**" means that Fatma reading.
 a. likes b. dislikes c. leaves d. hates

Understanding reference فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير

2. The underlined pronoun "**They**" refers to
 a. Fatma's sisters b. Fatma's grandparents
 c. Fatma's parents d. Fatma's uncles

Extracting information استخراج المعلومات

3. Fatma's father advised her to use a
 a. pencil b. book c. ladder d. tree

B. Answer the following questions :

Extracting information استخراج المعلومات

4. What did Fatma do to get some apples ?
 - She put the books on the ground and stood on them.

Giving the main idea إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

5. What's the suitable title for the passage ?
 - Fatma's idea to get the apples.

Critical thinking skill مهارة التفكير النقدي

6. Why do you think Fatma's father was happy at first ?

- As he thought that his daughter was interested in reading.

الخطوة الثانية

2 Practise by yourself تدرّب بنفسك

Read the following text, then answer the questions :

قطع الفهم من كتاب الطالب

1. Learning methods

Every person learns differently. Some people learn best by seeing information. These are visual learners. **They** like to read books, look at pictures, and use colorful notes. Visual learners often make maps and charts to organize information. Other people learn best by hearing information. These are auditory learners. They like to listen to music while studying, discuss topics with friends, and hear explanations from teachers. Auditory learners often repeat information out loud to remember it.

Some people learn best by moving and touching. These are kinesthetic learners. They like to do experiments, build models, and take breaks to move around. Kinesthetic learners often use their hands to help them think.

Understanding your learning style helps you study better. When you know how you learn best, you can choose the right **methods** for yourself. This makes learning easier and more enjoyable.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined pronoun "**They**" refers to learners.

- a. modern b. visual c. auditory d. old

2. The underlined word "**methods**" means

- a. styles b. recipes c. menus d. hobbies

b. Answer the following questions:

3. Give a suitable title to the text.

.....

4. How can understanding your learning style help you?

.....

5. Why do some learners make maps and charts?

.....

6. Which learning style do you like to learn?

.....

2. A Great Egyptian thinker

Dr. Gamal Hemdan was a famous Egyptian geographer and writer. He was born in 1928 in Qalyubia, Egypt. He studied geography at Cairo University and later got his PhD from a university in England. Dr. Hemdan was not only a scientist, but also a deep thinker. He combined geography, history, and politics to explain why Egypt is a very special country.

His most famous book is *The Personality of Egypt*, where he wrote about Egypt's land, its people, and its important role in history. He also wrote books about the Suez Canal.

Dr. Hemdan won many awards, including the State Appreciation Award in 1986 and a top medal in science and arts. He was known for his strong ideas. He believed Egypt's location makes it **powerful**.

His works still help students and scientists understand Egypt better. He died in 1993, but his books are still important today.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The opposite of the underlined word "**powerful**" is
 a. new b. old c. weak d. strong
- Egypt has an important in history.
 a. role b. road c. award d. sky

b. Answer the following questions:

3. What is the best title for the text?

.....

4. Where did Dr. Hemdan study?

.....

5. What award did Dr. Hemdan get?

.....

6. Why do you think Dr. Hemdan is a great thinker?

.....

3. A great Egyptian swimmer

Malak is a young swimmer from Egypt. She started swimming when she was five. At 17, she went to the Olympics. People admire her because she works hard and never gives up. She inspires young girls to follow their dreams.

Malak trains every day and has won many national and international medals. She dreams of becoming a world champion and hopes to open a swimming school in Egypt to help children learn how to swim. Her family and coaches support her journey, and she says believing in yourself is the first step to success.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "support" has the same meaning as
a. damage b. encourage c. fail d. miss
2. Malak dreams of becoming a world
a. leader b. champion c. pilot d. scientist

b. Answer the following questions:

3. Give a suitable title to the text.
.....

4. What does the underlined pronoun "her" refer to?
.....

5. What is the first step to success?
.....

6. How do you think Malak can help children?
.....

4. Tarek's digital day

My name is Tarek, and I want to share my digital day with you. I always start my morning by checking my phone. I usually have three or four messages from my school friends. Sometimes, my cousin from Alexandria sends me funny pictures.

At breakfast, I often use my tablet to search for news. My favorite app shows me interesting facts about animals and space. I never eat without looking at something on my screen—I know it's not a good habit!

At school, we sometimes use the smartboard in our science class. Our teacher shows us amazing videos about planets and animals. I love watching them! We also use computers in our computer class twice a week. I'm learning to type faster—I can type 25 words per minute now!

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underline pronoun "I" refers to
 a. Tarek b. app c. class d. computer
- It is a habit to eat while looking at screens.
 a. good b. nice c. great d. bad

b. Answer the following questions:

3. What is the text about?

.....

4. Give a word from the passage that means "write on a keyboard".

.....

5. How often does Tarek use computers in class?

.....

6. Do you have some digital habits or not?

.....

قطع فهم عن موضوعات متنوعة للتدريب

5. Technology

New technology means that forms of communication are changing all the time. For example, think about how phones have developed over the last 20 years. In the past, people used to type messages using special letters on their phones. Then, people started to touch the screens on their phones to type their messages.

Now, phones are able to understand people's voices and many people are using their phones to send messages. Some scientists think that phones are going to know what people think in the future. Perhaps our phones will read our **facial** expressions before **they** send a message!

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- The underlined word "**facial**" means on the
 a. brain b. arm c. hand d. face

2. Phones are able to understand people's now.
a. shapes b. forms c. voices d. messages

b. Answer the following questions :

3. What does the underlined pronoun "they" refer to ?
.....
4. What is the best title for the passage ?
.....
5. How did people use to send messages on phone ?
.....
6. Do you think that phones will know what we think in the future ?
.....

6. Sea animals

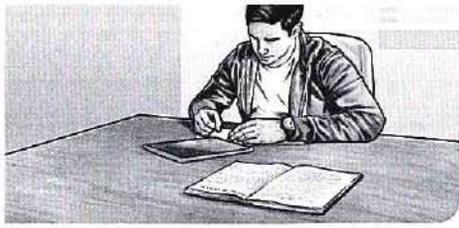
Dolphins are very interesting animals. They look like fish, but they aren't fish. Fish can live under water all the time, but dolphins cannot. They can stay underwater for a long time, but they have to come out of the water to breathe air. Fish lay eggs, but dolphins give birth to babies. Dolphins have big mouths, and lots of small sharp teeth. They use their teeth for catching fish to eat. Everyone likes dolphins because they are **clever** and learn to do many things fast. They can jump high in the air. Some dolphins have been taught to pull a boat.

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The underlined word "clever" means
a. lazy b. ugly c. intelligent d. happy
2. Dolphins can high in the air.
a. swim b. jump c. throw d. walk

b. Answer the following questions :

3. What does the underlined pronoun "they" refer to ?
.....
4. What's the main idea of the passage ?
.....
5. What do dolphins use their sharp teeth for ?
.....
6. Do you like dolphins ? Why ?
.....



3

Writing Skill

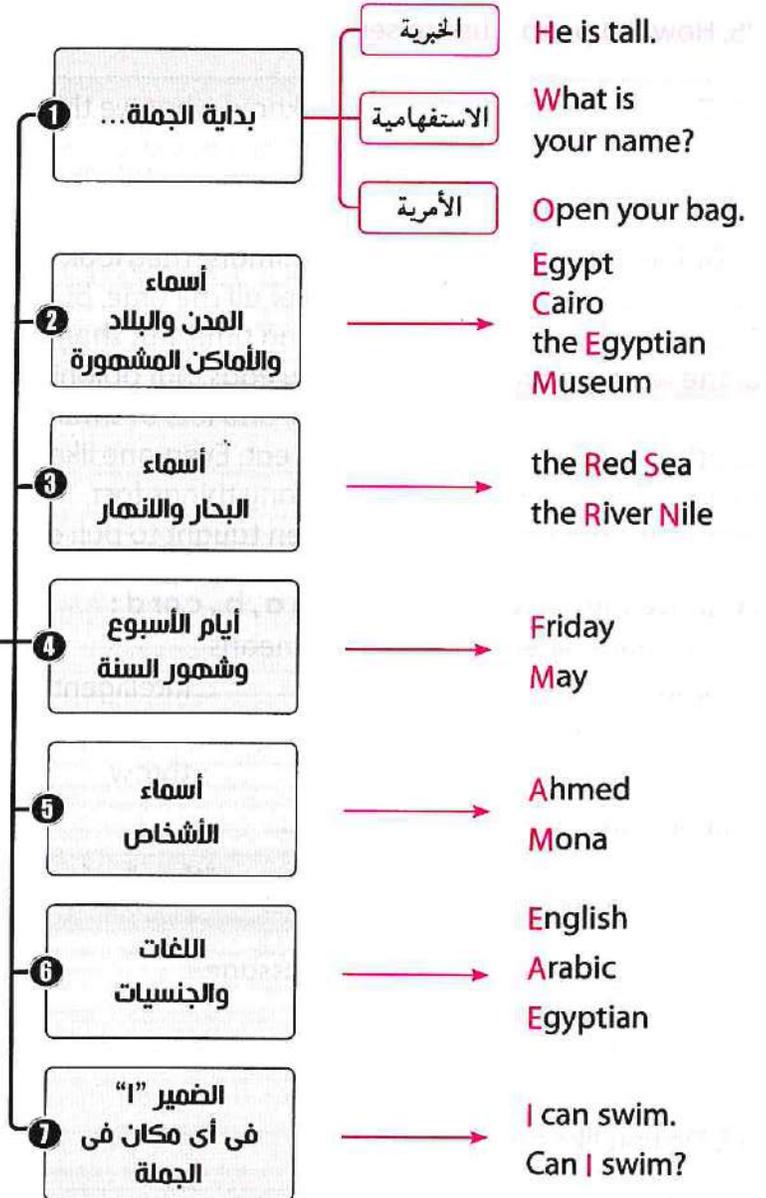
مهارة الكتابة

1 Punctuation

١. علامات الترقيم مهمة في مهارة الكتابة [كتابة الفقرات الانشائية] لأنها تجعل قراءة النصوص أسهل وأوضح.

الحروف الكبيرة : Capital Letters :

تستخدم مع



Full stop

توضع **النقطة** في نهاية الجملة الخبرية والأمرية.

- * I am Kareem.
- * Open the door, please.

Question mark

توضع **علامة الاستفهام** في نهاية السؤال.

How are you ?



Exclamation mark

تستخدم **علامة التعجب** في حالة الترحيب أو التعجب.

- Wow !
- Hello !
- How wonderful !
- Help !
- What a nice car !



Apostrophe

١. تستخدم **الفاصلة العليا** (') في الاختصارات

مثل (is = 's / are = 're / have = 've)

It's a puppet.

٢. تستخدم مع (s) الملكية.

That is Heba's car.



Comma

١. تستخدم **الفاصلة السفلية** (,) بعد Yes أو No.

٢. تستخدم للفصل بين مجموعة من الأشياء من نوع واحد.

٣. توضع **الفاصلة** (,) بعد المخاطب في أول الجملة وقبل المخاطب في آخر الجملة.

٤. توضع قبل كلمة (please) في آخر الكلام وبعد (please) أول الكلام.

- * Yes, I am.
- * No, I am not.
- * I met Samya, Heba and Nabila.
- * Come here, Noha.
- * Noha, come here.
- * Please, keep quiet.
- * Pass the cake, please.



1. Learn :

١. تعلم :

• Punctuate the following texts :

When Hana Goda first started playing table tennis at the age of four, her talent for the sport quickly became clear. However, there was a problem. The table was too high for her!

2. Practice :

٢. تدريب :

A Punctuate the following sentences :

1. the coach asked hatem to join the team

2. how often does eyad help at his dad s workshop

3. first always use a well-known website to buy things

4. where did sama and marwa meet

5. he s playing with mazen s brother

B Punctuate the following texts :

1. in some countries around the world, not having enough clean water is a big problem In fact almost two thirds of the world s population face water scarcity at some points during the year

2. in this picture my family and I were having lunch at my grandparents house my aunt salwa and her kids were there

3. i feel great when I m helping others My mom s a teacher and i help her teach adults to read and write

2 Writing Topics

٢. كتابة فقرات إنشائية

1. How to write a paragraph :

١. كيفية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية :

القواعد العامة لكتابة فقرة إنشائية :

١. اترك مسافة تعادل خمسة أحرف [تقريبًا اسم] في السطر الأول فقط من الموضوع.
٢. أن تبدأ كل جملة بحرف Capital.
٣. أن تضع (.) واضحة في نهاية كل جملة.
٤. اتبع كل علامات الترقيم.
٥. ابدأ جملتك بالفاعل ثم الفعل وتوعد بدايات الجمل.
٦. استخدم الزمن الصحيح والمناسب للموضوع الذي تكتبه.
٧. عليك باستخدام الجمل البسيطة وأن يكون لكل جملة معنى واضح.
٨. اجتهد في تحسين خطك وذلك بترك مسافة بين كل كلمة وأخرى.
٩. استخدم القواعد بالشكل الصحيح.

2. How to write an email

٢. كيفية كتابة رسالة بريد إلكتروني :

A Writing informal emails

كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكتروني الودية [غير الرسمية]

- رسالة البريد الإلكتروني (email) هي الصيغة العصرية للخطاب التقليدي (letter).
- يُستخدم البريد الإلكتروني غير الرسمي (informal email) في المراسلات بين الأقارب والأصدقاء.
- يتم كتابة عنوان المُرسَل إليه (recipient) في سطر المُرسَل إليه (To-line).
- يتم كتابة عنوان موضوع رسالة البريد الإلكتروني في سطر الموضوع (Subject line) أو (About-line).
- في بداية موضوع الرسالة، يتم كتابة اسم المُرسَل إليه بعد كلمة (Dear/ Hello/Hi) في البريد غير الرسمي (informal email) مثل:

Dear Sama,

Hello Fatma,

Hi Youssef,

يبدأ الخطاب غير الرسمي بأحد تعبيرات التحيّة مثل:

How are you?

كيف حالك؟

I hope you are OK!

أتمنى أن تكون على ما يرام!

I am very happy to send you this email!

أنا سعيد جدًا لإرسال هذا البريد الإلكتروني لك!

• يمكن استخدام الاختصارات مثل: (It's, she'd, we've)

• يمكن استخدام ضمائر المتكلم (I / We)

• قبل توقيع المُرسَل في نهاية الرسالة تُستخدم بعض تعبيرات التحيّة الختامية مثل:

Yours,

Talk soon,

All the best,

Lots of love,

How to write an informal email

From : عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للراسل

To : عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للمرسَل إليه

Subject : موضوع الرسالة

Hi / Hello + اسم المرسل إليه → Greeting and name :

المقدمة Introduction

main part

الجزء الرئيسي

Please, write back soon! → جملة ختامية closing sentence

Lots of love,

Adam → التوقيع signature

B Writing formal emails

كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكتروني الودية الرسمية

- يستخدم البريد الإلكتروني الرسمي (**formal email**) في مجالات العمل والتعليم والمراسلات بين الجهات الرسمية.
- يتم كتابة عنوان المرسل إليه في سطر المرسل إليه (**To-line**)
- يتم كتابة عنوان موضوع رسالة البريد الإلكتروني في سطر الموضوع (**Subject line**) أو (**About-line**).
- يتم كتابة اسم المرسل إليه مسبقاً باللقب الخاص به مثل (**Mr, Mrs, Ms ...**) بعد كلمة (**Dear**) في البريد الرسمي (**formal email**) مثل :

Dear Mr Mohammed,

عند عدم معرفة اسم المرسل إليه في الخطاب الرسمي، يتم مخاطبته بإحدى الطرق التالية:

Dear Sir, Dear Madam, Dear Sir or Madam,

- الأصل في رسائل البريد الإلكتروني أن تكون قصيرة، لكن عند الحاجة إلى الإطالة يتم تقسيم الرسالة إلى فقرات إنشائية مستقلة مثل المقال تماماً.
- غالباً لا يحتوي موضوع رسائل البريد الإلكتروني الرسمية على تعبيرات تحية.
- في البريد الرسمي لا تُستخدم الاختصارات والتعابير الدارجة.
- في الرسائل الإلكترونية الرسمية، يتم إنهاء موضوع الرسالة بطلب القيام بشيء حسب موضوع الرسالة، وهو ما يُعرف بـ (**Call-to-action**).
- قبل توقيع المرسل في نهاية الرسالة تُستخدم بعض تعبيرات التحية الختامية مثل:

Yours sincerely Yours faithfully Best wishes Best regards

How to write a formal email

| | |
|-----------|-------------------------------------|
| From : | عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للراسل |
| To : | عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للمرسل إليه |
| Subject : | موضوع الرسالة |

Dear + Sir or Madam → Greeting and name :

المقدمة Introduction

main part

الجزء الرئيسي

Please, write back soon! → closing sentence جملة ختامية

Best regards,

Ali Omar → signature التوقيع

3. How to write a biography

٣. كيفية كتابة سيرة ذاتية :

1. Introduce the person, giving their names. [ذاكرًا اسمه]. - قم بتقديم الشخص [ذاكرًا اسمه].

- (Name of a person) is

- He/She was born on + تاريخ الميلاد

- She/He began

2. Say why they are famous and give details about them.

- اذكر لماذا هم مشهورين واعط تفاصيل عنهم.

- She / He was the first

- She / He was / is successful because

- She / He won

3. Give more details about their success and why they are interesting or important.

- اعط تفاصيل أكثر عن نجاحهم ولماذا هم مثيرون للاهتمام وهامين.

- He / She won

- He / She is also / Moreover / As well as this , he / she is

4. Say what you think could happen next in their career.

- اذكر ما تعتقد أنه سيحدث لهم في حياتهم العملية فيما بعد.

- I think he / she will become the most

4. Blog post

٤. منشور في مدونة :

A blog features سمات المدونة

1 Catchy title

عنوان جذاب للمدونة

The title should be exciting and eye-catching.

يجب أن يكون العنوان مشوق وجاذب للعين.

2 Question to get attention

سؤال لجذب الانتباه

Ask an interesting question.

أسأل سؤالًا يثير الاهتمام.

3 Introduction

مقدمة

Provide clear information in your first paragraph.

دعم الفقرة الأولى الخاصة بك بمعلومات واضحة.

- 4 List of examples
قائمة من الأمثلة

Use images and lists to make reading easy.
استخدم صور وقوائم لتجعل القراءة أسهل.

- 5 Call-to-action
دعوة للقيام بفعل

Ask readers to respond.
اطلب من القراء الرد.

B How to write a blog post كيف تكتب منشور المدونة

1. Write about something you like and enjoy.

اكتب عن شيء تحبه وتستمتع به.

2. Write to your readers as if you are speaking to them. Use contractions (I'm, It's) and words like "awesome" and "cool".

اكتب لقراءك كما لو كنت تتحدث إليهم. استخدم الاختصارات (I'm, It's) وكلمات مثل (awesome) و (cool).

3. Use exclamation points (!) and emojis 😊 😞 .

استخدم علامات التعجب (!) ورموز تعبيرية.

4. Give your opinion and invite your readers to give theirs.

اعط رأيك ودع قراءك يعطوا آرائهم.

5. Check that your spelling is correct.

تأكد من أن الهجاء صحيح.

HOME | ABOUT | DOWNLOAD

< > : X

5. How to write a social media post

٥. كيفية كتابة منشور على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي

- Write short phrases - you don't need whole sentences.

اكتب عبارات قصيرة - لا تحتاج إلى جمل كاملة.

- Use emojis and symbols to show how you are feeling, like funny or smiley faces and hearts to show you like something.

استخدم الرموز التعبيرية والرموز التي توضح مشاعرك، مثل وجوه وقلوب مضحكة أو مبتسمة لتظهر إنك تحب شيئًا ما.

- Use exclamation points and question marks for emphasis or to show you are joking.

استخدم علامات تعجب وعلامات استفهام للتأكيد أو لتوضح أنك تمزح.

- Use these useful expressions.

استخدم تلك التعبيرات.

- Congratulations!

مبروك / تهانينا!

- Well done!

أحسنت!

- I'm so proud of / happy for you!

أنا فخور بك / سعيد لأجلك!

- Have a great day!

أتمنى لك يومًا رائعًا!



1 d • 2



Like



Comment

6. Forum post

٦. منشور في منتدى :

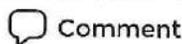
An online forum is when you come together with other people online to discuss a topic that you're all interested in.

المنتدى الإلكتروني: عندما تلتقون مع أشخاص آخرين عبر الإنترنت لمناقشة موضوع يحوز على اهتمام الجميع.

• How to write a forum post

كيفية كتابة منشور في منتدى

1. Start with greetings. ابدأ بالتحية.
2. The forum post should include information about the topic. يجب أن يتضمن المنشور معلومات عن الموضوع.
3. Explain why you are writing. اشرح لماذا تكتب [المنشور].
4. Use spelling and punctuation correctly. استخدم الهجاء وعلامات الترقيم بطريقة صحيحة.



7. How to summarize a story

٧. كيفية تلخيص قصة :

• To summarize a story, use these notes to help you :

لتلخيص قصة، استخدم تلك الملاحظات لتساعدك.

1. The main idea

الفكرة الرئيسية

[هي الفكرة التي تدور عنها الأحداث في القصة]

2. The main events

الأحداث الرئيسية

- beginning بداية القصة
- middle منتصف القصة
- end نهاية القصة

3. The characters

الشخصيات

الشخصيات هي التي تقوم بالأحداث في القصة ولا بد أن تتطور مع تطور الأحداث في القصة

4. Setting

المكان والزمان

لا بد من تحديد المدى الزمني والمكان الذي تدور فيه الأحداث.

5. Key words and phrases

الكلمات والعبارات الأساسية

يقوم الطالب أو الطالبة باستخدام الكلمات والعبارات الأساسية عند تلخيص القصة.

اتباع الخطوات التالية يساعدك على تكوين فقرة إنشائية :

١. تكوين حصيلة من المفردات اللغوية.
٢. إنقان تكوين الجمل.
٣. بعد اتباع الخطوات السابقة يمكنك كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية.

Unit

1

| Topic | Step 1 Vocabulary | Step 2 Sentences | Step 3 Writing |
|-----------------|---|--|--|
| Digital life | <p>اختر مدى إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية</p> <p>Write the meaning :</p> <p>رقمي</p> <p>تطبيق</p> <p>بحث</p> <p>سبورة ذكية</p> <p>كتب إلكترونية</p> <p>الوضع الليلي</p> <p>تكنولوجيا</p> | <p>اختر مدى إتقانك لتكوين الجمل</p> <p>Fill in using vocabulary :</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. I think is very useful. 2. I want to share my day. 3. I use the to protect my eyes. 4. Facebook is my favorite 5. I often read on my tablet. 6. I use my tablet to for news. | <p>اختر مدى إتقانك لمهارة الكتابة</p> <p>Write a paragraph on :</p> <p>"Digital life"</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> |
| Digital devices | <p>اختر مدى إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية</p> <p>Write the meaning :</p> <p>طابعة</p> <p>لوحة مفاتيح</p> <p>أجهزة</p> <p>ميكروفون</p> <p>كاميرا ويب</p> <p>شاشة</p> <p>مهام</p> | <p>اختر مدى إتقانك لتكوين الجمل</p> <p>Fill in using vocabulary :</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. I use some devices to do my 2. I use the to print homework. 3. Samrtboards are digital 4. I use the to write. 5. I use the mouse to move around the 6. To make video calls, use the | <p>اختر مدى إتقانك لمهارة الكتابة</p> <p>Write an email on :</p> <p>"Digital devices"</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> |

Topic

Step 1 Vocabulary

اختبر مدى إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية

Write the meaning :

- طرق
 ينظم
 سمعى
 تجارب علمية
 بصري
 ملون
 ممتع

Ways of learning

Step 2 Sentences

اختبر مدى إتقانك لتكوين الجمل

Fill in using vocabulary :

1. Learning should be
 2. I always use notes.
 3. Some learners like doing
 4. They are learners. They like hearing.
 5. Learning by seeing means
 6. We make charts to information.

Step 3 Writing

اختبر مدى إتقانك لمهارة الكتابة

Write a paragraph on :

"Styles of learning"

.....

My learning plan

Write a paragraph on :

"My learning plan"

1. I have my own learning
 2. I record my to remember pronunciation.
 3. I try to my English.
 4. We like to draw diagrams to us.
 5. I sit in the front to see
 6. I use different learning

.....

| Topic | Step 1 Vocabulary اختبر مدى إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية | Step 2 Sentences اختبر مدى إتقانك لتكوين الجمل | Step 3 Writing اختبر مدى إتقانك لمهارة الكتابة |
|--------------------------|---|--|--|
| An Egyptian hero | <p>Write the meaning :</p> <p>..... بطل</p> <p>..... يلهم</p> <p>..... طيب</p> <p>..... السلام</p> <p>..... يحسن</p> <p>..... إنجازات</p> <p>..... رمز لـ</p> | <p>Fill in using vocabulary :</p> <p>1. Samira Moussa was a true</p> <p>2. She was a of hope.</p> <p>3. She was and helpful.</p> <p>4. Her works people today.</p> <p>5. She made great</p> <p>6. Science should be used for</p> | <p>Write a paragraph on:</p> <p>"An Egyptian hero"</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> |
| A famous Egyptian doctor | <p>..... مجتمع</p> <p>..... أمراض</p> <p>..... طرق</p> <p>..... مرضى</p> <p>..... يعنى</p> <p>..... مشاكل</p> <p>..... زراعة كلى</p> | <p>1. Dr. Ghoniem did many</p> <p>2. He didn't stop when he faced</p> <p>3. Great people make stronger.</p> <p>4. He helped his get better.</p> <p>5. A person should about work.</p> <p>6. He helped people with kidney</p> | <p>Write a paragraph on:</p> <p>"A famous Egyptian doctor"</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> |

Unit

4

https://t.me/G5_Y5

| Topic | Step 1 Vocabulary | Step 2 Sentences | Step 3 Writing |
|--------------------|---|---|--|
| A personal problem | <p>اختبر مدى إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية</p> <p>Write the meaning :</p> <p>عيد ميلاد</p> <p>مسئول</p> <p>مهمل</p> <p>قرار</p> <p>إيجابي</p> <p>سلبى</p> <p>وعد</p> | <p>اختبر مدى إتقانك لتكوين الجمل</p> <p>Fill in using vocabulary :</p> <p>1. Youssef was excited about his</p> <p>2. He thinks before taking a</p> <p>3. He invited students in the class.</p> <p>4. He didn't invite students.</p> <p>5. He thought about and negative sides.</p> <p>6. They to improve themselves.</p> | <p>Write a post on :</p> <p>"A personal problem"</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> |
| A wise decision | <p>مشكلة</p> <p>مخاطرة</p> <p>حل مشكلات</p> <p>تأثير</p> <p>يعافى</p> <p>بحرص</p> <p>نصيحة</p> | <p>1. I always use skills.</p> <p>2. You should think</p> <p>3. I ask for before decisions.</p> <p>4. The was little, so I was happy.</p> <p>5. He doesn't like taking a</p> <p>6. He and won the gold medal.</p> | <p>Write a paragraph :</p> <p>"A wise decision"</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> |

| Topic | Step 1 Vocabulary اختر مدى إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية | Step 2 Sentences اختر مدى إتقانك لتكوين الجمل | Step 3 Writing اختر مدى إتقانك لمهارة الكتابة |
|------------------|--|--|---|
| Your dream job | <p>Write the meaning :</p> <p>..... موهبة</p> <p>..... تعليم</p> <p>..... مهارات</p> <p>..... النجاح</p> <p>..... جامعة</p> <p>..... يحقق</p> <p>..... طب - دواء</p> | <p>Fill in using vocabulary :</p> <p>1. I want a profession that matches my</p> <p>2. I should work hard to my goal.</p> <p>3. I will join the of medicine.</p> <p>4. I need a good to reach my dream.</p> <p>5. Training helps me to get some</p> <p>6. Skills are important for in life.</p> | <p>Write a paragraph on:</p> <p>"Your dream job"</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> |
| Dr Farouq El-Baz | <p>..... عالم</p> <p>..... رائد فضاء</p> <p>..... مشهور</p> <p>..... مقابلة شخصية</p> <p>..... يتعلم</p> <p>..... نصائح</p> <p>..... فخور بـ</p> | <p>1. I watched an with Dr. El-Baz.</p> <p>2. He was a famous Egyptian</p> <p>3. He helped many</p> <p>4. He gave people useful</p> <p>5. Many people from him .</p> <p>6. I'm of Dr. El-Baz.</p> | <p>Write a review on :</p> <p>"Dr Farouq El-Baz"</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> |

Unit

6

| Topic | Step 1 Vocabulary | Step 2 Sentences | Step 3 Writing |
|------------------------|---|---|--|
| Being a global citizen | <p>اختر مدى إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية</p> <p>Write the meaning :</p> <p>..... مجتمع</p> <p>..... مواطن</p> <p>..... يتبع</p> <p>..... يشجع</p> <p>..... يحسن</p> <p>..... السلام</p> <p>..... اختيارات</p> | <p>اختر مدى إتقانك لتكوين الجمل</p> <p>Fill in using vocabulary :</p> <p>1. You should be a global</p> <p>2. We should rules.</p> <p>3. We must students to volunteer.</p> <p>4. They should make good</p> <p>5. How can we the world ?</p> <p>6. We should live together in</p> | <p>اختر مدى إتقانك لمهارة الكتابة</p> <p>Write a paragraph on :</p> <p>"Being a global citizen"</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> |
| How to protect oceans | <p>..... مسئولية</p> <p>..... خطر</p> <p>..... يحمي</p> <p>..... تنوع</p> <p>..... يقلل</p> <p>..... أجيال</p> <p>..... مخلوقات</p> | <p>1. Oceans are in great</p> <p>2. It is our to protect oceans.</p> <p>3. We should waste.</p> <p>4. We need to protect the oceans for future</p> <p>5. Living depend on the sea.</p> <p>6. Oceans show the beauty of</p> | <p>Write a post on :</p> <p>"How to protect oceans"</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> |

PART Two

Dictation



- Dictation on Lessons
- Dictation on Unit

<https://www.mrsdilly.com>



Unit

1

1. Dictation on Lessons

١. إملأ على دروس الوحدة

يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من [A] or [B] لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

Model A

| Write the meaning | Complete | باستخدام الكلمات أكمل الجمل. |
|--------------------------|--|------------------------------|
| Lessons 1 & 2 | | |
| رقمى | 1. Online help people to share content. | |
| سبورة ذكية | 2. Can the hybrid bus help the ? | |
| الوضع الليلي | 3. Mobiles are kinds of devices. | |
| يؤثر على | 4. Screen time my sleep. | |
| البيئة | 5. We sometimes use the in our science lesson. | |
| منصة تعليمية | 6. I use the to protect my eyes. | |
| Lesson 3 | | |
| يسجل | 1. We should to succeed. | |
| موسيقى | 2. She doesn't speak much, she is | |
| عرض تقديمي | 3. Solving problems is a great | |
| خجول | 4. I have to record a for class. | |
| تحدى | 5. I use the headphones to listen to | |
| يتعاون | 6. The microphone is broken, I can't | |
| Lessons 5 & 6 | | |
| ورق | 1. It is easy to find online. | |
| شعار | 2. His is Egyptian. | |
| ملصق إعلاني | 3. I use to print and draw. | |
| جنسية | 4. We made a about mobiles. | |
| معلومات | 5. They created a catchy | |

or

Model B

| Write the meaning | Complete |
|--------------------------|---|
| Lessons 1 & 2 | |
| موقع إلكتروني | 1. I always read online. |
| يطلق - يشن | 2. Digital means using |
| كتب إلكترونية | 3. What kind of does it use ? |
| طاقة | 4. My favorite is facebook. |
| تكنولوجيا | 5. Where did Egypt the hybrid bus ? |
| أجهزة إلكترونية | 6. I think modern is amazing. |
| Lesson 3 | |
| مهام | 1. I need a to print my homework. |
| فأرة | 2. My friend is He likes jokes. |
| طباعة | 3. I use my tablet to achieve my |
| فضولي | 4. You should ideas with others. |
| مرح | 5. I can't use my computer without a |
| يشارك | 6. He is He wants to know everything. |
| Lessons 5 & 6 | |
| مجموعات | 1. I always for new digital devices. |
| جهاز | 2. They play games every day. |
| أوامر | 3. The tablet is my favorite electronic |
| عبر الانترنت | 4. Working in is useful. |
| يبحث | 5. A keyboard is used to type |

2. Dictation on Unit 1

٢. إملأ على الوحدة بالكامل

1. Write the meaning of these words.

| | | | |
|-------|---------------|--------------|-------|
| ..... | الوضع الليلي | social media | ..... |
| ..... | بطلاقة | cheerful | ..... |
| ..... | محترم | smartboard | ..... |
| ..... | جهاز | collaborate | ..... |
| ..... | تكنولوجيا | friendly | ..... |
| ..... | أوامر | performance | ..... |
| ..... | واجبات | trust | ..... |
| ..... | شعار | paper | ..... |
| ..... | رقمي | nationality | ..... |
| ..... | موقع إلكتروني | ebooks | ..... |

2. Read and complete the conjugation.

| Present | Past | P.P. |
|---------|---------|---------|
| ..... | thought | thought |
| eat | ..... | ..... |
| ..... | ..... | hurt |
| tell | ..... | ..... |
| get | ..... | ..... |
| ..... | went | ..... |

3. Listen, repeat and write.

يقوم المعلم بقراءة بعض الكلمات من الوحدة ليستمع إليها الطالب ويرددها ثم يكتبها داخل الجدول.

ORAL TEST

| | |
|---------|---------|
| 1. | 5. |
| 2. | 6. |
| 3. | 7. |
| 4. | 8. |

4. Read and match.

| | |
|---|-------------|
| 1 | screen |
| 2 | laptop |
| 3 | digital |
| 4 | collaborate |
| 5 | cheerful |
| 6 | curious |
| 7 | screen time |
| 8 | night mode |

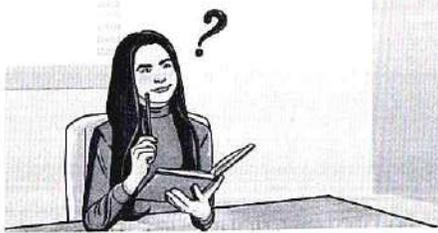
- a darker screen setting to protect your eyes in low light
- the time you spend using devices like phones or computers
- feeling interested in learning and knowing
- a portable computer
- a flat surface on which pictures or words are shown
- using computer technology or electronic devices
- to work with another person or a group of people
- happy and positive person

5. Read and complete (synonyms / antonyms).

| Word | Synonym | Word | Antonym |
|------------|---------|-------------|---------|
| print | | low | ..... |
| scared | | interesting | ..... |
| search for | | fast | ..... |
| protect | | careful | ..... |
| let | | appear | ..... |
| assignment | | encourage | ..... |

6. Read and complete (prefixes / suffixes).

| Prefix / Suffix | Meaning | Prefix / Suffix | Meaning |
|-----------------|---------|-----------------|---------------------|
| digit | رقمي | teach | مدرس |
| interest | شيق | print | طابعة |
| wise | بحكمة | announce | إعلان |
| active | تفاعلي | courage | لا يشجع على / يُحبط |



يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من (A) or (B) لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

Model A

| Write the meaning | Complete |
|---|--|
| Lessons 1 & 2 | |
| ..... ..... ..... ..... ..... | <p>1. The teacher helps his students work hard.</p> <p>2. I tried to my English.</p> <p>3. things are related to sight and seeing.</p> <p>4. things are related to hearing things.</p> <p>5. You should your time well.</p> |
| مرئي | |
| سمعى | |
| ينظم | |
| يحسن | |
| ناجح | |
| Lesson 3 | |
| ..... ..... ..... ..... ..... | <p>1. Facebook has become an important</p> <p>2. Many help you solve problems.</p> <p>3. Good requires wisdom and good behaviors.</p> <p>4. Drinking milk has many for children.</p> <p>5. Teamwork teaches us</p> |
| فوائد | |
| تعاون | |
| قيادة | |
| تجارب شخصية | |
| تطبيق | |
| Lessons 5 & 6 | |
| ..... ..... ..... ..... ..... | <p>1. You should be a teacher to help your students.</p> <p>2. Making doesn't mean giving up.</p> <p>3. I've a lot of for the new project.</p> <p>4. Teachers use to discuss their lessons.</p> <p>5. skills are very important in learning nowadays.</p> |
| أخطاء | |
| خرائط ذهنية | |
| رقمي | |
| مبدع | |
| أفكار | |

or

Model B

Write the meaning



Complete

Lessons 1 & 2

..... خرائط
..... تجارب علمية
..... مراجعة
..... ناجح
..... طرق / أساليب

1. Teachers use many to help their pupils.
2. Mohammed Salah is a player.
3. Our geography teacher has different for Egypt.
4. We do in the science lab.
5. You can make a by looking at something again to remember it.

Lesson 3

..... حلول
..... يتواصل
..... واثق
..... أبحاث
..... بطور

1. We can our area by planting more trees.
2. I can do some in summer holiday.
3. I'm that Ayman will help me.
4. There are many to reduce pollution.
5. I with my friends using Facebook.

Lessons 5 & 6

..... يحاول
..... مهم
..... متعلم
..... مهارات
..... يسرف / يُضيع

1. You shouldn't waste your
2. It's to do sports daily.
3. A good listens carefully to his teacher.
4. I can more and more: I'll never give up.
5. Don't water. It's a very bad habit.

2. Dictation on Unit 2

٢. إملأ على الوحدة بالكامل

1. Write the meaning of these words.

| | | | |
|-------|---------|-------------|-------|
| ..... | بصرى | leadership | ..... |
| ..... | سمعى | cooperation | ..... |
| ..... | خرائط | apps | ..... |
| ..... | ينظم | creative | ..... |
| ..... | تفسيرات | mind maps | ..... |
| ..... | فوائد | mistakes | ..... |
| ..... | حلول | mental | ..... |

2. Read and complete the conjugation.

| Present | Past | P.P. |
|------------|--------|------------|
| sing | sang | ..... |
| ..... | learnt | learnt |
| draw | ..... | drawn |
| understand | ..... | understood |
| ..... | took | taken |

3. Listen, repeat and write.

يقوم المعلم بقراءة بعض الكلمات من الوحدة ليستمع إليها الطالب ويرددها ثم يكتبها داخل الجدول.

ORAL TEST

| | |
|---------|---------|
| 1. | 5. |
| 2. | 6. |
| 3. | 7. |
| 4. | 8. |

4. Read and match.

| | | |
|---|------------|---|
| 1 | techniques | <input type="checkbox"/> showing care and kindness to others |
| 2 | review | <input type="checkbox"/> a strong desire to achieve |
| 3 | regularly | <input type="checkbox"/> being confident, not afraid |
| 4 | respect | <input type="checkbox"/> special methods or ways of doing something |
| 5 | courage | <input type="checkbox"/> looking at something again to remember it |
| 6 | ambition | <input type="checkbox"/> doing something often at the same times |

5. Read and complete (synonyms / antonyms).

| Word | Synonym | Word | Antonym |
|----------|---------|----------|---------|
| improve | | remember | ..... |
| courage | | succeed | ..... |
| visible | | learn | ..... |
| afraid | | best | ..... |
| organize | | physical | ..... |

6. Read and complete (prefixes / suffixes).

| Prefix / Suffix | Meaning | Prefix / Suffix | Meaning |
|-----------------|---------|-----------------|----------|
| digit..... | رقمی | visible | غير مرئی |
| leader..... | قيادة | creat..... | مُبدع |
| communicat..... | اتصال | success..... | ناجح |



Unit

3

1. Dictation on Lessons

ا. إملأ على دروس الوحدة

يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من [A] or [B] لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

Model A

| Write the meaning | Complete |
|-------------------|---|
| | Lessons 1 & 2 |
| بطل | 1. My father is my |
| عازم / مصمم | 2. Ahmed is to come first. |
| إنجاز | 3. You should different opinions. |
| يُلهم | 4. Mohammed Salah a lot of young people. |
| يحترم | 5. It's a great to win the cup. |
| | Lesson 3 |
| عضو / فرد | 1. Father is the most important in my family. |
| جغرافيا | 2. Egypt has a great in the Middle East. |
| موقع | 3. Egypt is a country. |
| غير صحيح | 4. Your answer is Try to revise again. |
| قوى | 5. We use maps in lessons. |
| | Lessons 5 & 6 |
| شجاع | 1. I don't with you. |
| تحديات | 2. Egypt faces a lot of in the last ten years. |
| يتغلب على | 3. The Egyptian soldier is very |
| اختلاف | 4. There is a great between Alexandria and Aswan. |
| يوافق | 5. Brave people difficult situations. |

or

Model B

| Write the meaning | Complete |
|--------------------------|--|
| Lessons 1 & 2 | |
| قذوة | 1. It's of you to help me. |
| طيب / عطوف | 2. Samira Moussa is a for most girls. |
| رمز | 3. The eagle in the Egyptian flag is a of power. |
| مجتمع | 4. The telephone is a great |
| اختراع | 5. Helping your is your responsibility. |
| Lesson 3 | |
| علماء | 1. Sara is music. |
| دور | 2. Gamal Hemdan is a great |
| ميدالية | 3. I got the gold in karate. |
| مفكر | 4. Egypt has great in all fields. |
| مهتم بـ | 5. I have an important in the company. |
| Lessons 5 & 6 | |
| علاج | 1. Scientists and thinkers make their stronger. |
| أمراض الكلى | 2. Doctors introduce good for their patients. |
| قائد | 3. Ali is the of his team. |
| رعاية | 4. Dr. Ghoniem treat people with diseases. |
| مجتمعات | 5. What is the best for this disease ? |

2. Dictation on Unit 3

٢. إملأه على الوحدة بالكامل

1. Write the meaning of these words.

| | | | |
|-------|-------------|----------------|-------|
| ..... | عازم / مصمم | challenges | ..... |
| ..... | إنجاز | leader | ..... |
| ..... | نجاح | grin | ..... |
| ..... | اختراعات | responsibility | ..... |
| ..... | يُلهم | thinker | ..... |
| ..... | قوى | role model | ..... |
| ..... | يتغلب على | research | ..... |

2. Read and complete the conjugation.

| Present | Past | P.P. |
|---------|---------|----------|
| teach | taught | ..... |
| give up | ..... | given up |
| make | ..... | made |
| ..... | thought | thought |

3. Listen, repeat and write.

يقوم المعلم بقراءة بعض الكلمات من الوحدة ليستمع إليها الطالب ويرددها ثم يكتبها داخل الجدول.

ORAL TEST

| | |
|---------|---------|
| 1. | 5. |
| 2. | 6. |
| 3. | 7. |
| 4. | 8. |

4. Read and match.

| | |
|---|-------------|
| 1 | hero |
| 2 | determined |
| 3 | achievement |
| 4 | inspire |
| 5 | respect |
| 6 | role model |

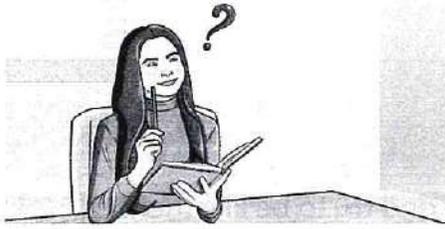
| | |
|--------------------------|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | someone you admire and try to be like them |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | to feel admiration for someone |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | to motivate or encourage |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | success in reaching a goal |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | not giving up easily |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | a person who does great things for others |

5. Read and complete (synonyms / antonyms).

| Word | Synonym | Word | Antonym |
|-----------|---------|-----------|---------|
| friendly | | kind | ..... |
| invent | | important | ..... |
| known for | | send | ..... |
| powerful | | agree | ..... |

6. Read and complete (prefixes / suffixes).

| Prefix / Suffix | Meaning | Prefix / Suffix | Meaning |
|-----------------|---------------|-----------------|---------|
| power | قوى | tour | سائح |
| agree | اتفاق | think | مفكر |
| like | لا يحب / يكره | lead | قائد |
| afraid | غير خائف | strong | أقوى |



Unit

4

1. Dictation on Lessons

ا. إملأ على دروس الوحدة

يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من [A] or [B] لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

Model

A

Write the meaning



Complete

Lessons 1 & 2

- | | | |
|-------|-------|--|
| ..... | مسئول | 1. The result of an action is called |
| ..... | مهمل | 2. What's your in life ? |
| ..... | قرار | 3. I took an important last week. |
| ..... | هدف | 4. people waste water. |
| ..... | نتيجة | 5. I'm for the project. |

Lesson 3

- | | | |
|-------|-------------|--|
| ..... | عافل / حكيم | 1. I took the medicine and |
| ..... | مشكلة | 2. Smoking has a bad on our health. |
| ..... | تأثير | 3. I had an accident and I had a bad to my leg. |
| ..... | إصابة | 4. What's your to solve ? |
| ..... | يُشفى | 5. Dr Zewail is a person. |

Lessons 5 & 6

- | | | |
|-------|---------------|--|
| ..... | عصبى / متوتر | 1. My to you is to get up early. |
| ..... | نصيحة | 2. The teacher is very because we were noisy. |
| ..... | يستلم / يتلقى | 3. You should carry eggs |
| ..... | أختيار | 4. I made a smart |
| ..... | بحرص / بعناية | 5. I a message from my uncle. |

or

Model B

| Write the meaning | Complete |
|--------------------------|---|
| Lessons 1 & 2 | |
| فائدة | 1. phones are very helpful. |
| إيجابي | 2. Discouraging children is a thing. |
| سلبي | 3. Teachers the results of their pupils well. |
| يُقِيم | 4. It's a thing to help the poor people. |
| ذكي | 5. Doing sports has great for your body. |
| Lesson 3 | |
| صعب | 1. I won the and took a gold medal. |
| يشارك في | 2. Sara had an yesterday and broke her leg. |
| مسابقة | 3. I joined the poetry |
| حادث سير | 4. Heba the voluntary work. |
| سباق | 5. It's to run 5 kilometres a day. |
| Lessons 5 & 6 | |
| يقرر | 1. I'm about my father. |
| فرصة | 2. I can jump stopping for 3 minutes. |
| درجات | 3. Salma got high in the final exam. |
| بدون | 4. It's a great to visit Alex in summer. |
| قلق | 5. Father to cancel the trip. |

2. Dictation on Unit 4

٢. إملأ على الوحدة بالكامل

1. Write the meaning of these words.

| | | | |
|-------|--------|-------------|-------|
| ..... | مسئول | harmful | ..... |
| ..... | مهمل | care | ..... |
| ..... | قرار | consequence | ..... |
| ..... | سلبى | benefit | ..... |
| ..... | إيجابى | injury | ..... |
| ..... | تقييم | risk | ..... |
| ..... |  | problem | ..... |

2. Read and complete the conjugation.

| Present | Past | P.P. |
|---------|-------|-------|
| write | wrote | ..... |
| ..... | felt | felt |
| ..... | made | made |
| leave | ..... | left |
| mean | ..... | meant |
| ..... | spent | spent |

3. Listen, repeat and write.

يقوم المعلم بقراءة بعض الكلمات من الوحدة ليستمع إليها الطالب ويرددها ثم يكتبها داخل الجدول.

ORAL TEST

| | |
|---------|---------|
| 1. | 5. |
| 2. | 6. |
| 3. | 7. |
| 4. | 8. |

4. Read and match.

| | |
|---|-------------|
| 1 | decision |
| 2 | evaluate |
| 3 | positive |
| 4 | responsible |
| 5 | careless |
| 6 | consequence |

- the result or effect of an action
- not caring about your actions
- a good or hopeful
- to act with care and think of others
- a choice you can make
- to think carefully before deciding

5. Read and complete (synonyms / antonyms).

| Word | Synonym | Word | Antonym |
|---------|---------|----------|---------|
| result | | harmful | ..... |
| problem | | positive | ..... |
| effect | | main | ..... |

6. Read and complete (prefixes / suffixes).

| Prefix / Suffix | Meaning | Prefix / Suffix | Meaning |
|-----------------|---------|-------------------|-----------|
| care | مهمل | kind | غير عطوف |
| care | حريص | responsible | غير مسئول |
| help | متعاون | | |



Unit

5

1. Dictation on Lessons

١. إملأ على دروس الوحدة

يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من [A] or [B] لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

Model A

| Write the meaning | Complete |
|--------------------|---|
| | Lessons 1 & 2 |
| مستقبلي | 1. What's your favorite in the future ? |
| طموح | 2. You should your skills. |
| فرص | 3. Don't miss the you find. |
| بطور | 4. I've an to be a doctor. |
| مهنة | 5. We should protect the of our children. |
| | Lesson 3 |
| موهبة | 1. Salah has a great in playing football. |
| تعليم | 2. Sara has many in karate. |
| جامعة | 3. I graduated from Cairo |
| تدريب | 4. is the most important thing in our life. |
| مهارات | 5. makes us perfect. |
| | Lessons 5 & 6 |
| حياة مهنية | 1. Doctors patients. |
| مقابلة شخصية | 2. What's the between "quiet" and "quite" ? |
| حلم | 3. Salah achieved great progress in his |
| اختلاف | 4. I have an tomorrow. |
| يعالج | 5. It's my to be a doctor. |

or

Model B

| Write the meaning | Complete |
|--------------------------|--|
| Lessons 1 & 2 | |
| مشروع | 1. Succeed is the opposite of..... |
| يستكشف | 2. I want to be an |
| مصمم | 3. The of this studio is great. |
| رائد فضاء | 4. I the city of Aswan when I arrived. |
| يفشل | 5. The High Dam is a great |
| Lesson 3 | |
| نجاح | 1. helps us cooperate. |
| يحقق / ينجز | 2. The factory bought a new |
| يعتنى بـ | 3. Doctors their patients. |
| آلة | 4. I can my goals easily. |
| عمل جماعي | 5. It's a great to come first. |
| Lessons 5 & 6 | |
| مهارات | 1. Who is the of this restaurant ? |
| مواهب | 2. A treats sick animals. |
| يشجع | 3. My father me to come first. |
| طبيب بيطري | 4. There are many in our country. |
| ملاك / أصحاب | 5. Reading and writing are important |

2. Dictation on Unit 5

٢. إملأ على الوحدة بالكامل

1. Write the meaning of these words.

| | | | |
|-------|----------|-----------|-------|
| ..... | المستقبل | path | ..... |
| ..... | طموح | scientist | ..... |
| ..... | يطور | talent | ..... |
| ..... | فرص | astronaut | ..... |
| ..... | مصممين | education | ..... |
| ..... | يستكشف | achieve | ..... |
| ..... | جامعة | come true | ..... |

2. Read and complete the conjugation.

| Present | Past | P.P. |
|-----------|--------|-----------|
| make | made | ..... |
| come true | ..... | come true |
| ..... | found | found |
| have | ..... | had |
| ..... | became | become |

3. Listen, repeat and write.

يقوم المعلم بقراءة بعض الكلمات من الوحدة ليستمع إليها الطالب ويرددها ثم يكتبها داخل الجدول.

ORAL TEST

| | |
|---------|---------|
| 1. | 5. |
| 2. | 6. |
| 3. | 7. |
| 4. | 8. |

4. Read and match.

| | |
|---|-------------|
| 1 | ambition |
| 2 | opportunity |
| 3 | profession |
| 4 | designer |
| 5 | education |
| 6 | skill |

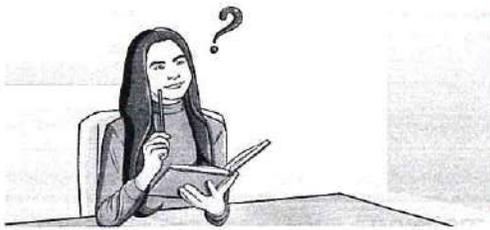
- | | |
|--------------------------|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | the ability to do something |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | the process of teaching and learning |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | the one who creates projects or structures |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | a job or career that requires knowledge and training |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | an occasion that makes it possible to do something |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | a strong wish to do something |

5. Read and complete (synonyms / antonyms).

| Word | Synonym | Word | Antonym |
|-------------|---------|---------|---------|
| profession | | right | ..... |
| opportunity | | give | ..... |
| important | | learn | ..... |
| delicious | | ability | ..... |

6. Read and complete (prefixes / suffixes).

| Prefix / Suffix | Meaning | Prefix / Suffix | Meaning |
|-----------------|---------|-----------------|---------|
| design | مصمم | salt | مالح |
| skill | ماهر | talent | موهوب |
| engineer | هندسة | predict | تنبؤ |



يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من [A] or [B] لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

Model

A

| Write the meaning | Complete |
|----------------------|---|
| | Lessons 1 & 2 |
| مواطن | 1. A good..... should help his community. |
| غير عادل | 2. It's..... to cheat in exams. |
| يحمى | 3. You should..... your handwriting skills. |
| يشجع | 4. I like to..... my students. |
| يحسن | 5. It's important to..... the environment. |
| | Lesson 3 |
| يشارك | 1. I could..... my friend to join the school team. |
| يقلل | 2. We should protect the earth for the coming..... |
| مخلوق | 3. The lion is a strong..... |
| أجيال | 4. We should..... using plastic. |
| يُقنع | 5. I..... in the school party. |
| | Lessons 5 & 6 |
| فخور | 1. I like studying..... |
| ملصق | 2. It's..... to spend your free time reading books. |
| يشارك / مشاركة | 3. I..... my room with my brother. |
| رائع | 4. Can you hang this..... on the wall ? |
| تاريخ | 5. I'm so..... of my father. |

or

Model B

| Write the meaning | Complete |
|--------------------------|---|
| Lessons 1 & 2 | |
| يهدر | 1. Planting trees helps the..... |
| يعتنى بـ | 2. You can..... by giving some of your time to help others. |
| مواطن صالح | 3. A..... doesn't pollute his environment. |
| يتطوع | 4. Good mothers..... their children. |
| البيئة | 5. Don't..... water. |
| Lesson 3 | |
| محيط | 1. The Atlantic..... is the biggest. |
| خطر | 2. How can we..... the environment ? |
| مسئولية | 3. It's your..... to invite your friends to the party. |
| يحمى | 4. Some animals live in great..... |
| تنوع / اختلاف | 5. We should respect the..... of opinions. |
| Lessons 5 & 6 | |
| تلوث | 1. Scientists..... in our life. |
| مشكلة عالمية | 2. We should..... old people. |
| مجتمع | 3. Pollution is a..... |
| يحترم | 4. Reducing..... is very important. |
| يُحدث فارق | 5. Helping..... can be different from one to another. |

2. Dictation on Unit 6

٢. إملأ على الوحدة بالكامل

1. Write the meaning of these words.

| | | | |
|-------|-------------|----------------|-------|
| ..... | مواطن عالمي | responsibility | ..... |
| ..... | غير عادل | school rule | ..... |
| ..... | يحمي | respect | ..... |
| ..... | يشجع | electricity | ..... |
| ..... | يُحسن | project | ..... |
| ..... | يتطوع | diversity | ..... |
| ..... | البيئة | generations | ..... |

2. Read and complete the conjugation.

| Present | Past | P.P. |
|---------|-------|-----------|
| throw | ..... | thrown |
| make | ..... | made |
| go | went | ..... |
| ..... | kept | kept |
| ..... | drew | drawn |
| forget | ..... | forgotten |

3. Listen, repeat and write.

يقوم المعلم بقراءة بعض الكلمات من الوحدة ليستمع إليها الطالب ويرددها ثم يكتبها داخل الجدول.

ORAL TEST

| | |
|---------|---------|
| 1. | 5. |
| 2. | 6. |
| 3. | 7. |
| 4. | 8. |

4. Read and match.

| | |
|---|----------------|
| 1 | global citizen |
| 2 | encourage |
| 3 | protect |
| 4 | unfair |
| 5 | volunteer |
| 6 | responsibility |
| 7 | environment |

| | |
|--------------------------|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | the world around us, like land, air and water. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | to do your duty and take care of something. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | to give your time to help others without being paid. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | to look after or save. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | not to treat people in equal way. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | being fair to people in different countries. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | to help people do good things. |

5. Read and complete (synonyms / antonyms).

| Word | Synonym | Word | Antonym |
|-----------|---------|-----------|---------|
| take care | | give | ..... |
| protect | | win | ..... |
| improve | | encourage | ..... |
| rubbish | | unfair | ..... |

6. Read and complete (prefixes / suffixes).

| Prefix / Suffix | Meaning | Prefix / Suffix | Meaning |
|------------------|---------|-----------------|---------|
| citizen | مواطنة | color | ملون |
| responsibl | مسئولية | drive | سائق |
| danger | خطر | | |